

## Foreword

Thank you for choosing Hongqi HS5!

All FAW vehicle models have passed China Compulsion Certification (CCC Certification) and Gulf Cooperation Council Certification (GCC Certification).

Hongqi HS5 sedan carries multiple luxury equipment and advanced technology. To take full advantage of these equipment and technology, FAW recommends you read this manual thoroughly to know Hongqi HS5 sedan quickly and comprehensively.

In addition to introducing the use of the vehicle, this manual explains the driving safety, vehicle maintenance and emergency countermeasures in detail to help you drive this vehicle safely and comfortably, and meanwhile maintain the value of the vehicle to the maximum degree.

The documents provided with the vehicle include this Owner's Manual, Maintenance Manual, which contain the important maintenance information for HS5 Sedan. FAW suggests you keep the documents provided inside the vehicle for reference at any time.

This manual is compiled in accordance with the product situations at the time of printing. It will be modified into a second edition for the subsequent products. FAW will reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice. Thank you for your understanding.

First Automobile Works (FAW)



## Contents

	Pictorial Index	Search by illustration	
1	Safety Instructions	One must read through the safety instructions.	
2	Instrument Cluster	How to read instruments, various alarm lights and indicators, etc.	
3	Operating the Components	The opening/closing of windows and doors, adjustments before driving, etc.	
4	Driving	Required operations and advice while driving	
5	Audio System	Audio system operation	
6	Interior Equipment	Usage of interior equipment, etc.	
7	Maintenance	Steps of vehicle maintenance	
8	When Failure Arises	Measures for failures or emergencies	
9	Vehicle specification:	Details of the vehicle	
10	Additional information	Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China	
	Other information	List the abbreviations contained in this manual	

**1 Safety Instructions**

**1.1. Instructions for Safe Use**

Safe driving ..... 24

Seat belt ..... 25

Airbag ..... 31

Child safety information ..... 42

Children restraint device ..... 43

Install the child restraint device ..... 47

Precautions for Exhaust Gas ..... 50

**1-2. Anti-theft system**

Engine anti-theft system ..... 51

Body anti-theft system ..... 52

**2 Instrument Cluster**

Combination instrument ..... 54

Alarm light ..... 56

Indicator ..... 58

Multi-function display screen of instrument cluster ..... 60

Head up display\* ..... 70

**3 Operating the Components**

**3.1. Key information**

Key ..... 74

**3.2. Opening, closing and locking of doors and trunk lid**

Doors ..... 77

Trunk lid ..... 81

Intelligent entry & start system ..... 85

**3-3. Adjusting the Seats**

Front seats ..... 90

Rear seats ..... 92

Head restraints ..... 94

Seat memory\* ..... 96

**3-4. Adjusting the Steering Wheel and Rear-view Mirrors**

Steering wheel ..... 98

Anti-glare inner rear view mirror ..... 100

Exterior mirrors ..... 102

**3-5. Opening and Closing the Windows**

Power windows ..... 105

Panorama sunroof\* ..... 108

**4 Driving**

**4-1. Before Driving**

Driving a vehicle ..... 112

Goods and luggage ..... 118

Trailer towing ..... 119

**4-2. Driving regulations**

Engine (start) switch ..... 120

Transmission ..... 123

Driving mode ..... 128

Turn signal lamp control handle .....	131
Electronic parking brake (EPB) system.....	132
AUTO HOLD* .....	134
<b>4-3. Operating lights and wipers</b>	
Front headlamp switch .....	136
Intelligent high beam control (IHC) system* .....	138
Fog lamp switch .....	140
Front windshield wipers and washer .....	141
Rear windshield wiper and washer .....	144
<b>4-4. Fill the fuel</b>	
Opening the fuel tank lid .....	145
<b>4-5. Using Other Driving Systems</b>	
Fixed speed cruise control* .....	148
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) function* .....	151
Super Adaptive Cruise Control (SACC) function* .....	157
Front and rear parking radar .....	164
Rear view camera system* .....	169
Panoramic image system* .....	174
Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS) .....	179
LDW/LKA Lane keeping assist system*.....	181
Driver Status Monitoring (DSM)* .....	184
Forward collision warning (FCW) system* .....	185
Autonomous emergency brake (AEB) system* ..	187

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)* .....	190
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)* .....	194
Idling start/stop system.....	196
Auto Parking Assist (APA)* .....	200
Driver assistance system .....	206
<b>4-6. Driving information</b>	
Key points for driving in winter .....	209

5	<b>Audio System</b>
---	---------------------

<b>5-1. Basic Operations</b>	
Multimedia display.....	212
Multimedia switch on the steering wheel.....	215
USB interface .....	216
<b>5-2. Settings</b>	
System settings .....	217
Vehicle settings.....	222
<b>5-3. Navigation E</b>	
Basic functions .....	228
Using the navigation.....	230
<b>5-4. Radio</b>	
Using the radio .....	234
<b>5-5. Music</b>	
My music play .....	237



**5-6. Bluetooth Music**  
 Bluetooth music play.....241

**5-7. Video**  
 Video play.....243

**5-8. Images**  
 Image viewing .....246

**5-9. Hands-free System**  
 Using the hands-free system.....249

**5-10. Bluetooth Telephone**  
 Using Bluetooth® phone.....252

**5-11. Speech recognition E**  
 Using the voice recognition function.....256

**5-12. Mobile phone APP E**  
 Using the mobile phone APP.....258

**5-13. Hongqi Smart Connect E**  
 Using Hongqi Smart Connect.....261

**6 Interior Equipment**

**6-1. Using the A/C System**  
 Fully automatic air conditioning system .....270  
 · Using the automatic A/C system .....272  
 • Manual adjustment setting .....273  
 • Other functions.....276  
 • Adjust the air outlet direction and open and close the air vents .....278  
 Windshield heating .....280

**6-2. Using the Interior Lamps**  
 List of interior lights.....281

•Front row of interior lights.....282  
 • Front reading light.....282  
 • Rear reading light.....283  
 • Vanity mirror lighting.....283

**6-3. Using the Storage Units**  
 Storage device list .....284  
 • Glove box.....285  
 • Front central storage box.....286  
 • Left lower guard plate sundries box.....286  
 • Cup holder.....287  
 • Bottle rack and sundry bucket.....288  
 • Document pocket .....288  
 • Glasses box .....289  
 Trunk device.....290  
 • Cargo hook.....290  
 • Luggage net.....290

**6-4. Other Interior Equipment**  
 On-board wireless charging\* .....291  
 Sun visor.....292  
 Paper holder.....293  
 Vanity mirror .....294  
 Cigarette lighter.....295  
 Power socket .....296  
 Seat temperature control\* .....298  
 Rear center armrest.....300  
 Roof grab handle .....301  
 Coat hook .....302

## 7 Maintenance

### 7-1. Maintenance and Servicing

Cleaning and protecting vehicle exterior trim .....304

Cleaning and protecting vehicle interior trim .....306

### 7-2. Maintenance

Maintenance instructions .....308

### 7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

Precautions for do-it-yourself maintenance .....310

Hood .....312

Engine compartment .....313

Tire .....326

Tire pressure .....329

Wheel .....331

Air conditioning filter .....332

Replace key battery .....334

Check and replace fuse .....336

## 8 When Failure Arises

### 8-1. Important information

Hazard warning lamps .....340

SOS warning .....341

### 8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

If the vehicle needs to be towed .....342

If any abnormality is found on the vehicle .....347

If a warning lamp turns on or a warning buzzer sounds .....348

In the case of a flat tire .....354

If the engine cannot be started .....362

If the key is lost .....363

If the key does not work properly .....364

If the battery is low .....366

If the vehicle is overheating .....369

In case of the vehicle stuck .....371

If you drive on water-covered roads .....372

In case of a punctured tire .....373

If an accident occurs .....374

Trunk lid emergency open .....375

## 9 Vehicle specification:

### 9. Specifications

Maintenance data .....378

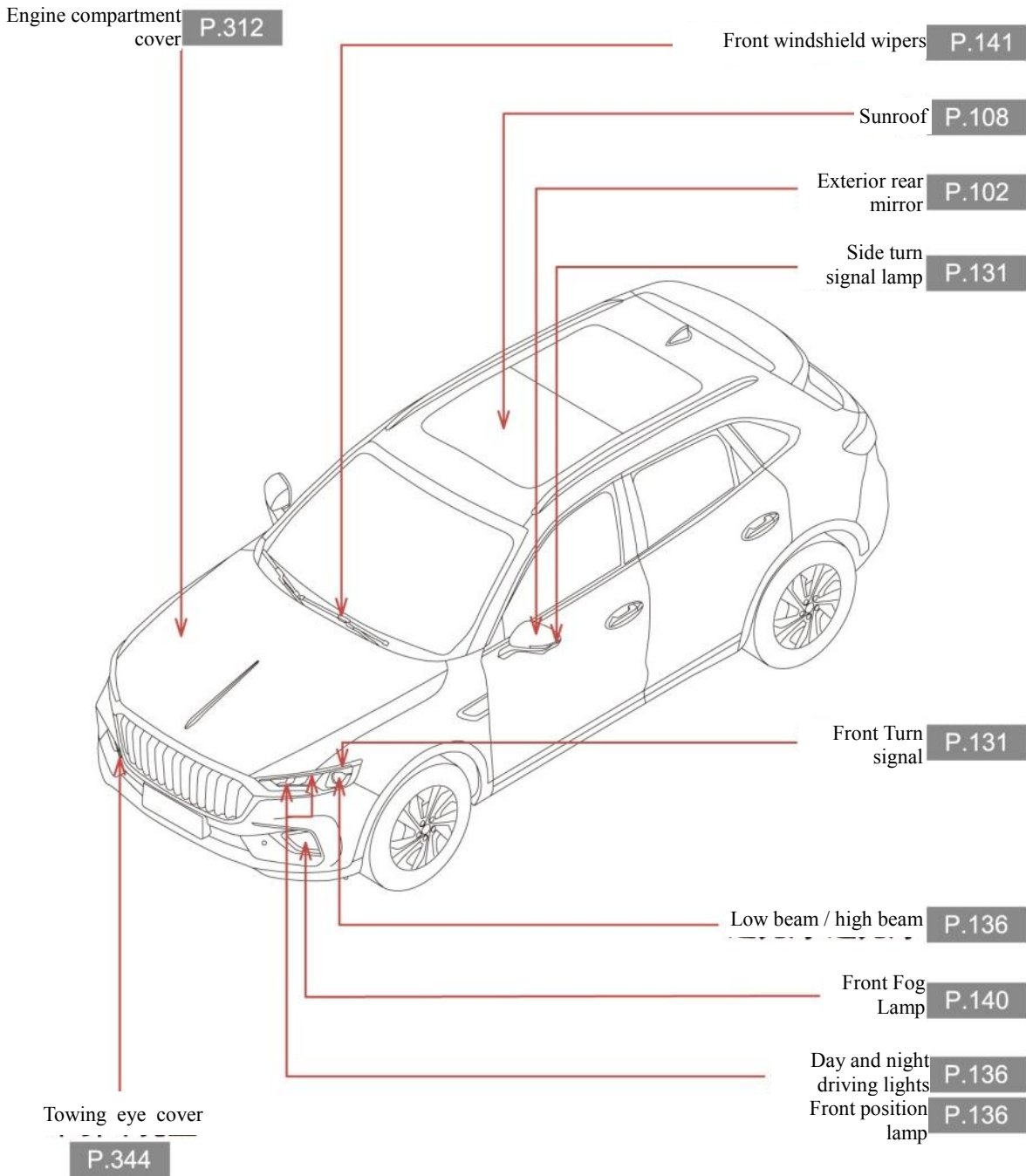
Fuel information .....390

## 10 Additional information

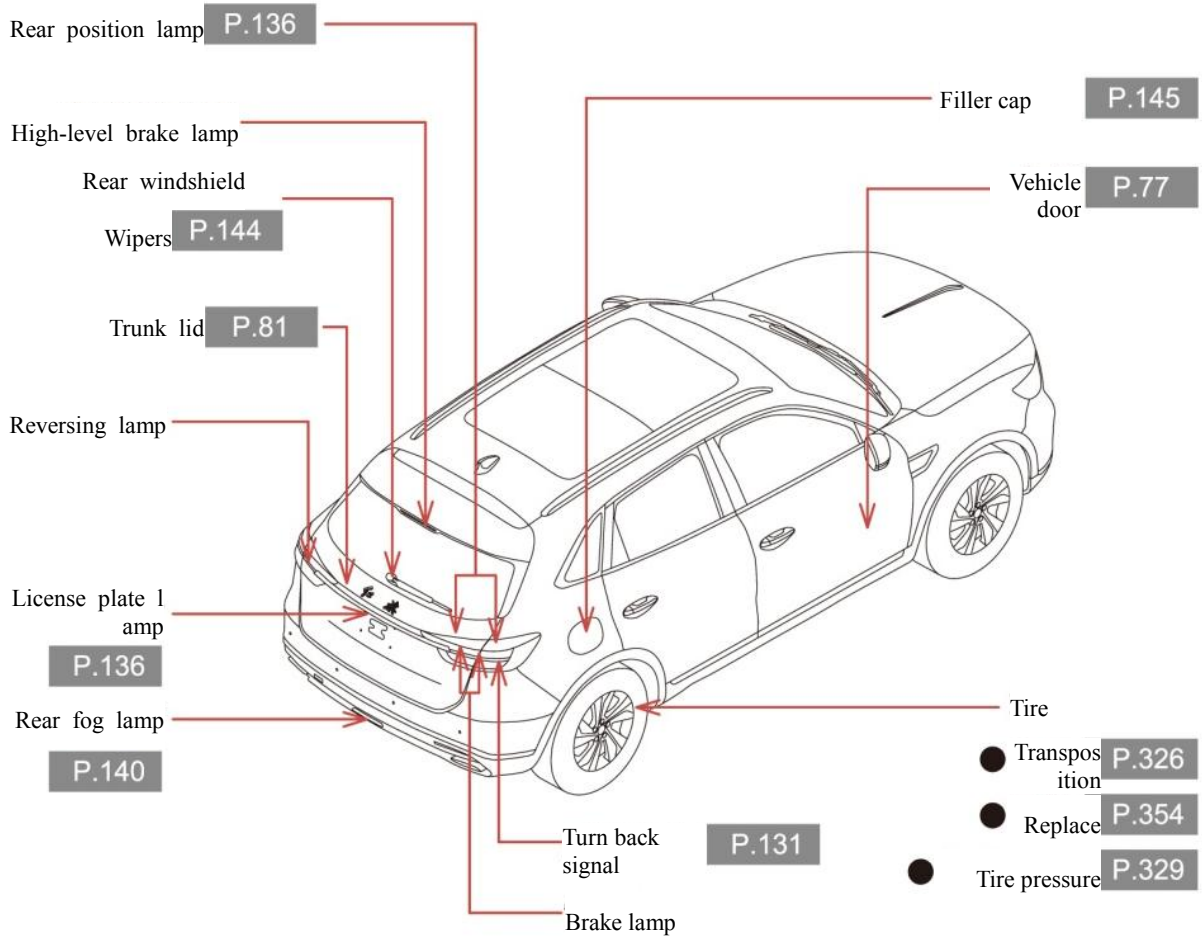
**Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China. ....392**

### Other information

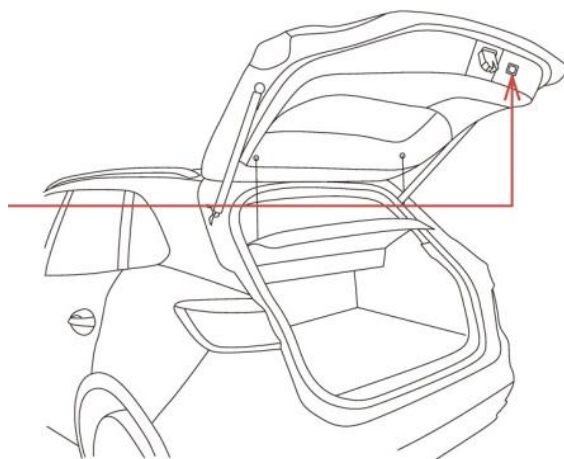
**List of Abbreviations .....394**

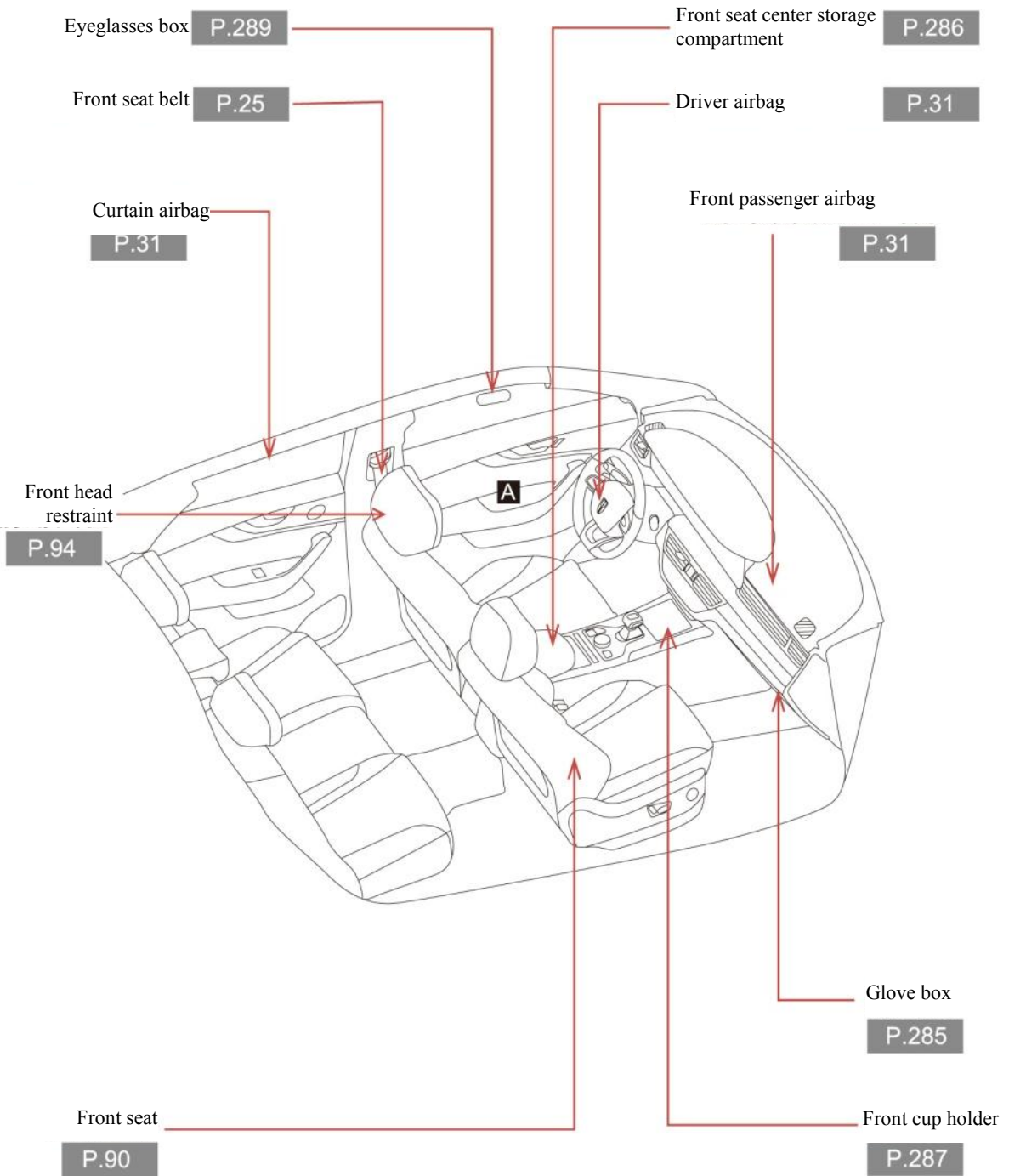




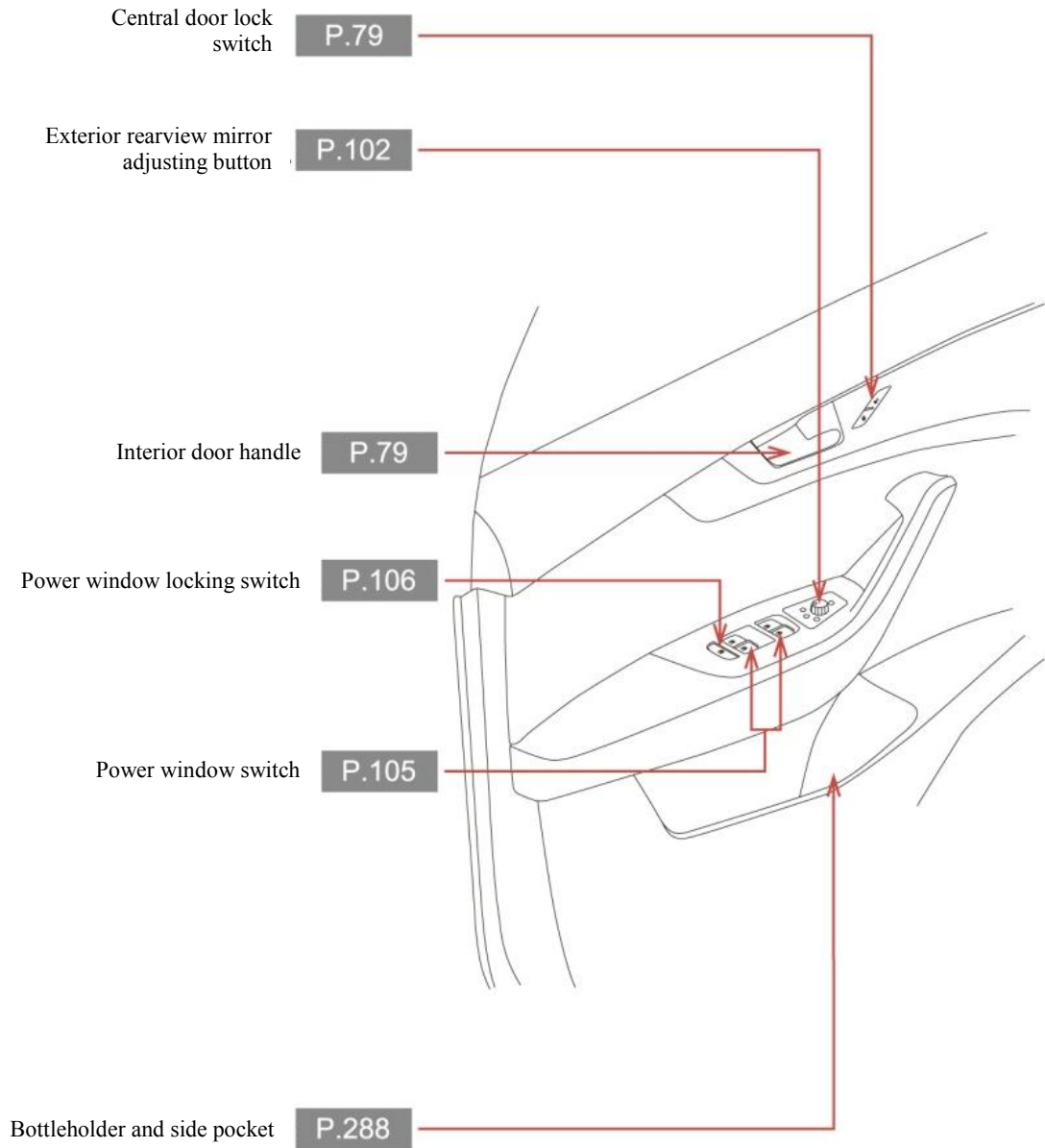


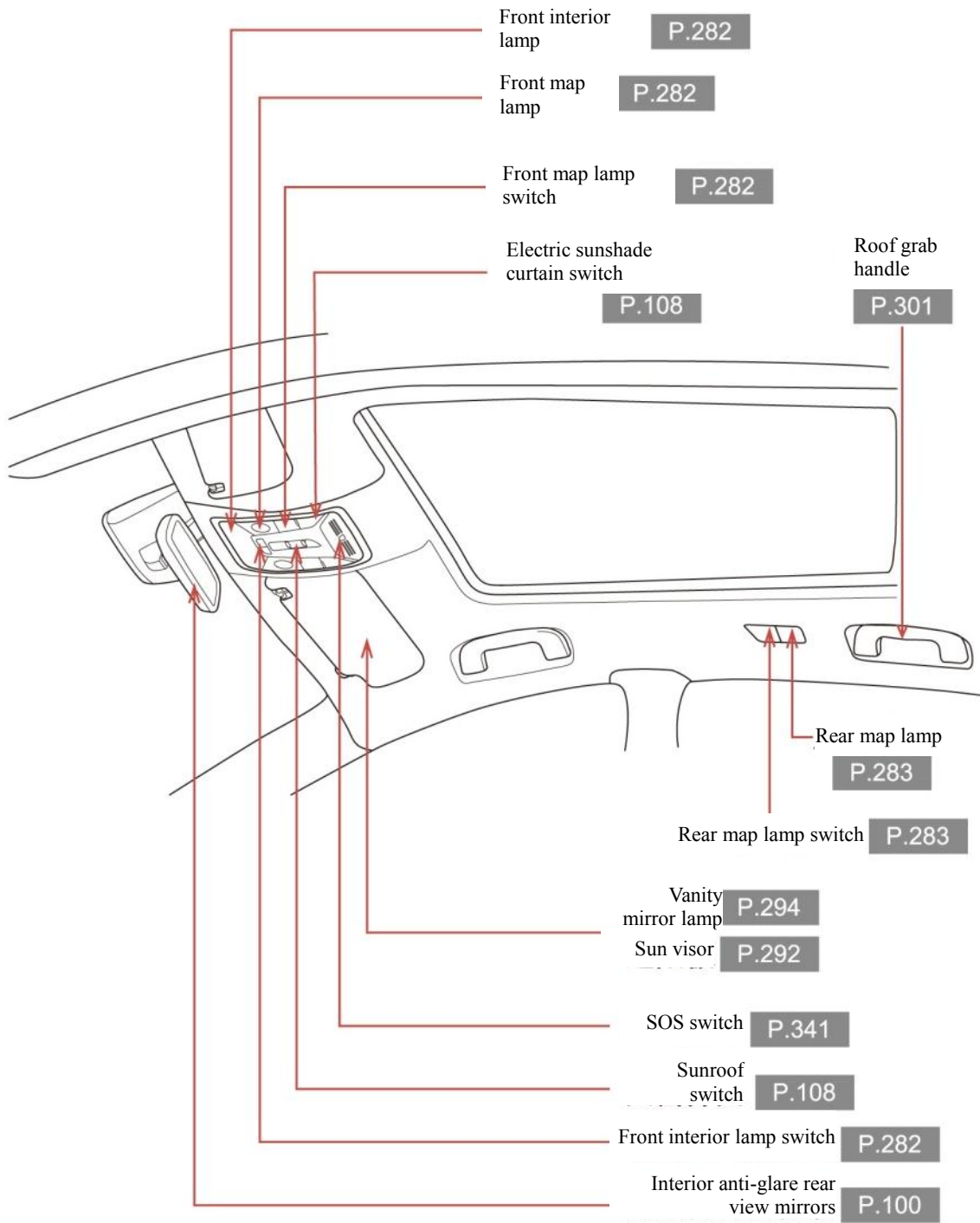
Trunk lid, electric  
 Close button  
**P.82**

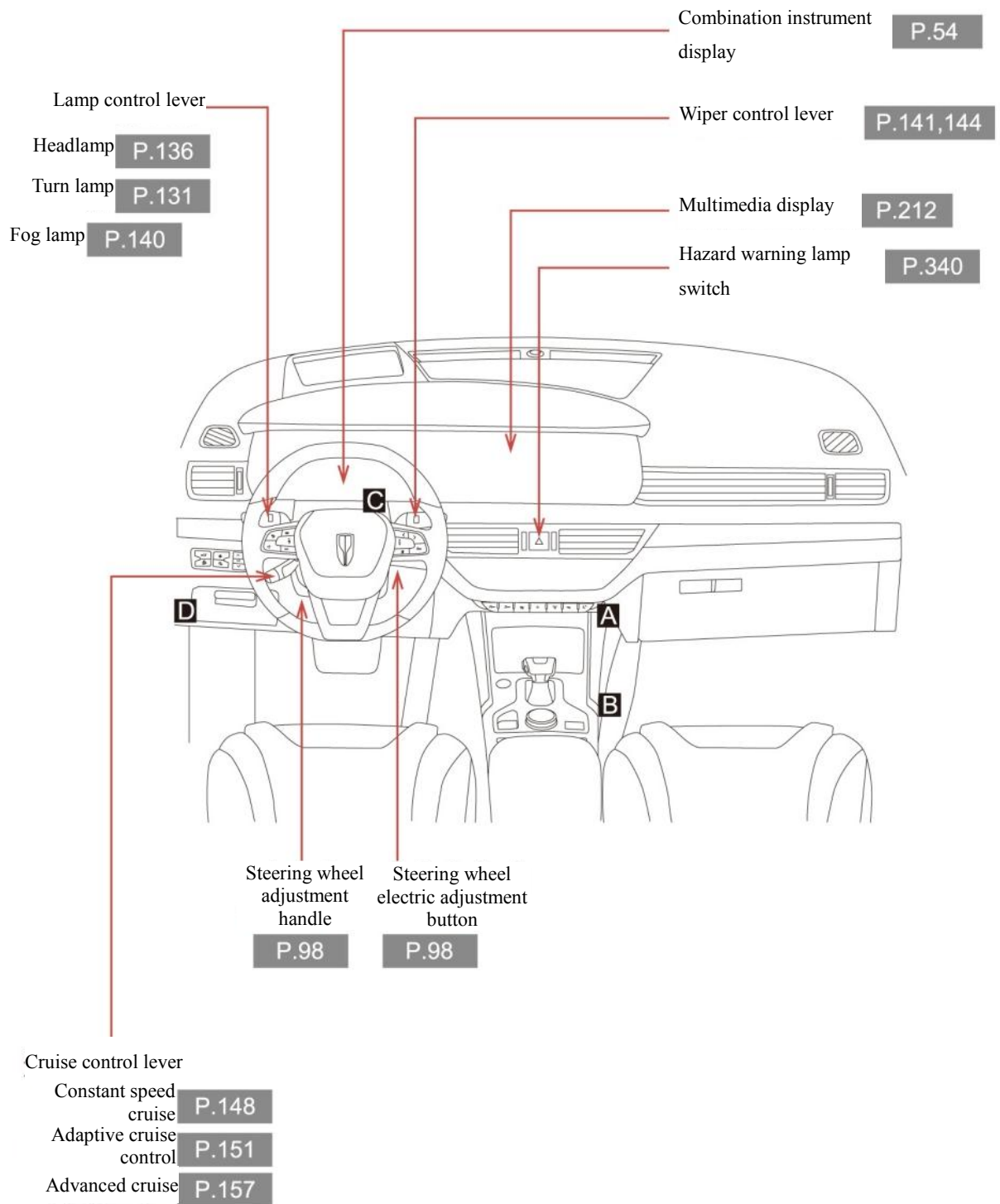


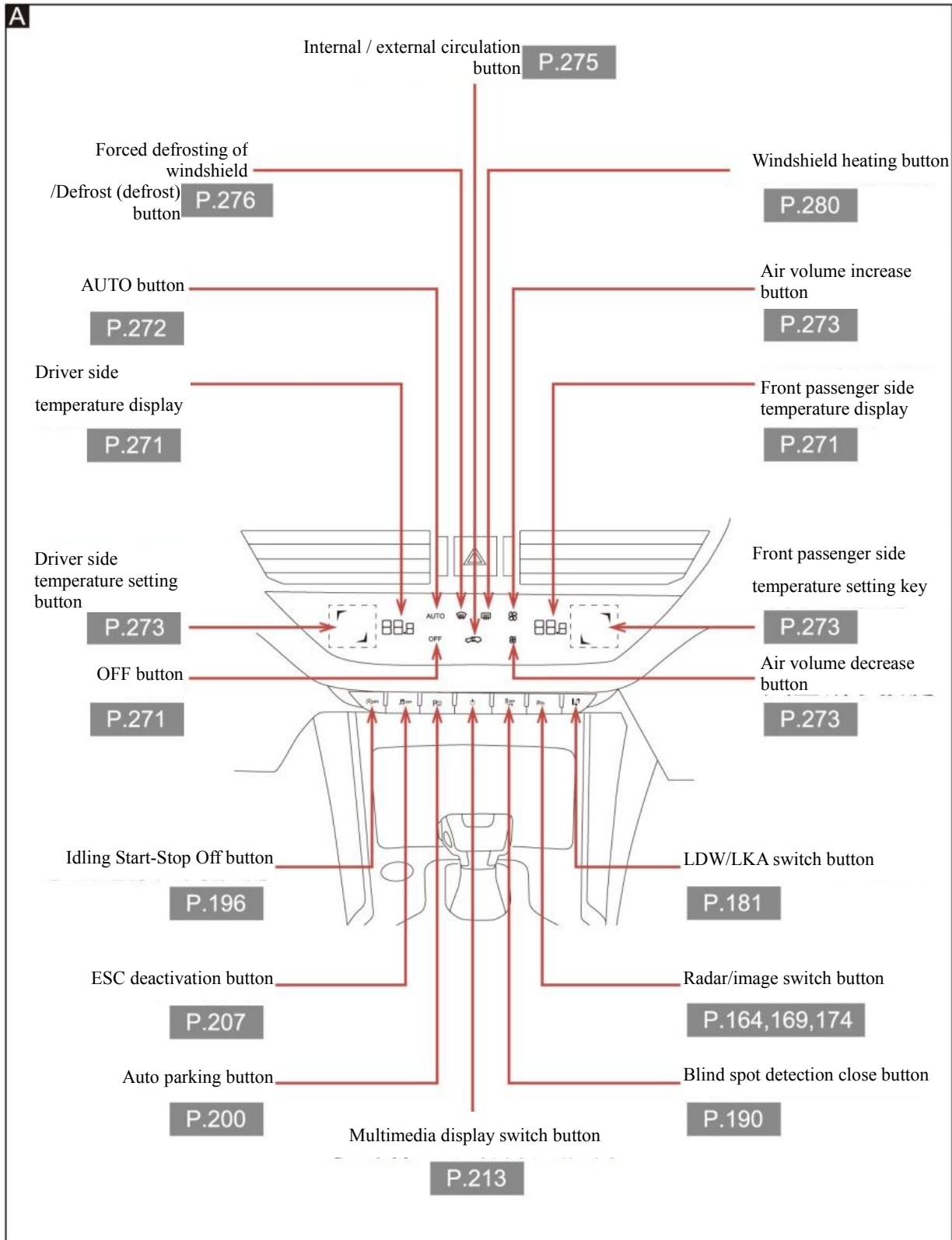


**A**

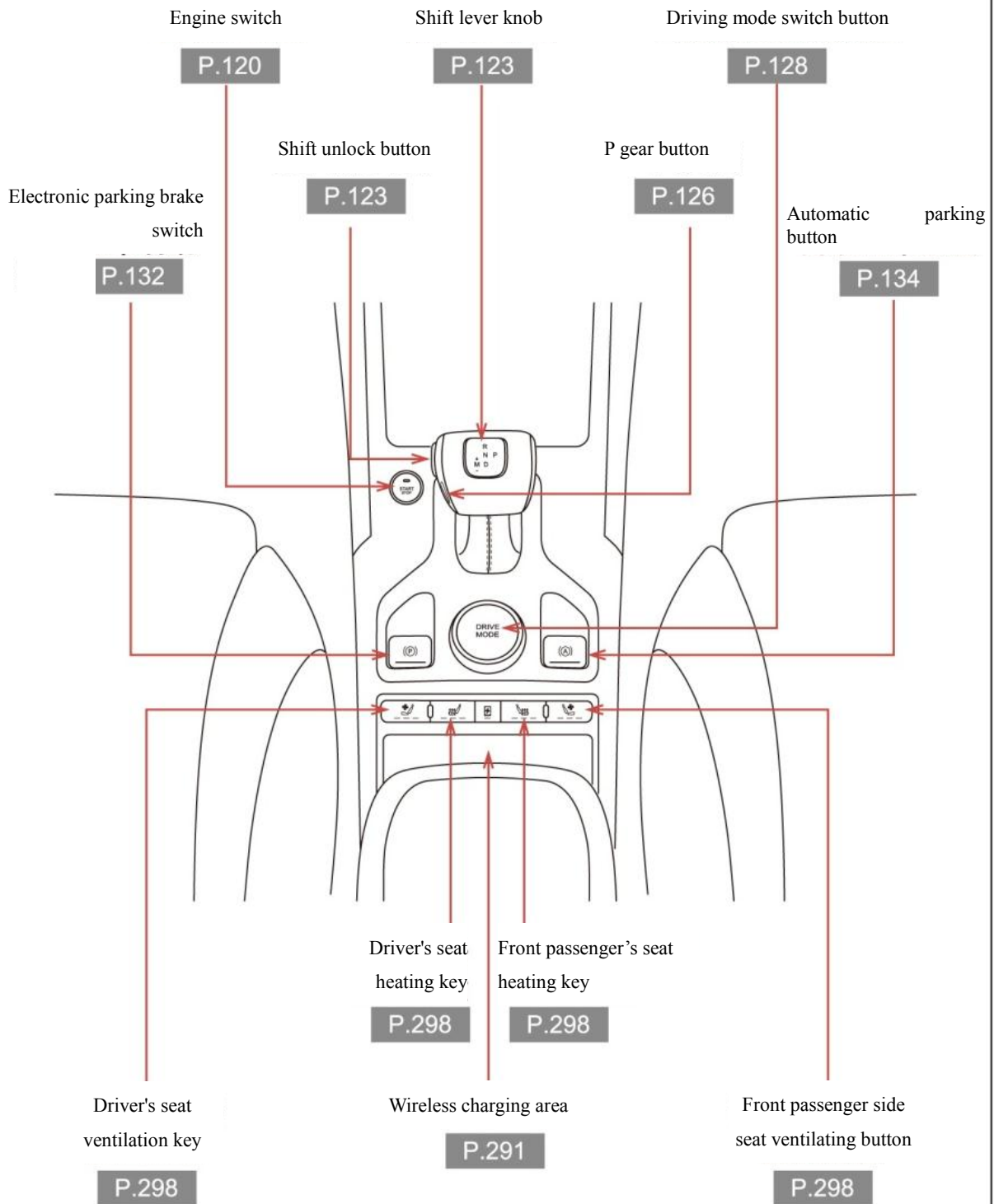




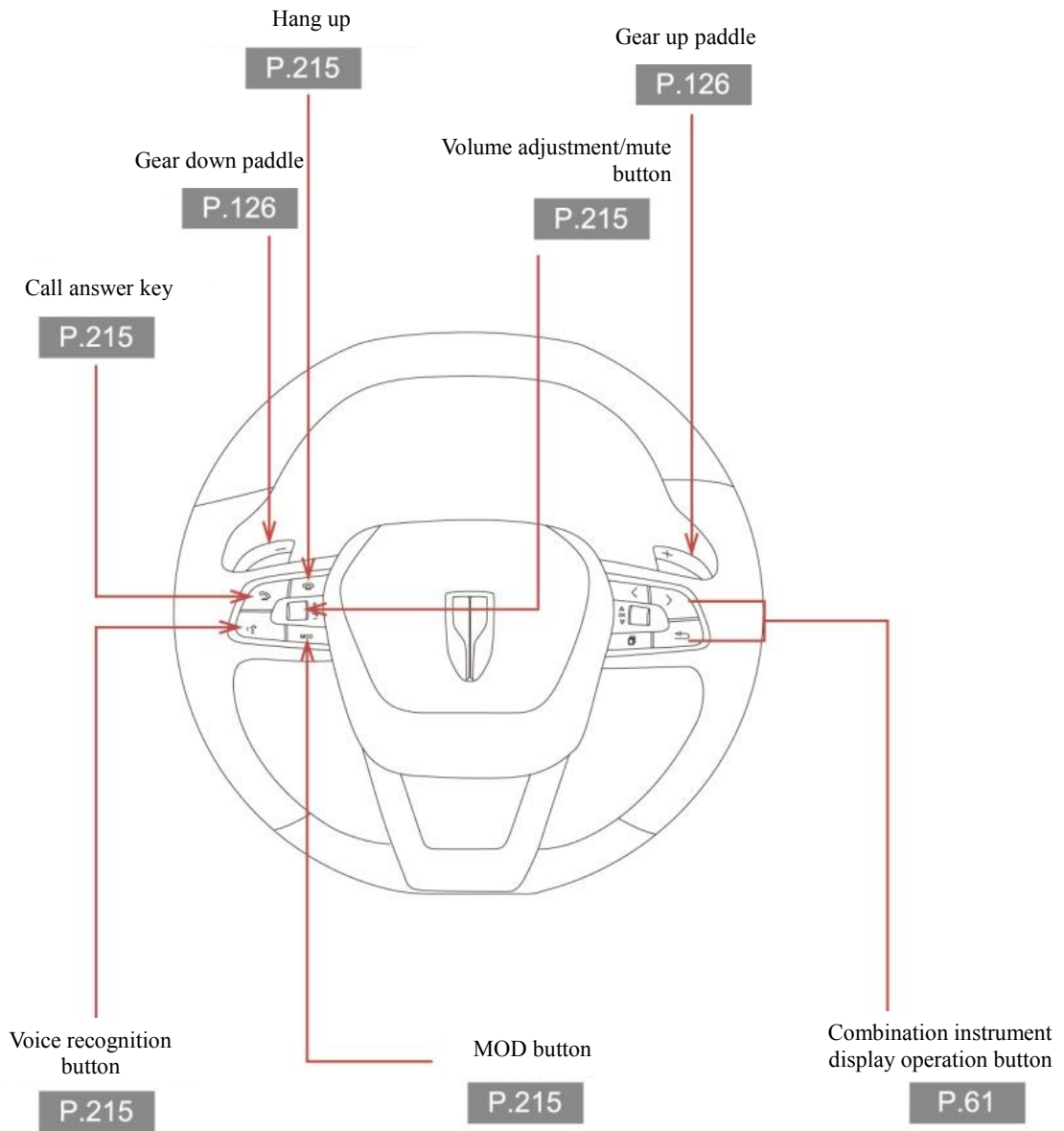




**B**



C





**D**

Heads up display setting button

P.71

Steering wheel heating button

P.98

Opening button inside the trunk lid

P.81

Hill descent control button

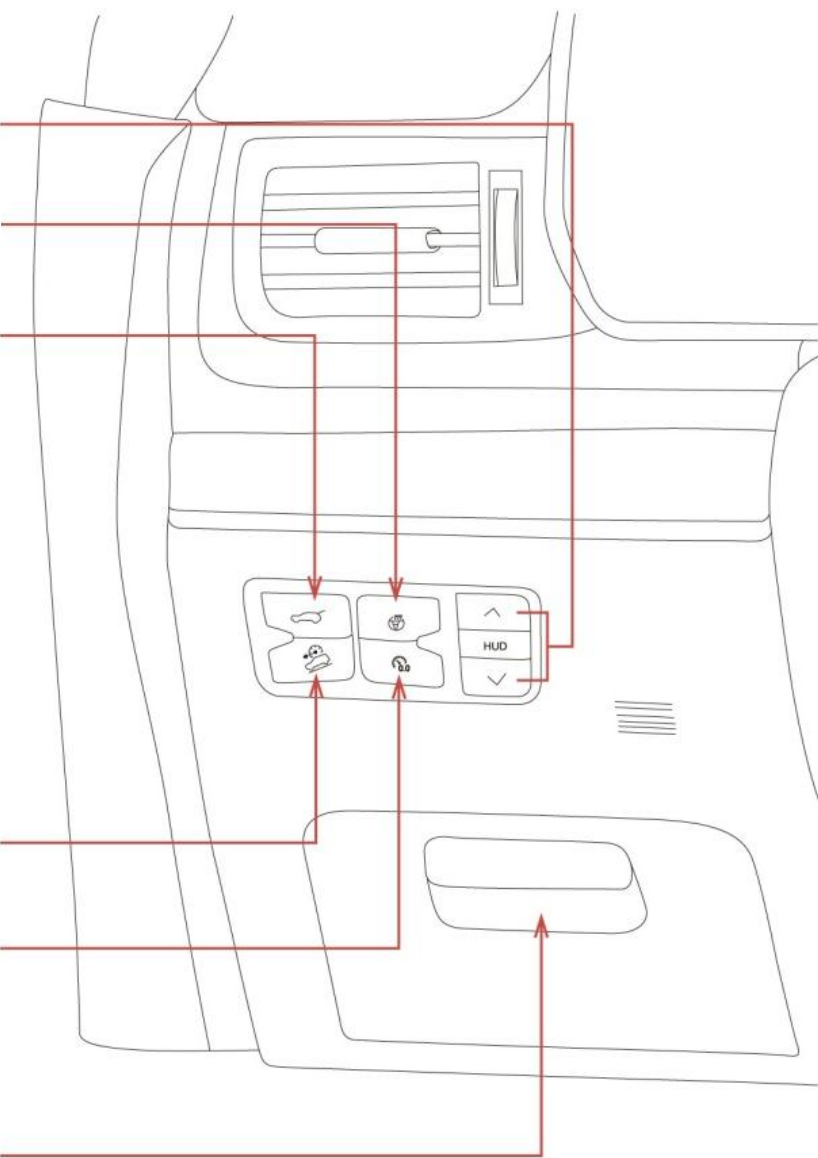
P.206

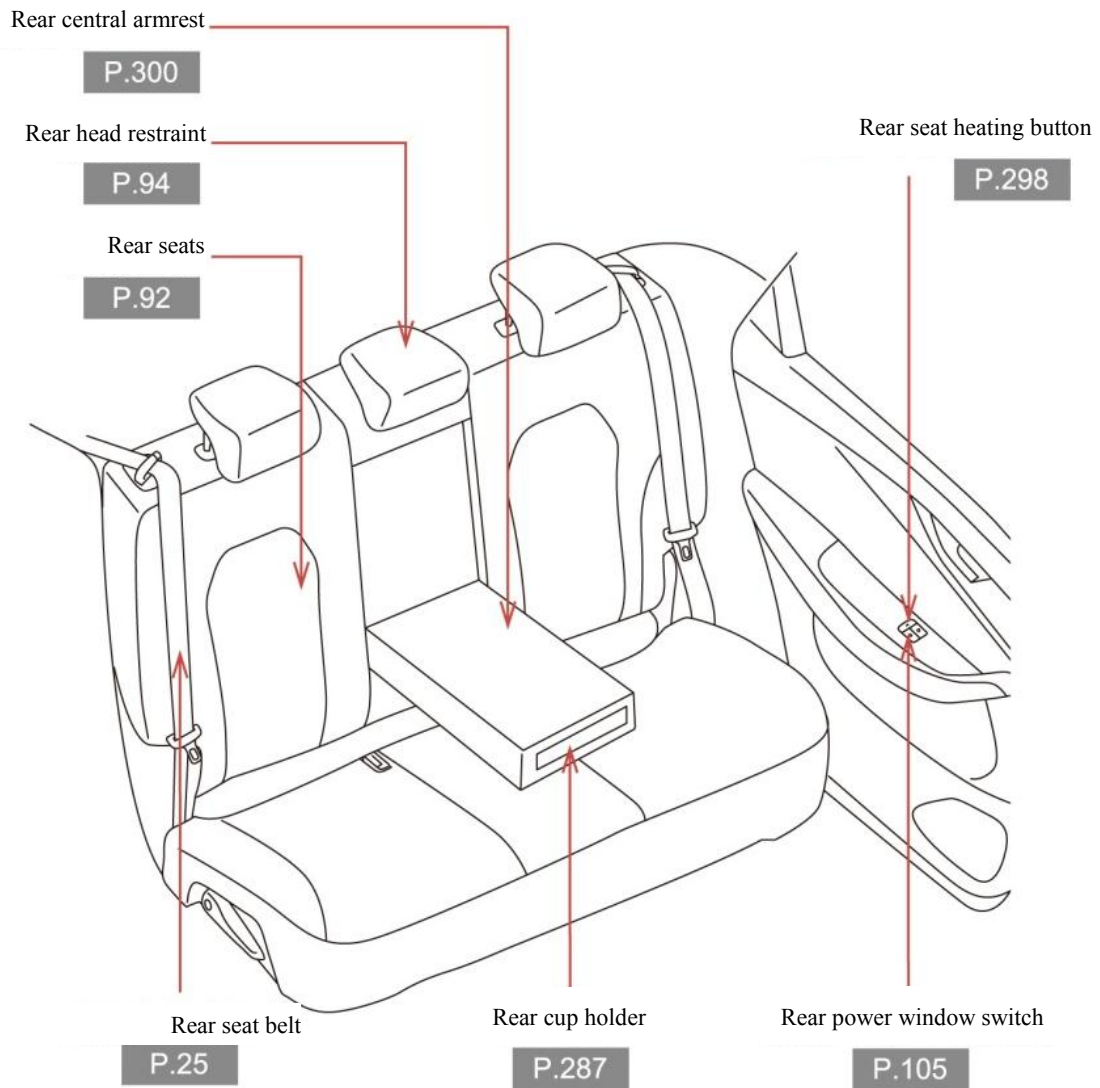
Mileage setting button

P.61

Left lower panel glove box

P.286





## For Your Information

### Instructions for the User's Manual

Only after getting a driving license can the owner drive this vehicle on road. This manual specifically targets at qualified drivers.

In this manual, "\*" means that the configuration and function may vary by and are only available in certain countries, regions, and vehicle models. Any equipment shall be subject to the real vehicle configuration.

All specifications provided in this manual are up-to-date as of the time the manual is delivered to print. However, due to FAW's constant efforts in re-modelling and improving, the equipments and performance of subsequent models may vary. Accordingly, contents of this manual will be updated at any time without notice. It's not suggested you compare the contents in other Manual versions with the equipments and performance of the vehicle you purchased, and demand additional gears in light of differences between versions. If you are unclear about the purchased vehicle or the User's Manual, please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealers.

### Accessories, Spare Parts and Modification of the Vehicle

The FAW authorized Hongqi dealers possess advanced tools, equipments and genuine accessories required for providing maintenance and service for your vehicle. We suggest you use the qualified genuine accessories and spare parts.

FAW cannot accept any liability nor can it guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine FAW accessories and spare parts, neither for replacement nor installation involving such parts. In addition, damages or performance problems resulting from the use of non-genuine FAW spare parts or accessories may not be covered under warranty.

Do not use products which are not authorized by FAW to modify the vehicle, otherwise it will affect the vehicle's maneuverability, safety and durability, and may even violate local government regulations. Besides, any problems caused by the modification are not covered under warranty.

### Read the vehicle identification number

Use the diagnostic instrument to connect to the vehicle OBD port. When the ECU information is being read, you can read the vehicle VIN code. Reading tools are available on the market and must conform to ISO14229, ISO15765, ISO15031 and ISO11898 standards.

## **Install the RF Transmitter System**

Installing a radio frequency transmitter system on the vehicle may affect electronic systems, such as:

- Anti-lock braking system
- Cruise control system
- Airbag system
- Seat belt pre-loading system

Please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealers before you install the RF transmitter system.

Please confirm with FAW authorized Hongqi dealers to learn about preventive measures or special instructions for installing a RF transmitter system.

For details on RF bands, power levels, antenna locations and RF transmitter installation regulations, please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealers.

Excessive noise may occur when receiving radio frequency from other radio frequency transmitting channels (RF transmitters).

## **Vehicle Scrapping**

Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by FAW authorized Hongqi dealers before you scrap the vehicle. The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in the vehicle contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners intact, it may cause injury or fire, etc.

## Vehicle Model Code

This manual introduces the vehicle models CA6471<sup>\*1</sup>, CA6472HA6<sup>\*1</sup>, CA6471T<sup>\*2</sup>, CA6472HA6T<sup>\*2</sup>.

\*<sup>1</sup>: Two-wheel drive vehicle.

\*<sup>2</sup>: Four-wheel drive vehicle.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Driving precautions

The driver always drive soberly and defensively with full attention.

- Sober driving: do not drive the vehicle after drinking or taking drugs. Alcohol or some drugs will delay the response time and affect the judgment and coordination ability, which may lead to serious injury or even death.
- Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Pay attention to the moves of other vehicles and pedestrians at any time so as to make timely judgements and prevent accidents.
- Focus on driving: Always concentrate on driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting control buttons, making a phone call, or reading could cause vehicle crash, serious injury or even death.

#### ■ Safety Precautions for Children

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- Never allow children to have or use the key, otherwise they may be able to start the vehicle or operate the shift lever to cause safety hazards.
- Do not allow children to play with doors, windows or other vehicle equipment, otherwise children may be injured.
- Make sure the temperature in the vehicle is favourable, because extreme temperatures inside can be fatal to children.

## Reading this Manual

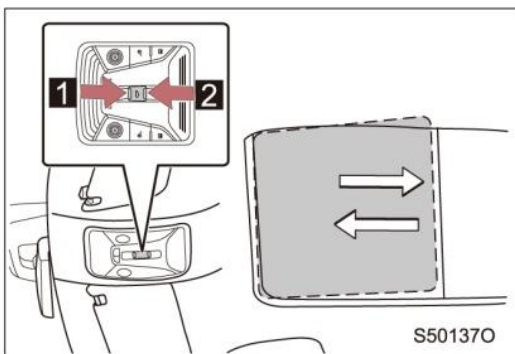
### CAUTIONS


Introduce warning. Failure to follow instructions may result in serious personal injury or even death.


### Caution

Explain precautions which, if not observed, may cause damages or failures in the vehicle or devices.


**Step 1** Indicates that operations or steps are performed in numerical order.



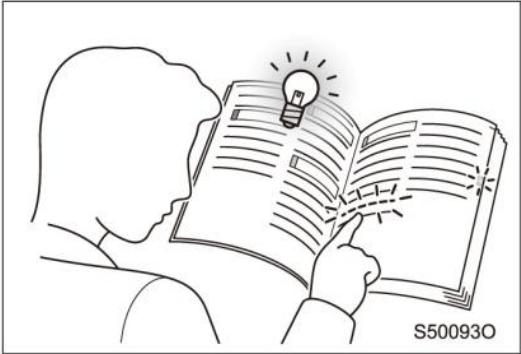
 Indicates actions (push, turn, press, etc.) for operating switches and other devices.

 Indicates results of operation (e.g., the lid is open).



 It means “Do not do this” or “Do not let this happen”.

**How to Search**



- **Search by title**
- Contents.....P.1



- **Search by installation position**
- Pictorial index.....P.6





# Safety Instructions **1**

## 1.1. Instructions for Safe Use

Safe driving .....24

Seat belt .....25

Airbag.....31

Child safety information .....42

Children restraint device .....43

Install the child restraint device .....47

Precautions for Exhaust Gas .....50

## 1-2. Anti-theft system

Engine anti-theft system.....51

Body anti-theft system.....52

**Adjust the seats, steering wheel and rear-view mirrors to the appropriate position before driving to ensure safety.**

■ **Correct driving posture**



- 1** Sit back straight and lean against the seat back.
- 2** Adjust the position of the seat backward to ensure that the pedals can be easily depressed.
- 3** Adjust the backrest of the seat so that you can easily operate all the control switches.
- 4** Adjust the tilt of the steering wheel so that the airbag is facing your chest.
- 5** Adjust and lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint flush with the top edge of the passenger's ears.
- 6** Wear the seat belt correctly.

■ **Use the seat belts correctly**

Before driving the vehicle, make sure the driver and all the passengers wear seat belts.

Children should use appropriate child restraint devices until they are grown to fit with the seat belts on the vehicle.

■ **Adjust the rearview mirror**

By properly adjusting the interior and exterior mirrors to ensure a good view of the rear situation.

**⚠ CAUTIONS**

■ **Precautions when driving**

- Do not adjust the driver's seat position during driving, otherwise the vehicle may be out of control.
- Do not place a back cushion between the body and the seat back, otherwise it is not conducive to maintaining the correct sitting position and reduces the effectiveness of the seat belt and the head restraint, which may lead to serious personal injury or even death.
- Do not place items under the front seat, as this may result in items being caught between the seat rails, preventing the seat from locking and causing an accident.
- It is easy to get tired during long-distance driving and you should take a proper rest.

If you feel tired or sleepy during driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

■ **Adjust the seat position**

- Be careful when adjusting the seat position. Make sure that other passengers will not be hurt when the seat moves.
- Do not place your hands under the seat or near moving parts when adjusting the seat. Otherwise, your fingers may be pinched by the seat adjusting device.

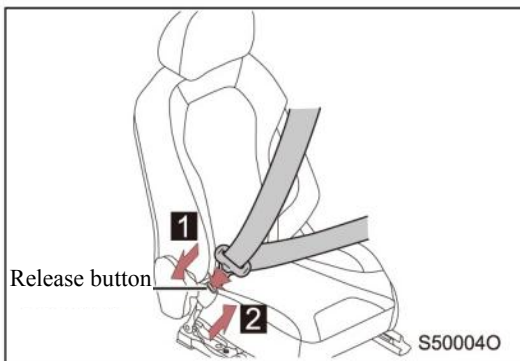
**Before driving the vehicle, ensure that all occupants in the vehicle have fastened their seat belts.**

### Correct use of the seat belts



- Stretch the shoulder belt so that it crosses the shoulder, but should not touch the neck or slip off the shoulder.
- Cross the waist belt across the hip as low as possible.
- Adjust the seat back position, sit up straight and rest on the seat back.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

### Fasten and release the seat belts

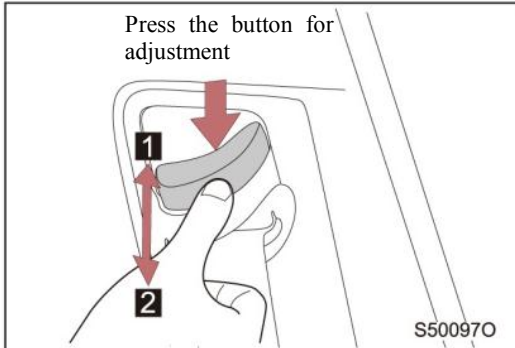


- 1** Fasten the seatbelt  
Insert the locking bolt into the buckle until a "click" sound is heard.
- 2** Loosen the seatbelt  
Press the release button.

### **Caution**

If the driver or passenger does not wear the seat belt, the instrument cluster will give an alarm when the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

### Adjust the seat belt height (front seats)

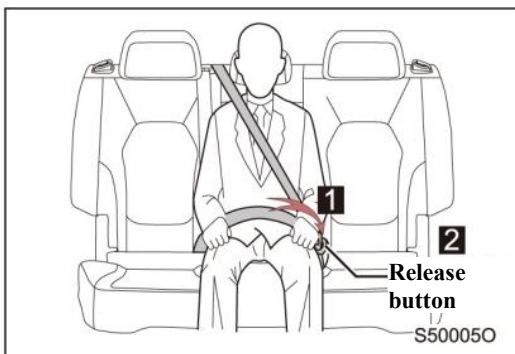


**1** Up

**2** Down

Press and hold the adjusting button and move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a "click".

### Rear central seat belt



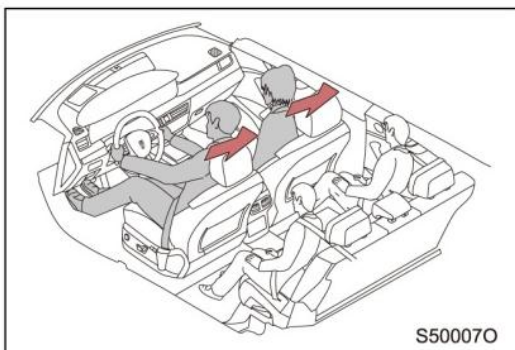
**1** Fasten the seatbelt

Insert the locking bolt into the buckle until a "click" sound is heard.

**2** Loosen the seatbelt

Press the release button.

### Seat belt pretensioners (only for front seats)



If the vehicle suffers from some serious frontal impact, the pretensioner will be activated, tighten the seat belt, reduce the slack of the seat belt, to protect the driver and front passenger better.

However, the pretensioner will not be activated during minor frontal, side or rear-end collision.

---

**■ Emergency lockup retractor (ELR)**

In case of emergency braking or collision, the retractor will lock the seatbelt. If you lean forward too fast, it will also lock the seatbelt. Moving slowly and smoothly will extend the seatbelt and allow you to move freely.

**■ Use of child seat belt**

The seat belts of your vehicle are designed for persons of adult size.

- Children should use appropriate child protection devices unless they have grown up to use seatbelts on vehicles.
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, they should also follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage for adults. (See P.25)

**■ Replace the belt after the pretensioner has been activated**

- If the vehicle is subject to multiple collisions, the seat belt pretensioner will be activated in the first collision, but will not be activated in the second and subsequent collisions.
- When the seat belt pretensioner is activated in a collision, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW to replace the seat belt in time.

**■ Seat belt regulations**

If your country or region has relevant laws and regulations on seat belts, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW for replacement or installation of seat belts.

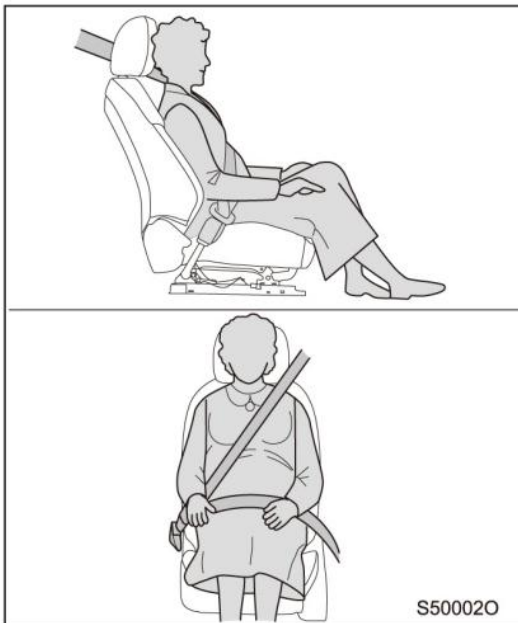
**⚠ CAUTIONS**

To reduce the risk of personal injury during emergency braking, emergency steering or accidents, please observe the following precautions, otherwise serious personal injury or even death may result.

■ **Fasten the seat belts**

- Make sure that the driver and all occupants have fastened their seat belts.
- Always wear seat belts correctly.
- Do not tilt the seat too much for comfort. Because the seat belt can only be used for greater protection when the occupant is seated upright against the seatback.
- Do not place the shoulder seatbelt under the arm.
- Be sure to place the seat belt across the hip as low as possible.

■ **Pregnant woman**



- Please wear the seat belt correctly as directed.
- Pregnant women should also wear waist belts across the hips as low as possible, just like other occupants. The shoulder belt should be stretched diagonally across the shoulder and across the chest. Avoid wearing a seat belt on the raised abdomen.
- If the seat belt is not properly fastened, pregnant women and fetuses may be seriously injured or even die in case of emergency braking or collision.

■ **Patient**

Please wear the seat belt correctly as directed.

■ **When children are in the car**

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt is wrapped around a child's neck, it can cause suffocation or other serious injuries that can result in death.

If this happens and the buckle cannot be released, cut the seatbelt with scissors.

 **CAUTIONS**

To reduce the possibility of personal injury during emergency braking or accident and avoid causing serious personal injury or even death, please observe the following precautions.

**■ Correctly wear the seat belt**

- It is very dangerous for the driver to be in an incorrect posture or wear a seat belt incorrectly. Due to the incorrect wearing position of the seat belt, the pretensioner and the force limiting system are not providing adequate protection, which may lead to serious personal injury.
- It is very dangerous not to fasten your seat belt. During the collision, occupants who do not fasten their seat belts may collide with other people or objects in the car, or even be thrown out of the car, resulting in serious injury or even death. In the same collision, occupants who have fastened their seat belts will be safer.

**■ Do not wear the twisted seat belt**

Twisted seat belts are very dangerous. During the collision, the seat belt will not be able to fully utilize the entire width to absorb the impact force. So that more force is exerted on the bones under the seat belt, which may lead to serious personal injury or even death.

**■ Do not share a seat belt among more than one passenger**

It is hazardous for more than one passenger (including children) to share a seat belt. Because the seat belts cannot properly disperse the impact force, the passengers may hit each other and cause serious injury or even death.

**■ Adjustable shoulder restraint (front seat)**

Make sure the shoulder belt crosses over the middle of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far away from the neck, but not slip off the shoulder. Otherwise, the safety of the seat belt will be reduced in the event of an accident, which may result in serious personal injury or death in an emergency braking, emergency steering or accident.

**■ Do not over-tilt the seat**

Please do not tilt the seat excessively for comfort. Because the seat belt can only be used for greater protection when the occupant is seated upright against the seatback.

**■ Do not drive the vehicle with a damaged seat belt**

Using a damaged seat belt is very dangerous. An accident may cause damage to the seat belt. Damaged seat belts do not provide adequate protection in the event of a collision. All seat belt systems must be inspected by an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW before using the seat belt again after an accident.

**■ Seatbelt pretensioners**

After any collision, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW immediately to check the seat belt pretensioner and the airbag. Like the airbag, the seat belt pretensioner can only be used once, and must be replaced after deployed during a collision. If the seat belt pretensioner is not replaced, the risk of serious injury to the passenger will increase when a collision occurs again.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ **Damage and wear of seat belts**

- Do not allow the door to grip the seat belt, locking tab or buckle, as this may damage the seat belt.
- The seat belt device must be inspected regularly. Inspect the seat belt components for cuts, wear and looseness. Do not use the seat belt after it has been damaged and replace it. The damaged seat belt cannot protect the occupants, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Make sure that the seatbelt lock tongue and buckle are locked and the seat belt is not twisted.

If the seat belt does not work properly, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW immediately.

- If the vehicle was subject to a serious accident, replace the seat belt with the seat assembly even if there is no visible damage.
- Do not install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of seat belts without authorization. Please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW for necessary repairs. Improper handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.



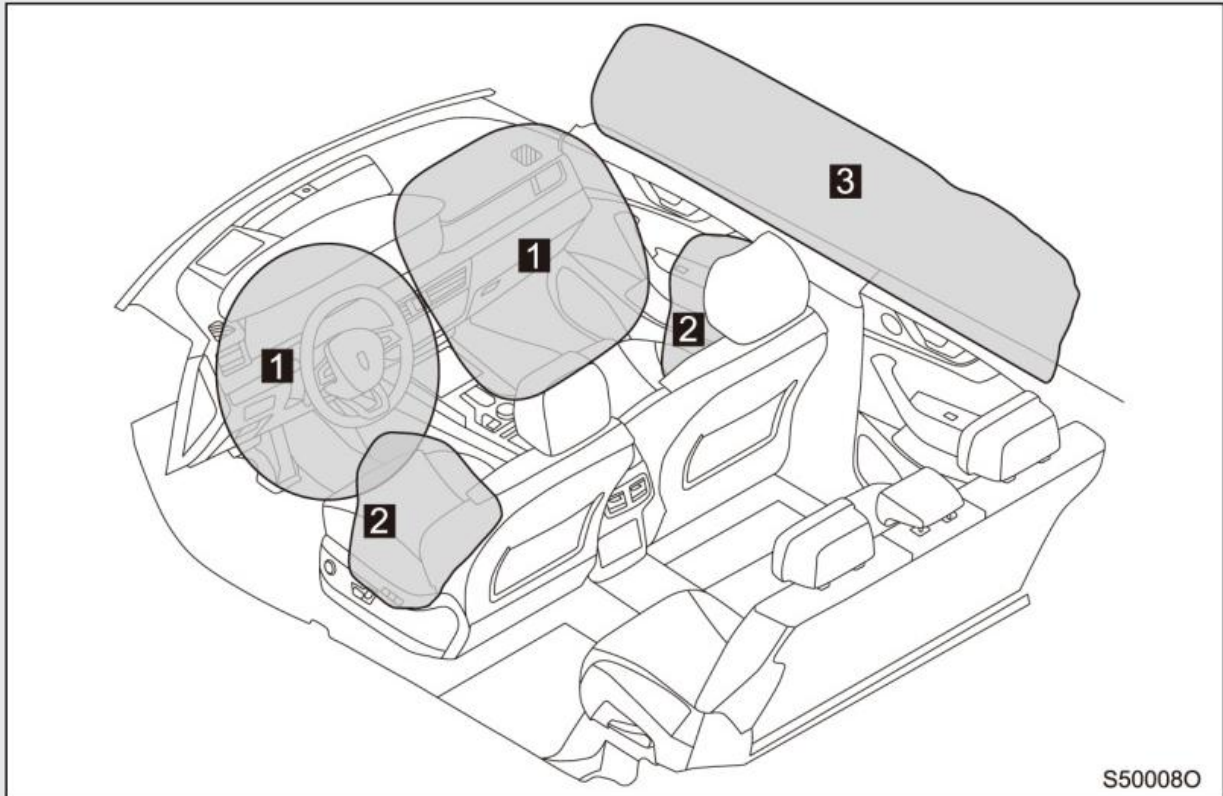
## Caution

### ■ **Keep seat belts clean.**

**If the seat belt is dirty, the seat belt may be difficult to retract, so please keep the seat belt clean. (See P.306)**

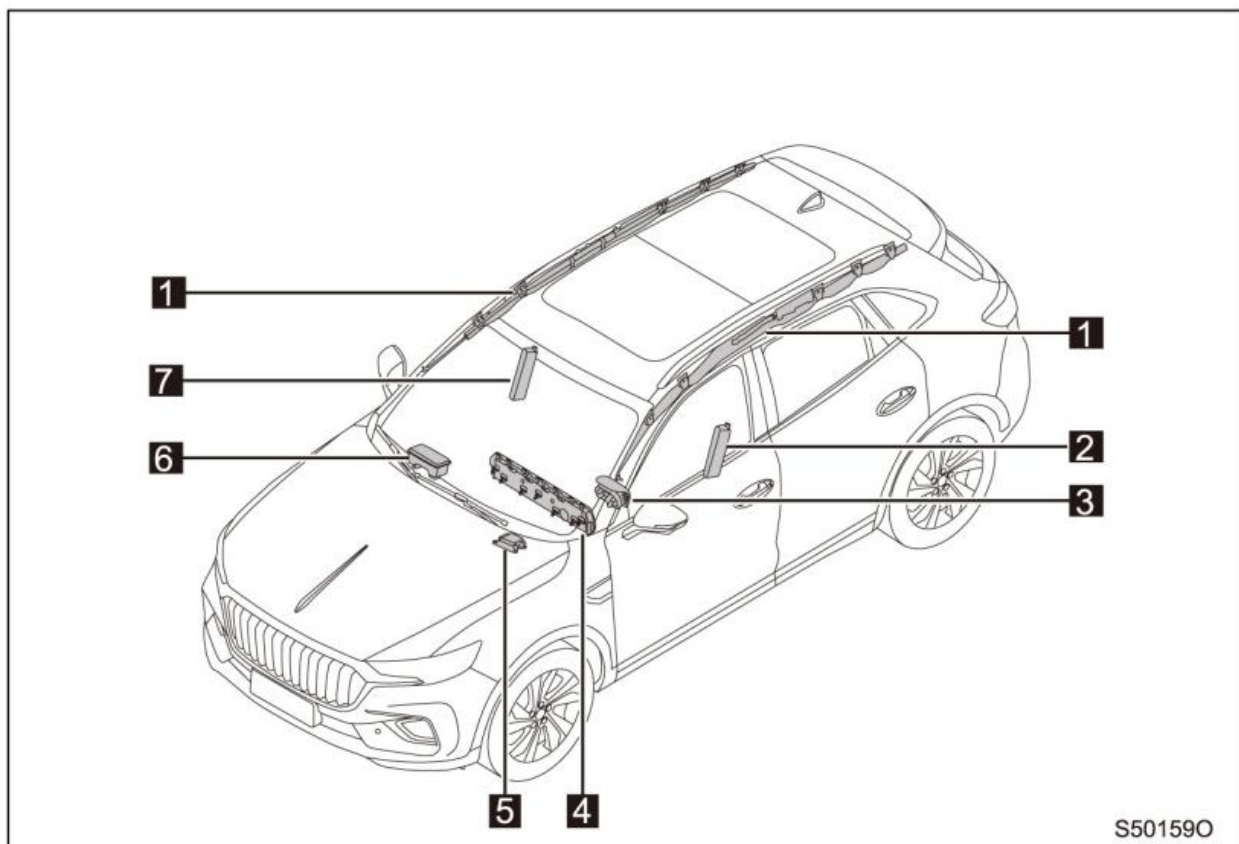


The airbags are the passive safety protection devices to reduce or avoid injury to the passengers when the vehicle is subjected to severe impacts that may cause serious injury to the passengers. When the vehicle is under some serious impacts, the airbag is activated. The vehicle is equipped with multiple airbags. The airbags are used in conjunction with seat belts to reduce the risk of serious injury or death to the passengers in the vehicle. (The shape of the inflated airbag is only for reference).



- 1** Driver airbag/Front passenger airbag  
Help protect the heads and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact of interior components.
- 2** Driver seat airbag/Front passenger seat airbag  
Help protect the torso of the front seat passengers.
- 3** Curtain airbag  
Help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger and passengers in the side rear seats.

### Airbag system components



- 1** Curtain airbag
- 2** Driver seat airbag
- 3** Driver's airbag
- 4** Airbag failure alarm light
- 5** Airbag control unit
- 6** Front passenger airbag
- 7** Front passenger seat airbag

The main airbag system components are shown above.

The airbag system triggers the airbag gas generator in the event of some severe frontal or side impact. The chemical reaction in the gas generator quickly makes the airbag filled up with non-toxic gas, so as to avoid injury caused by secondary collision between the driver and car.

 **CAUTIONS****■ Precautions for Airbags**

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags.

Otherwise, it may result in serious injury or even death.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
- The airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The impact force of the driver's airbag deployment is quite large. If the driver is too close to the airbag, it may cause serious personal injury or even death.
- When the driver's airbag is deployed, the first 0-100 mm deployment range is a high-risk area and at least 200 mm from the driver's airbag ensures safety. This distance refers to the distance from the center of the steering wheel to the driver's sternum. If the distance after sitting is less than 200 mm, the following methods can be used to adjust the driving position:
  - Move the seat back as far as possible, but only if you can easily depress the pedal.
  - Tilt the seat back slightly. For most drivers, even if the driver's seat is moved to the front most position, the distance of 200 mm can be realized only by slightly tilting back the seat back. If it is difficult to see the road ahead after the seat back is tilted, a hard non-slip seat cushion can be placed on the seat to raise your body or the seat can be raised.
  - Adjust the steering wheel and tilt it downward as far as possible. This allows the airbag to face the driver's chest instead of the head and neck.

When adjusting the driver's seat according to the above suggestions, keep the pedal and steering wheel within the control range of the driver, and the dashboard control switch should also be kept within the driver's field of view.

- The airbag system can only provide one-time accident protection. If the airbag system is triggered, the system must be replaced.
- When disposing of the vehicle or components of the airbag system and pre-tensioned seat belts, the relevant safety regulations must be observed.
- Be sure to fasten your seat belt

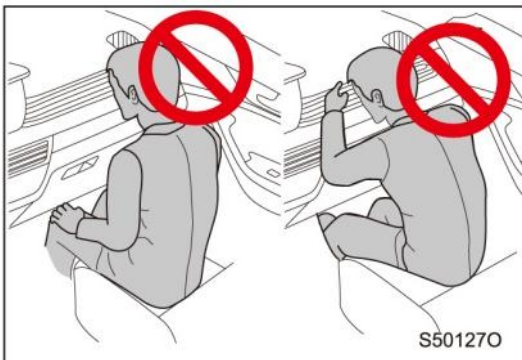
When driving vehicles equipped with airbags, you must fasten your seat belt. It is very dangerous to rely solely on airbag protection in an accident. Relying solely on airbags may not avoid serious injuries. Therefore, you must always fasten your seat belt.

**⚠ CAUTIONS**

**■ Precautions for Airbags**

● The impact force of the driver's airbag deployment is quite large. If the driver is too close to the airbag, it may cause serious personal injury or even death. The front passenger seat should be as far away from the airbag as possible. Adjust the seat back to make the front passenger sit upright.

● Infants with improper sitting posture and improper protection may be hurt seriously or even dead due to air bag unfolding. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child protector. We strongly recommend that infants and young children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained and protected. For infants and young children, the rear seat is safer than the co-driver seat.



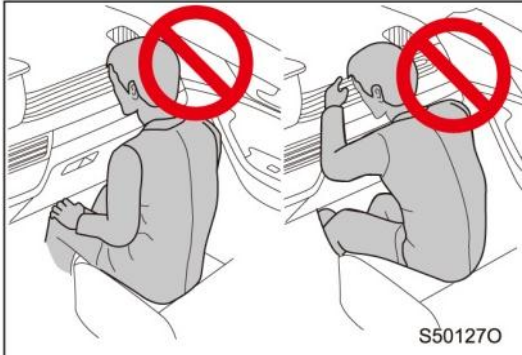
● Please do not lean against the instrument panel, A-pillar, roof side frame, door part or seat edge, otherwise, when the front passenger's airbag is deployed, it may cause a strong impact on the head, resulting in serious personal injury and even death (more attention should be paid to the children in the car).



● Do not allow children to stand in front of the co-driver's airbag device.  
 ● Do not let children sit on the legs of the front passenger or place objects on the legs of the front passenger



● Do not lean against the door, roof cant rail, A-pillar, B-pillar or C-pillar.


**CAUTIONS**
**■ Precautions for Airbags**


- Do not kneel on the passenger seat facing the door or extend your head or hands out of the car.



- Do not stick any articles or lean on the instrument panel or the cover of the driver's airbag. Because these articles may be ejected when the driver's airbag or the co-driver's airbag is deployed.



- Do not tie anything to the door, windshield, window glass, A-pillar, B-pillar, C-pillar, roof cant rail, or roof handle, etc.
- Do not hang hangers or other hard objects on the hook. If curtain airbags are deployed, these objects may be ejected and cause serious injury or death.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Precautions for Airbags

- Do not use seat accessories that may cover the deployment area of the seat airbag. They may hinder the deployment of the airbag.
- Do not hit the area where the airbag components are located or apply excessive force on them, otherwise the airbag may fail.
- Do not touch the relevant components immediately after the airbag is deployed (inflated), as they may be very hot.
- If you feel difficult to breathe after the airbag is deployed, please open the door and the window, for ventilation or leave the vehicle under the condition of ensuring safety. The residue on the body should be washed as soon as possible to avoid irritating the skin.
- If the parts of the airbag (such as the driver airbag cover and instrument panel) are damaged or broken, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW for replacement.

### ■ After the airbag development during vehicle collision

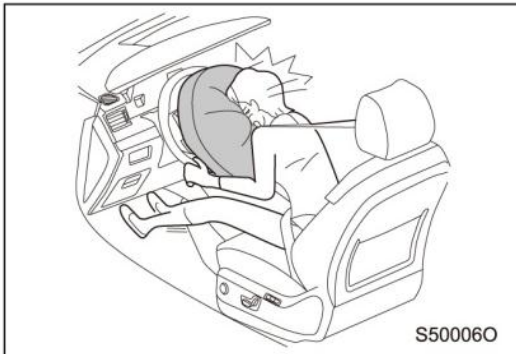
After the airbag is deployed in the event of a collision, the airbag control unit must be replaced at an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW. The original one is not allowed to be used anymore.

### ■ Modification and scrap of airbag.

Do not scrap the vehicle or make the following modifications without consulting an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW. Otherwise, the airbag may malfunction or be deployed (inflated) accidentally, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbag.
- Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seat or seat trim, A-pillar, B-pillar, C-pillar or roof cant rail.
- Repair or modification of front fender, front bumper or both sides of carriage.
- Install tools such as snow plows and trays on the front grille.
- Modification of vehicle suspension system.
- Install mobile two-way walkie talkie.

■ If the airbag deploys (inflated)



- The impact force of the airbag deployment is quite large, and the occupants are too close to the airbag, it may lead to serious injury of casualties.
- When the air bag is deployed, it will be accompanied by a detonation sound of the airbag, and smoke will appear, but no fire will occur. If people with respiratory and tracheal diseases such as asthma inhale this gas, they may feel difficult to breathe. At this time, it is safer to get out of the car immediately. If you can't escape to the outside the car, open the window or door and breathe in fresh air.
- When the airbag is deployed at extremely high speed, it may cause minor abrasions, scalds, bruises, etc.
- When residue (gas, etc.) from airbag deployment splashes into eyes or adheres to skin, it should be cleaned with clear water as soon as possible. People with sensitive skin may have allergic reactions.
- Airbag module components (including steering wheel hub, airbag cover and gas generator) and seat, front pillar and roof cant rail components may be very hot in a few minutes. The airbag itself may also be very hot.
- The front windshield may break.

■ Factors triggering the airbags

- The triggering of the airbag in various accident situations cannot be generally determined. Because the specific conditions of accidents vary greatly. For example, the nature (degree of hardness and softness) of the objects impacted by the vehicle, the impact angle and the vehicle speed are all important factors for triggering the airbag.
- The decisive factor for triggering the airbag is the deceleration curve and pressure curve generated during the collision. The sensors installed on the vehicle together with the electronic control unit recognize the severity of the collision and trigger the airbag selectively in time. If the deceleration value or pressure value of the vehicle generated and measured during the collision is lower than the preset reference value in the control unit, the airbag will not be deployed even though the vehicle may have been deformed to a certain extent in the accident.

■ Working conditions (driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag)

- In case of serious frontal collision, with collision degree exceeding the set critical value, the driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag will deploy.

However, if the vehicle hits a movable or deformable object (such as a parked vehicle or a signal column) or a drill-in collision occurs (such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "goes under" the truck's cargo compartment, etc.), the airbag may not be deployed at this time.

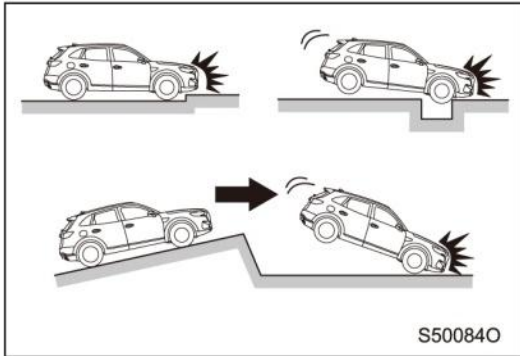
- In some collisions, the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed critical value, but the front airbag and seat belt pretensioner may not be activated.

■ **Operating conditions (Seat airbags and curtain airbags)**

- With the impact exceeding the set critical value in the event of severe side collision, the side airbags and curtain airbags on the collision side will be deployed.
- Seat airbags and curtain airbags may be deployed together with the driver airbag/front passenger airbag in the event of some special accidents.

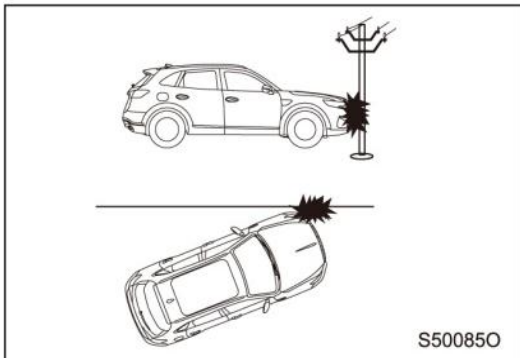
■ **Other conditions under which the airbags may inflate (except collision)**

The driver airbag/front passenger airbag may also be deployed if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.



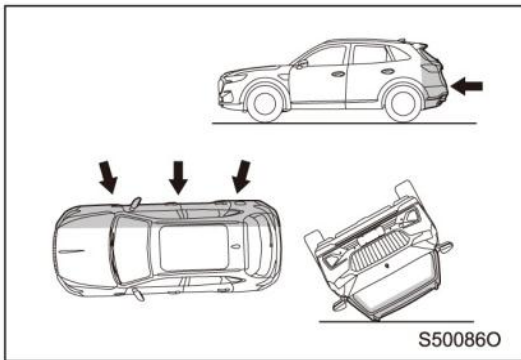
- Hit on road shoulder, sidewalk edge or hard surface
- Falling into or crossing deeper grooves
- Hard landing of wheels or the vehicle falls

■ **Conditions where airbags may not deploy (driver airbag/front passenger airbag)**



- Hit on a pole, tree or other cylindrical object
- Hit, not on the front face, a wall or highway guardrail

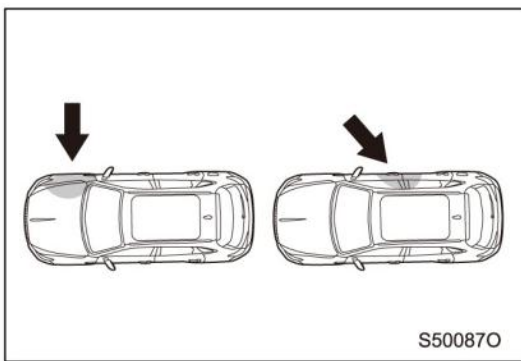




- Rear-end collision
- side collision
- rolling over

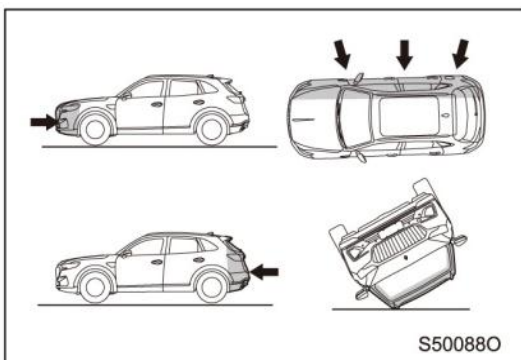
■ Situations where the airbag (seat airbag or curtain airbag) may not deploy

Seat airbags/curtain airbags may not deploy if the vehicle experiences a side impact at an angle to the body or if the non-passenger compartment experiences a side impact.



- Lateral impact of non-passenger compartment
- Side impact at an angle to the vehicle

The seat airbags and curtain airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a low-speed head-on or side collision or a rear-end collision, or rolls over.

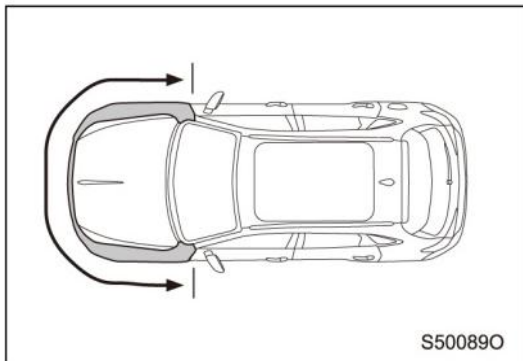


- Low velocity front collision
- Low velocity side collision
- Rear-end collision
- rolling over

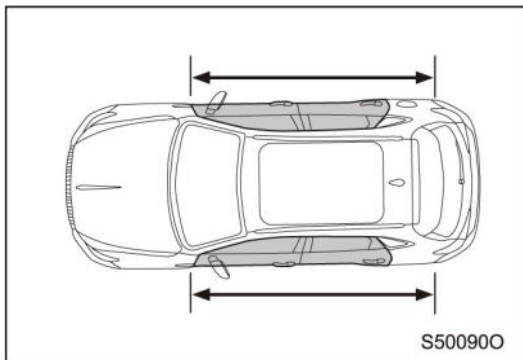
■ **When to contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW**

In the following cases, the vehicle needs to be checked and/or repaired. Please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW as soon as possible.

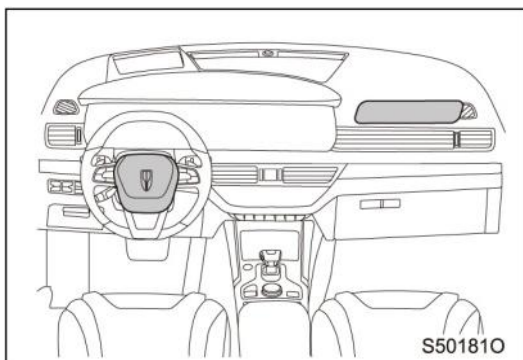
- Any airbag is deployed.



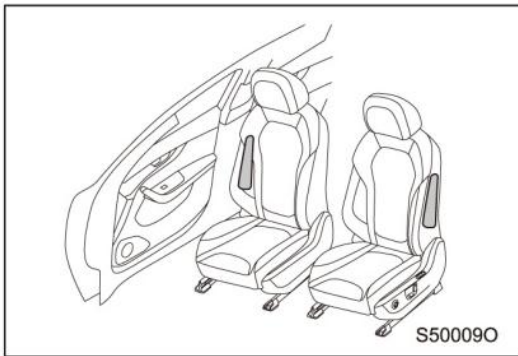
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or there has been a collision accident that did not deploy the airbag.



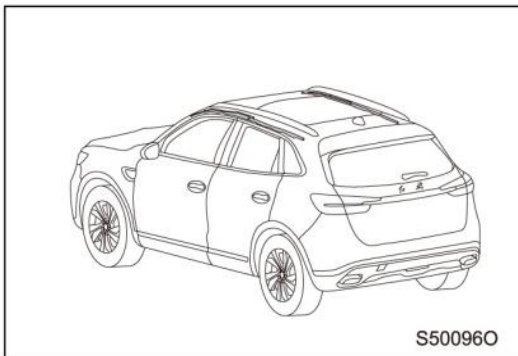
- The door part or the area around the door is damaged or deformed, or there has been a collision accident that causes the seat airbag and curtain airbag to deploy.



- There are scratches, cracks or other damages on the driver's airbag cover, the instrument panel near the front passenger's airbag.



- There are scratches, cracks or other damages on the seat surface equipped with seat airbag.



- There are scratches, cracks or other damages on the parts of curtain airbag, and parts such as A-pillar, B-pillar and C-pillar guard.

**Please observe the following precautions when there are children in the car.**

**Children should use appropriate child protection devices until they have grown up to use seatbelts on vehicles.**

- It is recommended that children be seated in the rear seat to prevent accidental touching of the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- Use the child safety lock on the rear door or window lock switch to prevent children from opening the door or accidentally operating the power window during driving.
- Do not allow children to operate equipment that may pinch body parts, such as power windows, hood, trunk lid, seats, etc.



#### **CAUTIONS**

**■ Do not allow the child to carry the vehicle key or leave the child along to play in the vehicle**

- It is very dangerous for the child to play on the folded rear seats. Once the seat back is restored to its original position, children will be trapped in the enclosed trunk and not be able to leave. To avoid such incidents, make sure the seat back is locked in place.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Do not let the child carry or use the key.

Children may start the vehicle or operate the gear selector. Children may also hurt themselves when playing with windows, sunroof or other vehicle equipment. Also, if the temperature inside the car is too high or too low, it may cause fatal injury to children.

**■ Ensure to lock the vehicle and keep the key in the place out of the child reach**

It is very dangerous to leave the car unlocked or leave the key in a place that children can reach. Children entering the trunk through the opened trunk will be accidentally locked in the trunk. Especially in summer, it may lead to heat exhaustion of the children, resulting in brain injury and even death. Be sure to lock the door and trunk, whether you have children or not, and to ensure further safety, please ensure that the rear seat backs are locked.

**FAW strongly recommends the use of child restraint device.**

### Points to be remembered

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint device on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Please select the appropriate child protection device according to the child's weight and size.
- For installation details, please refer to the instructions provided with the child protection device.

General installation instructions are provided in this manual.

- China FAW recommends that you use child protection devices that comply with GB27887-2011.

### Types of children restraint devices

According to GB27887-2011, child protection devices can be divided into the following 5 groups: group 0: < 10 kg

Group 0+: < 13 kg

Group I: 9kg-18kg

Group II: 15 kg - 25 kg

Group III: 22 kg - 36 kg

Information on the adaptability of different sitting positions to child restraint systems

Mass group	Seating position (or other position)		
	Assistant Driver seat	Rear outside seats	Rear center seat
Group 0 : < 10 kg	X	X	X
Group 0+: < 13 kg	X	X	X
Group I: 9 kg - 18 kg	X	X	X
Group II: 15 kg - 25 kg	X	X	X
Group III: 22 kg - 36 kg	X	X	X

The meaning of the letter in the above table:

X: This seat position is not applicable to the restraint system for children in this mass group.

<b>Information on the adaptability of different ISOFIX positions to ISOFIX child restraint systems</b>
--

The information in the table below shows the suitability of the child restraint system in different seat positions.

Mass group	Size class	Fixture module	ISOFIX position on the vehicle	
			Rear left seat	Rear right seat
Portable baby crib	F	ISO/L1	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X
Group 0 : < 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	IUF	IUF
Group 0+ : < 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	IUF	IUF
	D	ISO/R2	IUF	IUF
	C	ISO/R3	IUF	IUF
Group I: 9 kg - 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	IUF	IUF
	C	ISO/R3	IUF	IUF
	B	ISO/F2	IUF	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	IUF	IUF

The meaning of the letter in the above table:

IUF: Suitable for forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for this mass group.

IL: Applicable to ISOFIX child restraint systems of special category on the list. These restraint systems may be for special vehicle type, restricted type or semi-universal type.

X: The ISOFIX position is not suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

---

**■ When installing the child restraint device in the front passenger seat**

It is not recommended to install the child restraint device in the front passenger seat. When it is not avoidable, the following adjustments are necessary:



- Adjust the seat back to the fully vertical position.
- Move the seat backward as far as possible.
- Adjust the seat cushion to the highest position.

**■ Choosing a Set of Appropriate Child Restraint System**

- The child should use appropriate child restraint systems unless they are grown to fit in the seat belts.
- If the child is too big to use the child restraint system, let the child sit in the rear seat and use the vehicle's seatbelt.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Use the child restraint system

● If a child restraint system that is not suitable for this vehicle is used, it may not be possible to properly protect infants or children. This may lead to serious casualties (in case of emergency braking or accidents).

### ■ Precautions for child protection

● Seat belts or child protection devices must be used to restrain and protect children according to their weight and size, to protect children effectively in case of accidents and emergency braking. Holding children in your arms is not a substitute for child protection. In an accident, children may get in contact with the windshield or be squeezed between you and the carriage.

● We strongly recommend that you select the appropriate child restraint system according to the child's body shape and place it on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, children sitting in the rear seat and using the restraint system correctly are safer than children sitting in the front seat.

● Never install a rear-facing child protection device on the front passenger's seat. Otherwise, the impact force of the rapid deployment of the front passenger's airbag may cause serious injury or even death to the child in case of an accident.

● The forward-facing child protection device can only be installed on the front passenger seat if it is necessary to do so. The deployment speed of the front passenger's airbag is quite fast and the impact force is great. Therefore, the seat should be moved backward as much as possible. Otherwise, the child may be seriously injured or even killed.

● For vehicles with seat airbags and curtain airbags, even if the child has been placed in the child protection device, do not let him/her lean any part of his/her head or body on the door, seat, roof cant rail (the deployed parts of the seat airbag or curtain airbag). The seat airbag and curtain airbag will be very dangerous when deployed, and the strong impact force may cause serious injury or even death to children.

● Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer and always ensure that the child protection device is firmly fixed.

A child protection device that is not firmly fixed is very dangerous. In the event of an emergency brake or collision, the child protection device may move, causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants.

### ■ When children are in the car

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt is wrapped around a child's neck, it can cause suffocation or other serious injuries or even death.

If this happens and the buckle cannot be released, cut the seatbelt with scissors.

### ■ At Non-Applicability of Child Restraint System

● Even if no child protection device is used, the child should be properly fixed on the seat.

Do not place unprotected child protection devices in the passenger compartment.

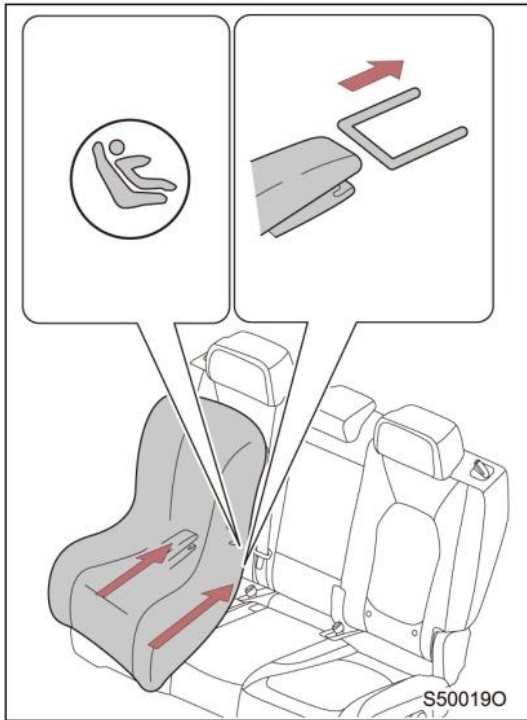
● If the child protection device must be removed, remove it from the vehicle or integrate it into the trunk and secure it.

If the headrest is removed when installing the child protection device, the headrest must be installed before driving. This can prevent the injury of passengers in case of emergency braking or accidents.



**Follow the instruction manual provided by the manufacturer. Use ISOFIX rigid anchor to secure the child restraint device to the seat. Attach the top tether strap when installing the child restraint device.**

**Installing with the ISOFIX rigid anchor**



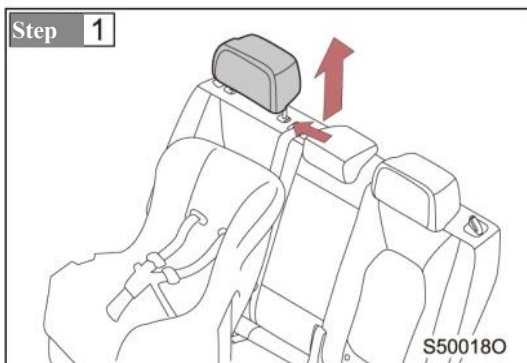
**Step 1** Slightly increase the gap between seat cushion and seat back -

**Step 2** Insert the buckle into the special fixing rod.

If the head restraint hampers the correct installation of the child restraint device, remove it before installing the child restraint device. (See P.94)

If the child protection device is equipped with a top strap, the top strap should be fixed to the anchor support.

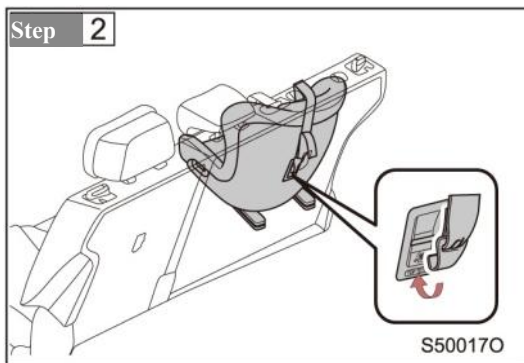
**Installing with the ISOFIX rigid anchor**



**Step 1**

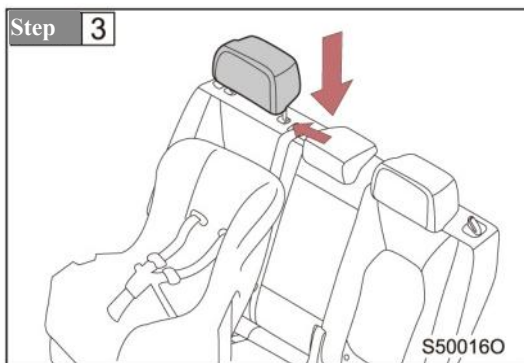
Fix the child protection device with ISOFIX rigid anchor.

If the child protection device is interfered by the headrest and cannot be installed correctly, remove the headrest and install the child protection device. (see P.94)



Fasten the locking clip firmly into the anchor support and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.



Reinstall the head restraints

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ When installing a child protection device

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, it may result in serious hurt or even death.

- Tie the top strap firmly and make sure the seat belt is not twisted.
- Do not tie the top strap to any object other than the anchor bracket.
- Push and pull the child protection device in different directions to ensure it is firmly installed.
- Do not adjust the seat after installing the child protection device. If the seat is adjusted, the safety of the child restraint system should be reconfirmed.
- Please follow the installation instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child protection device.

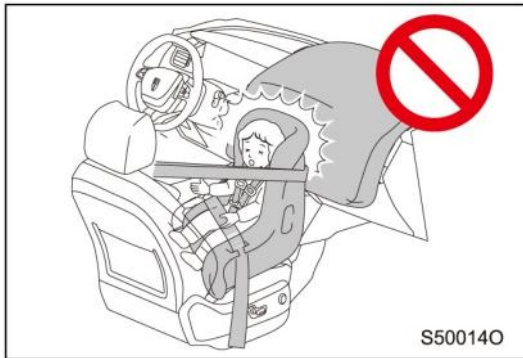
#### ■ Fix the child protection device properly to the anchoring device.

When using the lower anchoring device, ensure that there is no foreign matter around the anchoring device and the seat belt is not stuck behind the child protection device. Ensure that the child protection device is firmly fixed, otherwise, emergency braking or accidents may cause serious injury or even death to children or other passengers.

## ⚠ CAUTIONS

### ■ When installing a child protection devices

Please follow the instructions provided with the child protection device. Fix the child protection device firmly in place. If the child protection device is not properly fixed in place, it may cause serious injury or even death to children or other passengers in case of emergency operation or accident.



- Do not install the backward type children protective device to the assistant driver's seat.

Otherwise, the impact force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger's airbag may cause serious injury or even death to the child in case of an accident.



- There are labels on the inside and outside of the sun visor on the front passenger's side to remind you not to install a rearward-facing child protection device on the front passenger's seat.

Details of the labels are shown in the figure.

**Exhaust gas contains substances harmful to the human body.**

 **CAUTIONS**

The waste gas contains colorless and odorless harmful gas carbon monoxide (CO). Please observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the exhaust gas may enter the vehicle, causing dizziness and accidents, or may seriously endanger your health and even cause death.

■ **Important for driving**

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If you can smell the exhaust gas even if the trunk lid is closed, open the window and contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW to inspect the vehicle as soon as possible.

■ **Parking**

- If the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated or closed place (such as a garage), please make sure to turn off the engine.
- Do not leave the engine run for a long time.

If this situation cannot be avoided, please park the vehicle in an open place and check to make sure that the exhaust gas does not enter the vehicle.

- Do not keep the engine running in places with deep snow or snowing. If snow mounds build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, the accumulated exhaust gas may enter the vehicle.

■ **Exhaust pipe**

Regular inspection of the exhaust system is required. If there are holes or cracks, damaged joints or abnormal exhaust noise due to corrosion, please be sure to contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW to inspect and repair the vehicle.

**To prevent the vehicle from being stolen, the smart key and the card key have a built-in password chip. If the key is not registered in the computer in advance, the key cannot start the engine. Different vehicles have different information registered in the key.**

**When leaving the vehicle, do not leave the key in the vehicle.**

**This system helps to prevent vehicles from being stolen, but it cannot prevent all theft, and cannot guarantee the absolute safety of the vehicle.**

**Carry the registered key and press the engine switch to deactivate the engine anti-theft system.**

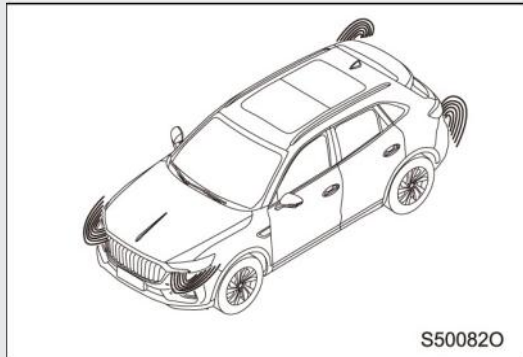
- Conditions that may cause a system failure
  - Strongly impacted key
  - Place the key at a high temperature place (e.g. on the dashboard exposed to the sun)
  - Use magnetic key chain
  - Wash the key using ultrasonic cleaner
  - The key is close to or against a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle
- **If the engine cannot be started by using the correct method, the engine anti-theft system may fail. Please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW to check the vehicle for you.**

 **Caution**

**■ Ensure normal operation of the system**

Do not modify or disassemble the system. If it is modified or disassembled, there is no guarantee that the system will operate properly.

The body anti-theft system mainly monitors the status of four doors, hood and trunk lid. When the system detects that someone is forcing their way into the vehicle, it will give an alarm and flash the turn signal continuously.



**The body anti-theft system works.**

After all the driver and passengers get out of the car, close the doors, the trunk lid and the hood and lock all doors.

### Deactivating or stopping the alarm

**Implement any of the following operations:**

- Use smart entry or wireless remote control to unlock doors or trunk lid.
- Start the engine (the alarm will be released or stopped after a few seconds).

- Items to be checked before locking the vehicle

**In order to prevent triggering of the alarm accidentally, before locking the vehicle, it should be confirmed that there is no one, no valuables and other personal items in the vehicle, and all windows and the sunroof are closed.**

- At Disconnection of Battery

**Be sure to cancel the alarm system.**

**The alarm may be triggered if the battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.**

#### **Caution**

##### **Ensure normal operation of the system**

Do not modify or disassemble the system. If it is modified or disassembled, there is no guarantee that the system will operate properly.

2. Instrument Cluster

Combination instrument.....	54
Alarm light .....	56
Indicator .....	58
Multi-function display screen of instrument cluster	60
Head up display* .....	70

## 2. Instrument Cluster Combination instrument



Due to the different vehicle configurations, the contents displayed also vary.

### **1** Engine tachometer

Displays the revolutions per minute of the engine.

### **2** Tip/alarm icons display area

Shows the vehicle warning lamp and indicator lamp, etc.

### **3** Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed.

### **4** Fuel gauge display area

Displays the remaining fuel level.

### **5** Multi-function display screen

Display gear, fuel consumption, vehicle speed, driving range, tire pressure information, date, various alarms and prompt information, etc., while supporting the audio system for quick operation.

### **6** Engine coolant temperature display area

Displays temperature of the engine coolant.



### Adjusting the backlight brightness in the vehicle

The interior backlight brightness can be adjusted in the vehicle settings of the audio system. (See P.223)

#### ■ Condition for lighting the combination instrument

The engine switch is placed in "IG-ON" mode.



#### CAUTIONS

##### ■ Prevent damage to the engine and its components

- The tachometer pointer in the red area indicates that the engine is approaching the maximum speed. Please control the speed.
- If the thermometer pointer is in the red area, the engine may be overheated. In this case, the vehicle should be parked in a safe place immediately, and then the engine should be checked after it is completely cooled.



















##### ■ During brightness control

For safety, please adjust the backlight brightness in the parking state. Do not use this function to distract attention and hinder safe driving. Ignoring the road and traffic conditions will lead to accidents.

Warning lamp

The warning light indicates the current status of the vehicle system or the possible faults of the corresponding system of the vehicle. (See P.348)

	IHC system fault warning lamp		Low fuel level warning lamp
	Failure indicator for engine control system		Engine exhaust gas monitoring system fault warning lamp
	Battery charging fault warning lamp		Abnormal engine oil pressure warning lamp
	Airbag system fault warning lamp		Seat belt reminder lamp
	Transmission system/electronic shifting system fault warning lamp		Engine immobilizer system fault warning lamp
	Ignition switch fault warning lamp		Key low power alarm lamp
	Electronic wiper system fault warning lamp		Bulb fault warning lamp
	Low level of cleaning fluid warning lamp		Coolant high warning lamp
	Fault alarm lamp of brake system		Brake friction plate wear excessive warning lamp
	EPS system fault warning lamp		EPS system serious fault warning lamp
	ABS system fault warning lamp		AUTO HOLD system fault warning lamp
	Shock absorber system fault warning lamp		Constant speed cruise system fault warning lamp
	HBB system fault warning lamp		Electronic steering column system fault warning lamp


	EPB system fault warning lamp		Abnormal tire pressure/system fault warning lamp
	FCW system fault warning lamp		AEB system fault warning lamp
	LDW/LKA system fault warning lamp		BSD system fault warning lamp
	HDC system fault warning lamp		Passive start system fault warning lamp
	IFC advanced driver assistance system camera fault warning lamp		TSR system fault warning lamp
	Automatic driving light / automatic wiper function fault warning lamp		ACC system fault warning lamp
	Seat memory function fault warning lamp		Four-wheel system fault warning lamp
	Idle start-stop system fault warning lamp		Headlight height automatic adjustment system fault warning indicator
	Driving mode selection system fault warning lamp		SACC system steering assist failure indicator

**Note:**

If any of the lights does not turn on or off, the corresponding system may be faulty. Contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for vehicle check.

The indicator light indicates the current operating status of each system of the vehicle.

	Left turn signal indicator lamp		Right turn signal indicator lamp
	High beam ON indicator lamp		Position lamp ON indicator lamp
	Front fog lamp ON indicator lamp		Rear fog lamp ON indicator lamp
	ESC system working indicator lamp		ESC system OFF indicator lamp
	Idle start-stop system working indicator lamp		Idle start-stop system limiting indicator lamp
	Idle start-stop system OFF indicator lamp		Economy mode indicator lamp
	Comfort mode indicator lamp		Sport mode indicator lamp
	Off-road mode indicator lamp		Snowfield mode indicator lamp
	Maintenance indicator lamp		Door opening indicator lamp
	Constant speed cruise ON indicator lamp		Constant speed cruise working indicator lamp
	IHC system working indicator lamp		Reverse lateral warning indicator lamp
	EPB working indicator lamp		AUTO HOLD working indicator lamp
	FCW system OFF indicator lamp		FCW system warning indicator lamp

	AEB system OFF indicator lamp		AEB system working indicator lamp
	DSM system warning indicator lamp (minor abnormality)		DSM system warning indicator lamp (serious abnormality)
	LDW/LKA system ON indicator lamp		LDW/LKA system working indicator lamp
	TSR system intelligent speed limit-Traffic identification light		Active speed limiting warning indicator lamp
	HDC system ON indicator lamp		HDC system working indicator lamp
	In-car air quality (excellent) indicator		In-car air quality (good) indicator
	In-car air quality (poor) indicator		Outside ambient temperature display indicator
	ACC system ON indicator lamp		SACC system steering assistance ON indicator lamp
	ACC system working indicator lamp		SACC system steering assist work indicator
	Unknown key indicator lamp		Mobile phone left reminding indicator lamp
	Driving pattern unable to switch indicator lamp		

The combination instrument multifunction display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related information and audio navigation information.



**1 Multifunction display area**

Operate / view vehicle information, radio, music, phone, navigation assistance information, Himalayan online application, QQ music online application and other modules.

**2 Trip mileage display field**

Display the trip mileage information, falling into A and B. Trip A and B can be switched by the mileage setting key. (see P.61)

**3 Driving mode display area**

Display the current selected driving mode.

**4 Gear display area**

Displays the vehicle current gear position.

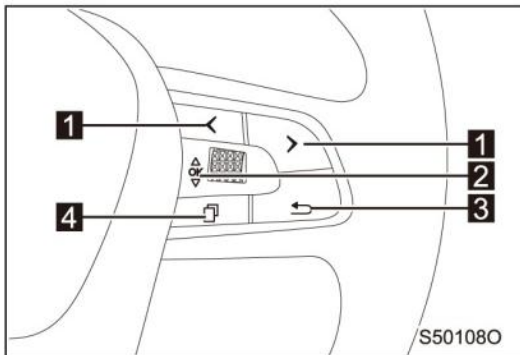
**5 Idling on-off display field**

Display the idling on-off status indicator lamp.

**6 Total mileage display area**

Displays the total mileage information.

## Display switch



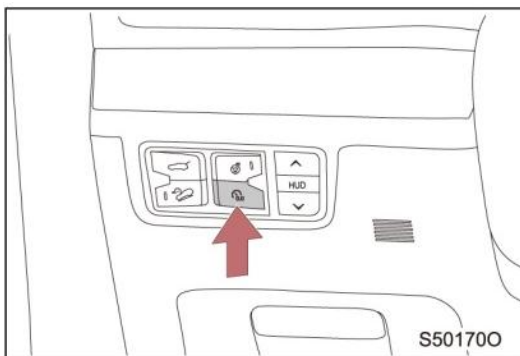
- 1** Left and right selection buttons  
Short pressing will switch the setting interface
- 2** Roller  
Rolling: rolling up and down will switch the selection item. Short pressing: confirm the selection.
- 3** Return  
Short press to return to the previous interface.
- 4** Menu button  
In the music and phone interfaces, short press to return to the menu interface.

## CAUTIONS

### ■ During driving

Take extra care when operating the instrument operating keys on the steering wheel to prevent accidents.

## Sub-mileage setting



Short press the mileage setting button to switch the display of minute mileage A and minute mileage B on the meter, and long press to clear the currently displayed minute mileage.

### Multifunction display area

By using the left and right buttons on the steering wheel, you can switch between the driving information, radio, music, phone, navigation, warning information, driver assistance information, Himalaya online, and QQ music.



- 1 Multifunction display navigation bar
- 2 Multifunction display information area

Note: if there is no warning message, driving auxiliary function is not active, Himalaya has no tone source output, QQ music has no tone source output, the corresponding module will be hidden in the navigation column.

#### Driving information



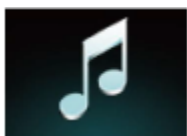
Displays the driving information  
Specific operation. (See P.63)

#### Radio



Displays the radio information  
Specific operation. (See P.66)

#### Music



Displays the music information  
Specific operation. (See P.66)

#### Phone



Displays the phone information  
Specific operation. (See P.67)



### Navigation



Displays the navigation information  
Specific operation. (See P.68)

### Warning information



Displays the warning information  
Specific operation. (See P.68)

### Driver assistance information



Displays the driver assistance information  
Specific operation. (See P.69)

### Himalaya online



Displays the Himalaya online  
Specific operation. (See P.69)

### QQ music on-line application



QQ music on-line application information display  
Specific operation. (See P.69)

### ■ Driving information

By using the roller on the steering wheel, you can switch between the short-term average fuel consumption/vehicle speed, long-term average fuel consumption/vehicle speed, instantaneous fuel consumption/driving range, tire pressure information,

- Short-term average fuel consumption/vehicle speed



Long pressing the steering wheel roller or disconnecting the battery can reset the instant average fuel consumption/vehicle speed information,

## 2. Instrument Cluster

Note: the instant average fuel consumption/vehicle speed means the average fuel consumption/vehicle speed of this driving cycle. (If the power-off time for the last stop does not exceed 2h (hours), the last information will be accumulated).

- Long-term average fuel consumption/vehicle speed



Long pressing the steering wheel roller can reset the average fuel consumption/vehicle speed information,

Note: the average fuel consumption/vehicle speed means the average fuel consumption/vehicle speed after the last resetting.

- Instantaneous fuel consumption/driving range



Display the instant fuel consumption and driving range of the vehicle under the current working conditions.

- Tire pressure information



- When the tire pressure of one or more tires is abnormal, the corresponding tire pressure value is displayed in yellow / red; The tire pressure value of other normal tires is displayed in green.

When one or more tire pressure sensors fail, the multi-functional display area of the instrument cluster will display "-- -", and other normal tire values will be displayed normally.

Note: the green tire pressure value means the tire pressure is normal.

Tire pressure value blinking in yellow: the tire pressure is abnormal (too low or too high).

Tire pressure value blinking in red: the tire pressure is abnormal (serious fault).

- Date



Display the current date.

- 4WD status information \*



Display the current AWD status.

- Average fuel consumption charge/long - term average fuel consumption charge



Display the average fuel consumption billing information

The average fuel consumption billing on/off can be set in the vehicle setting of audio system. (See P.227)

- Acceleration timer



Display and record the acceleration timer information.

The acceleration timer on/off can be set in the vehicle setting of audio system. (See P.227)

- Radio



Select the channels in the list of FM, AM and favorite through the steering wheel roller to play.



If the radio is playing, the current play information will be displayed when the radio interface is accessed. Operate the steering wheel roller to search the active stations up/down; operate the home key or menu key to return the radio operation

- Music



Through the steering wheel roller, select the music in the list of favorite, local, USB1, USB2 and Bluetooth to play.



If the music is playing, the current play information will be displayed when the music interface is accessed. Operate the steering wheel roller to switch the tracks up/down; operate the home key or menu key to return the music operation interface.

### ■ Phone




After the Bluetooth is connected, the call can be quickly answered/dialed through the phone interface in the multi-function display zone.



The user can dial, answer the call and view the talk record through the steering wheel roller.




### ■ Making a call



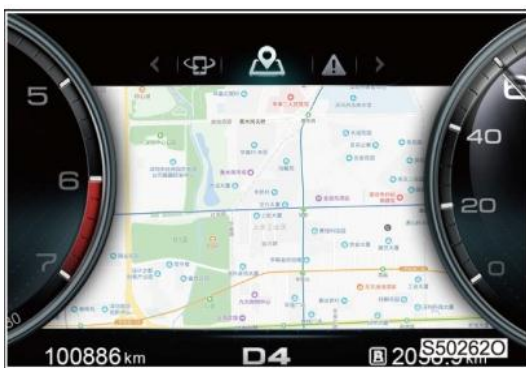
In the phone interface, the user can  hung up,  answer the call in private or  mute the call.

■ Answer the phone



In the call answer interface, you can perform operations such as,  answer,  hang up, and  answer privately.

■ Navigation



When the on-board navigation application is turned on, the navigation status display area displays the current navigation information.

■ Warning information

When the vehicle has alarm information, the alarm information will appear in the form of a pop-up window. You can also view all the alarm information of the current vehicle through the alarm information interface.



The steering wheel can be used to switch the current alarm information up and down.

### ■ Driver assistance information



When the driving assistance system is turned on, the multi-function display area displays the driving assistance information interface. In the driving assistance information interface, you can query the status and alarms of the driving assistance system.

### ■ Himalaya online



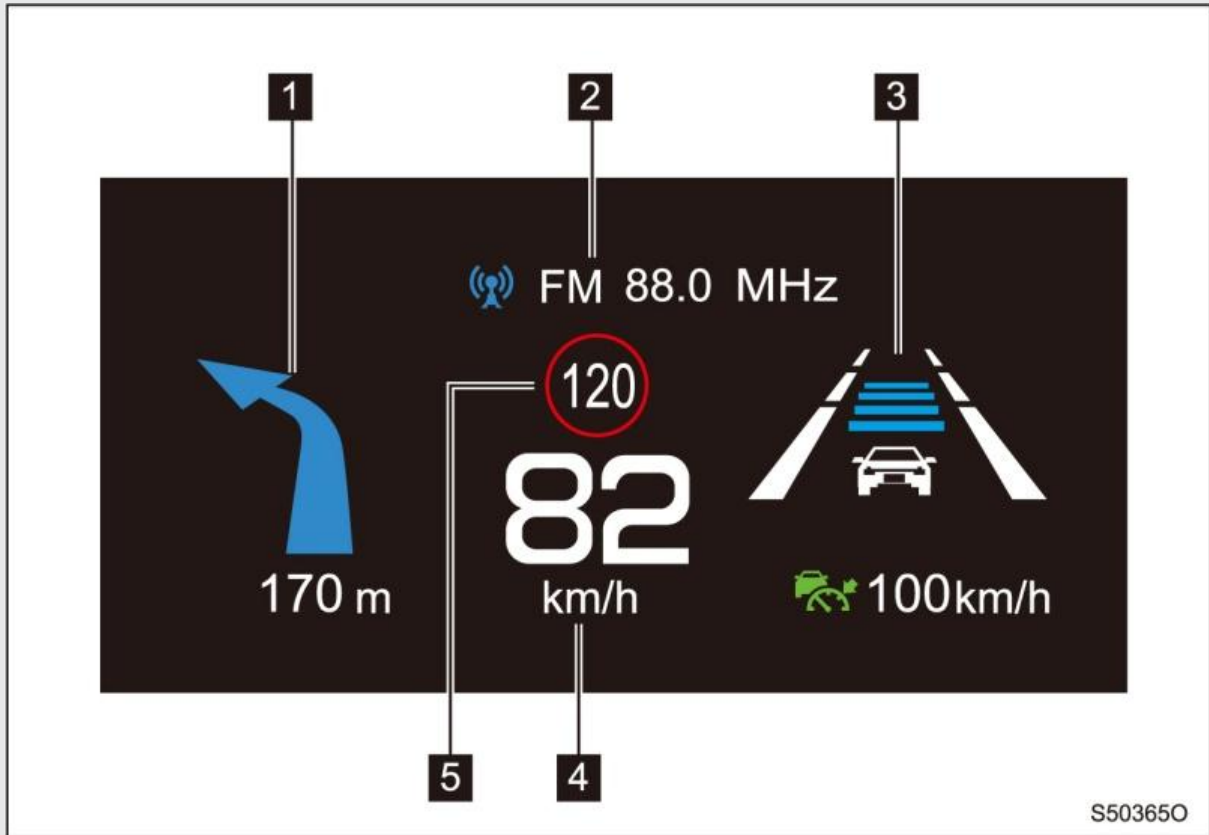
When the Himalayan on-line application is active, the multi-function display zone will display this application interface.

### ■ QQ Music online



When playing the QQ music online application, the multifunctional display area displays the QQ music online application interface.

The head-up display is linked with the instrument and the system to provide driving assistance and audio entertainment information on the windshield where the driver is facing.



**1** Navigation system display area

Display the next intersection information under the current navigation traffic conditions.

**2** Entertainment system display area

Displays the currently playing radio, music, and phone information.

**3** Driver assistance system display area

Displays cruise, front collision warning and lane keep assist information.

**4** Vehicle speed display area

Displays the current vehicle speed.

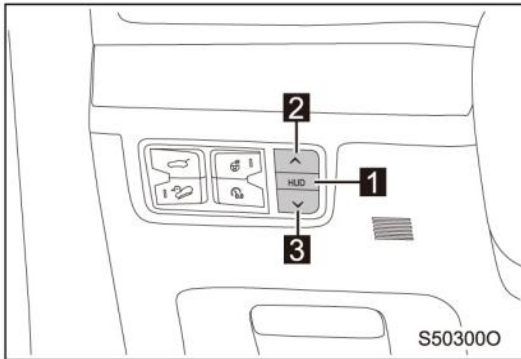
**5** Display area of speed limit alarm system

Displays the current road speed limit information.



## Using the head up display

### Heads up display setting button



- 1** Press the key to enable the head-up display: press it again to disable the head-up display.
- 2** Adjust up  
Raise the height of the head-up display image.
- 3** Adjust down  
Turn down the height of the head-up display image.

### Head-up display setting

You can set the brightness of the virtual image displayed by the head-up display and the display content in the vehicle settings of the audio system. (See P.226)



### CAUTIONS

#### Before using the head-up display

- Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

#### Precautions during driving

- Do not continuously look at the head-up display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.



### Caution

#### Prevent damage to components

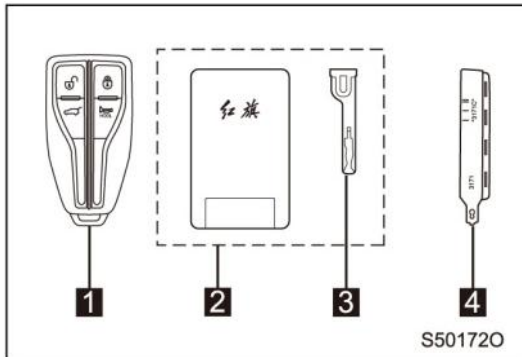
- Do not place any liquid near the head-up display. If the display gets wet, it may cause electrical problems.
- Do not place anything on or stickers onto the head-up display. Otherwise, the indication of the head-up display may be interrupted.
- Do not touch HUD projector inside or throw sharp edge object or similar object inside. Doing so could cause mechanical malfunctions.



<b>3.1. Key information</b>	
Key .....	74
<b>3.2. Opening, closing and locking of doors and trunk lid</b>	
Doors.....	77
Trunk lid.....	81
Intelligent entry & start system.....	85
<b>3-3. Adjusting the Seats</b>	
Front seats .....	90
Rear seats .....	92
Head restraints.....	94
Seat memory* .....	96
<b>3-4. Adjusting the Steering Wheel and Rear-view Mirrors</b>	
Steering wheel .....	98
Anti-glare inner rear view mirror .....	100
Exterior mirrors .....	102
<b>3-5. Opening and Closing the Windows</b>	
Power windows .....	105
Panorama sunroof* .....	108

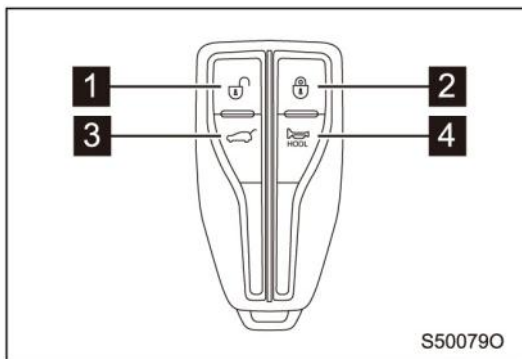
## Key

The car comes with the following keys.



- 1** Intelligent key\*
  - Passive entry & start system (See P.85)
  - Operating the wireless remote control function
- 2** Clip
  - Passive entry & start system (See P.83)
- 3** Mechanical key
- 4** Key number plate'

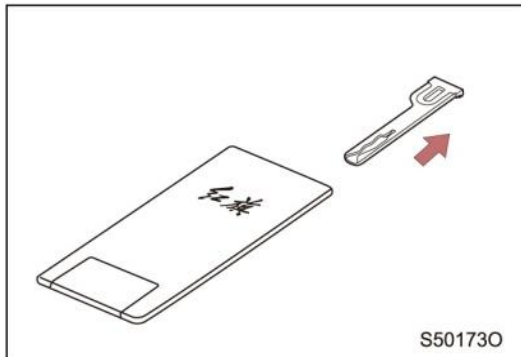
## Wireless remote control



- 1** Unlock the doors by pressing the button, while open all the windows and sunroof by pressing and holding the button\*<sup>1</sup>
- 2** Lock the doors by pressing the button, while lock all the windows and sunroof by pressing and holding the button\*<sup>1</sup>
- 3** Press and hold the button to unlock and open the trunk lid
- 4** Short press to activate the vehicle seek function  
In the locked state of the vehicle, pressing the car search button will trigger the car search function. The turn signal flashes 3 times and the horn sounds 3 times.

\*<sup>1</sup>: After triggering the automatic window raising/lowering by press and hold, you can release the button and press the button again, the window or sunroof will stop moving.

### Use the mechanical key.



Take out the mechanical key as shown in the figure. Put the mechanical key in the card key after using it. Carry the mechanical key together with the card key.

If the battery of smart key or card key is fully discharged and cannot work normally, the mechanical key is required. (See P.364)

#### ■ When needing parking service

Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the smart key or card key only.

#### ■ Key number plate

Keep the key number plate in a safe place, not in the vehicle.

#### ■ When taking the plane

When bringing a smart key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the smart key while inside the aircraft cabin. If the key is placed in a bag, make sure that you do not accidentally press any key on the key. Pressing a button may cause the smart key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

#### ■ Key battery level

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.
- The battery may run out even if the key is not used. The following symptoms indicate a low level of or zero energy of the key battery. Replace the battery when necessary. (See P.334)
- The passive entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
- The detection area becomes smaller.
- The multifunction display of the combination instrument shows a message of low battery power.
- In order to avoid serious degradation of smart key's performance, do not leave the key within 1 m from the electrical equipment that generates the magnetic field as shown below.
- TVs
- Personal computers
- Mobile phones, wireless phones and battery chargers
- Mobile phone or cordless phone that is being charged
- Table lamps
- Induction cooker

#### ■ Replace the battery

(See P.334)

 **Caution**

■ **Prevent key damage**

- Do not subject the key to violent collision or expose it to high temperature (e.g. direct sunlight) and humid environment.

Do not wet the key or clean it in equipment such as ultrasonic cleaner.

- Do not attach metal or magnetic substances to the key or place the key close to such substances
- Do not disassemble the smart key or the card key.
- Do not stick labels or other items on the surface of the key.
- Do not place the key near objects that can generate magnetic fields, such as electronic medical equipment (e.g. low-frequency medical equipment) such as electricity display, sound system, induction cooker, etc.

■ **Carry the smart key or the card key with you**

- When carrying the key, it should be 10 cm or more away from the electrical equipment turned on. Radio waves emitted by electrical equipment within 10 cm from smart key may interfere with the key, resulting in the key not working properly.

■ **When the smart entry or the starting system fails or other key-related failure exists**

Please send the vehicle to an authorized Hong Qi dealer of FAW China and bring all the keys with you.

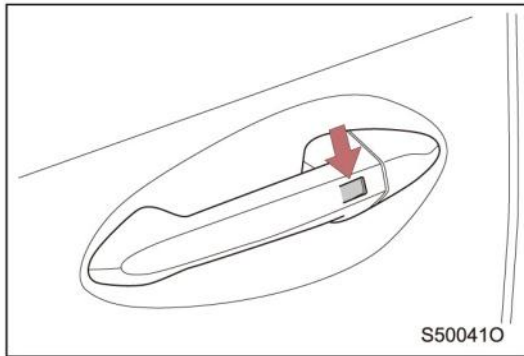
■ **When the key is lost**

If the key is lost, the risk of theft of the vehicle will obviously increase. Take all the other keys equipped with the vehicle to an authorized Hong Qi dealer of FAW China immediately.

**Unlock and lock the door from the outside of the vehicle**

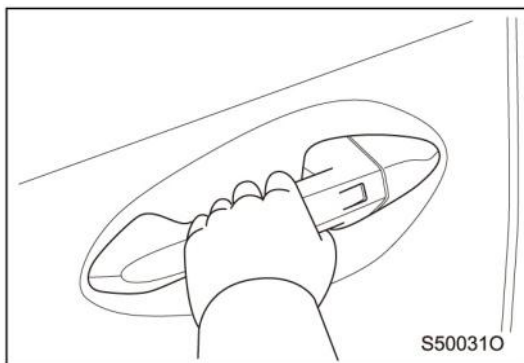
**Smart entry**

As long as you carry a smart key or a card key, you can unlock and lock the doors through the smart access function.



Turn off the engine switch, touch the lock sensing area of the door handle on the driver side or front passenger side to lock the door.

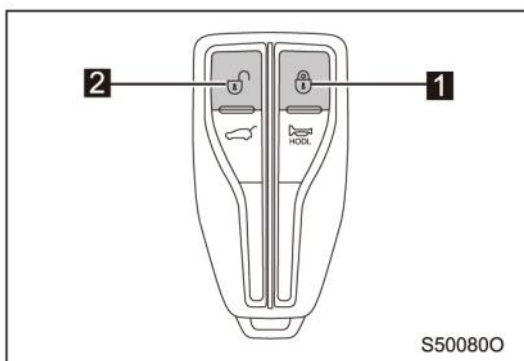
When any one of the doors is not closed, the door cannot be locked by doing so.



Hold the driver's or front passenger's door handle to unlock the door,

When the door is locked by touching the door handle lock sensing area, the door cannot be passively unlocked within 4s, but the remote unlocking function is not affected.

**Wireless remote control**

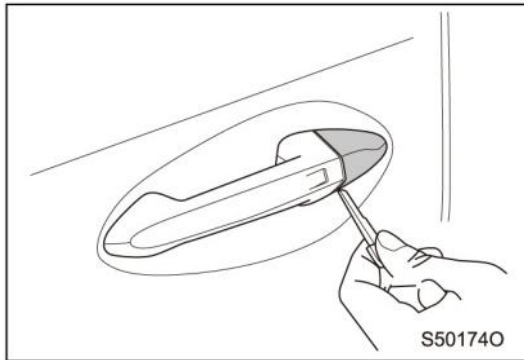


**1** Lock all doors

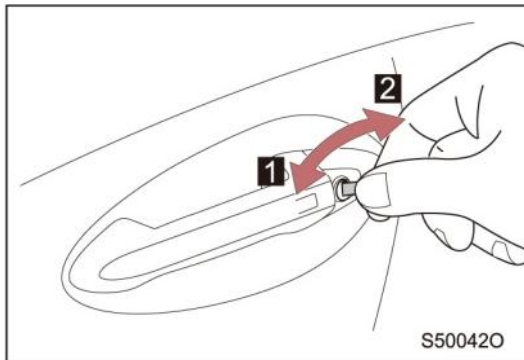
**2** Unlock the driver door/all the doors

For the unlock method setting, see P.224.

■ **Mechanical key**



Open the door keyhole cover using the mechanical key.



Lock and unlock the vehicle using the mechanical key.

- 1** Lock door
- 2** Unlocking door

---

■ **Operation signal**

All turn signals flash to indicate that the door has been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

■ **Exhausted key**

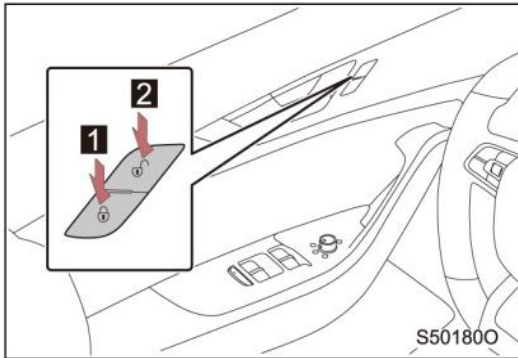
If the key battery runs out, replace it with a new one. (See P.334)



### Unlock and lock the door from interior

- The door can be unlocked and locked by the central door lock switch on the driver's door.

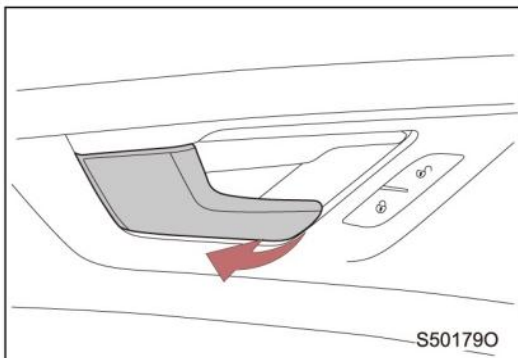
#### ■ Central control lock switch



- 1** Lock all doors
- 2** Unlock all doors

Note: When a door is not closed, the central control door lock switch can only be used to unlock but not to lock.

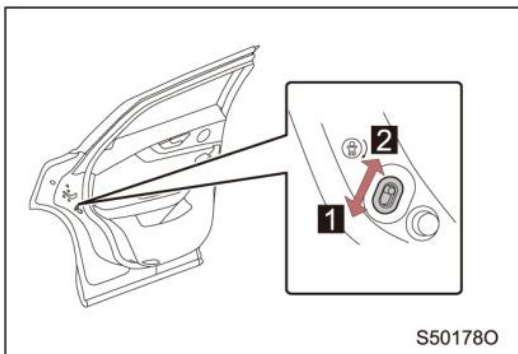
#### ■ Interior door handle



Pull the door inner handle inward to open the door.

After locking the door, pull the inner handle once to unlock the door. Pull again to open the door.

### Child safety lock on the rear door



After setting the safety lock, the door cannot be opened from inside the car.

- 1** Lock
- 2** Unlock

Setting a safety lock prevents children from opening the rear door in the car.

■ **Locking at certain speeds**

- When all doors are closed and one door fails to be locked, the speed locking function is activated to lock all doors when the vehicle speed exceeds about 20 km/h.

■ **Situations affecting smart entry and the start system and wireless remote control operations**

(See P.87)



**CAUTIONS**

■ **Prevent accidents**

The following precautions should be observed when driving the vehicle.

Otherwise, the passenger in the vehicle can be thrown out of the vehicle due to the unintentionally opened door, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- Be sure to fasten your seat belt.
- Always lock all the doors.
- Make sure all the doors are closed properly.
- Do not pull the inside handles of the doors while driving.

Otherwise, it may cause the door to open and the passengers to be thrown out of the car, thus causing serious personal injury and even death.

- If there are children in the rear seats, be sure to set the child safety lock on the rear door.
- When leaving the vehicle and the vehicle is empty, carry the key with you, close all windows and sunroofs and lock all doors to prevent others from entering or the vehicle from being stolen.
- Do not leave children alone in the car.
- Do not allow children to carry or use keys. Children may start the vehicle or operate the gear level, causing potential safety hazards.
- Do not allow children to play with the window or other equipment in the vehicle. Otherwise, children may be injured.
- Ensure that the temperature in the car is appropriate. Too high or too low temperature will cause fatal injury to children.
- Be sure to check the safety around the vehicle before opening the door.

It is very dangerous to open the door suddenly, which may hit passing vehicles or pedestrians and lead to accidents.

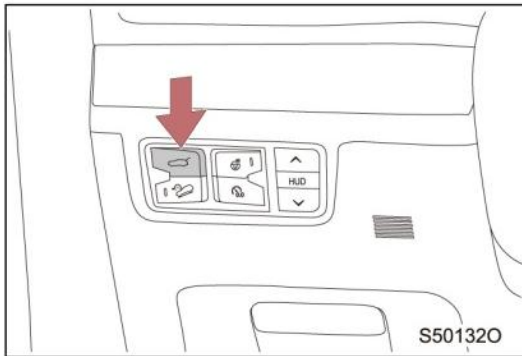
- After closing the door, make sure it is closed.

It is very dangerous to drive the vehicle without closing the door. If the vehicle is driven without closing the door, the door may open accidentally, thus causing an accident.

The trunk lid can be opened by using the trunk lid button, smart entry function and wireless remote control function.

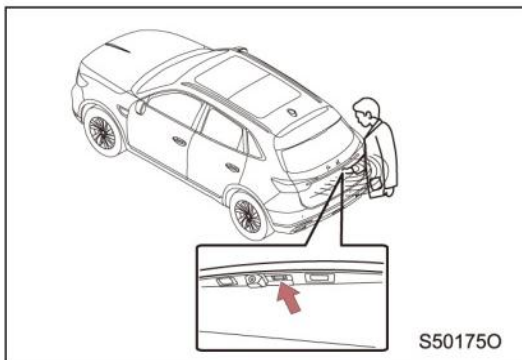
### Opening the trunk lid

#### ■ Open the trunk lid from the inside of the car



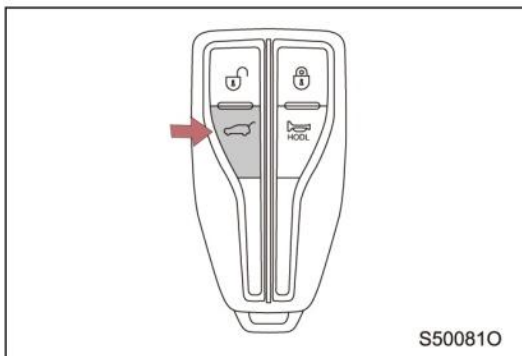
When the vehicle is stationary, press the button on the trunk lid to unlock and open the trunk lid.

#### ■ Opening the trunk lid from the outside of vehicle



When the vehicle is locked and the engine switch is placed in the "G-OFF" mode, take the smart key or card key with you, and press the open button on the trunk lid to unlock and open the trunk lid. When the vehicle is unlocked fully, press the button on the trunk lid to unlock and open the trunk lid.

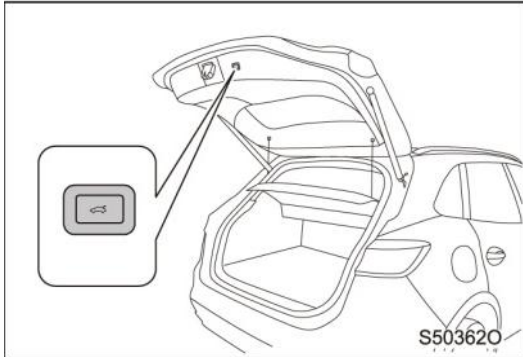
#### ■ Wireless remote control



Press and hold for about 2S (seconds) to unlock and open the trunk lid.

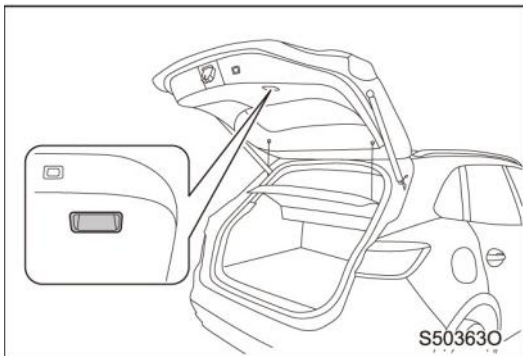
### Closing the trunk lid

#### ■ Trunk lid OFF button \*



Press the trunk lid close button and the trunk lid is closed automatically.

#### ■ Trunk lid handle



Use the trunk lid handle to lower the trunk lid, and then press the trunk lid downward from outside to close it.

#### ■ Trunk lamp

When the trunk lid is opened, the trunk lighting turns on.

#### ■ Trunk lid position memory

Open the trunk lid, adjust the trunk lid to a suitable angle (50% - 95% of the maximum angle). Press and hold the trunk lid button for more than 3s (seconds), all turn signals flash once, and the current position is remembered as the trunk opening position.

#### ■ Reminder of the key left in trunk

When the engine switch is placed in the "IG-OFF" mode and the vehicle is locked, the trunk lid is opened and closed separately from the outside. If the legal key is left in the trunk at this time, the reminder function of key left in the trunk will be triggered (the trunk will be opened automatically).

 **CAUTIONS****■ When opening and closing the trunk lid, be careful to avoid being pinched by the trunk lid.****■ Before driving**

- Make sure the trunk lid is completely closed. If the trunk lid is not completely closed, it may accidentally open and bump into nearby objects during driving, or the luggage in the trunk may accidentally be thrown out, thus causing an accident.

- Do not allow children to play in the trunk. If the child is accidentally locked in the trunk, it may lead to heatstroke, suffocation or other injuries.

- Do not allow children to open or close the trunk lid. Failure to do so may result in an accidental opening of the trunk lid or the closing of the trunk lid to clamp the child's hand, head or neck.

**■ Precautions during driving**

Be sure to keep the trunk lid closed to prevent items from being thrown out and exhaust gas from entering the car.

**■ When children are in or around the car**

Never allow children to play in and around unattended vehicles, especially when the trunk lid is opened, children may enter the trunk, close the trunk lid and thus trap themselves in it. In closed vehicles, serious injury or death may be caused due to too high or too low temperature in the vehicle.

**■ Key points in driving**

Do not allow anyone to sit in the trunk. Otherwise, it is easy to cause serious injury or even death in case of emergency braking or collision.

**■ Anti-pinch function\***

- Do not attempt to activate the anti-pinch function by intentionally block the window with any part of your body.

 CAUTIONS

■ Use the trunk

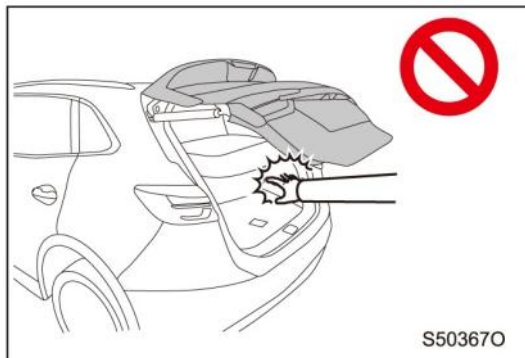
Observe the following precautions:

Otherwise, it may pinch some part of the body and cause serious injury.

- Before opening the trunk lid, remove the heavy load on the trunk lid, such as snow and ice. Otherwise, the trunk lid may suddenly close again.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, please check thoroughly to ensure the safety of the surrounding area.
- If there are people nearby, ensure their safety and inform them that the trunk lid is about to open or close.
- Be careful when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather. Because the trunk lid may move suddenly in strong winds.
- Never install any accessories on the trunk lid. Otherwise, the extra weight on the trunk lid may cause the trunk to open and close suddenly.



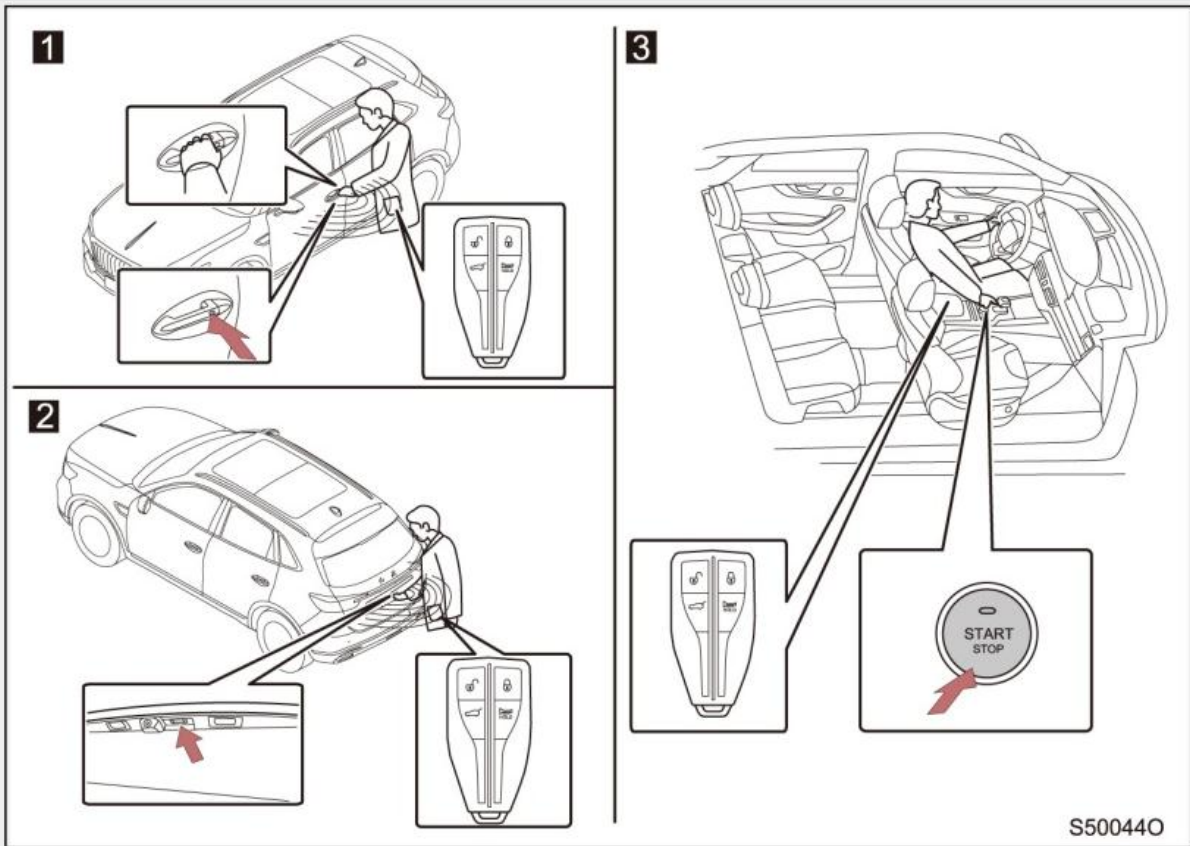
Opening or closing the trunk lid on a ramp is much more difficult than on a horizontal road surface, so be careful that the trunk lid may be accidentally closed during opening or accidentally opened during closing. Before using the trunk, ensure that the trunk lid is fully opened and fixed.



When closing the trunk lid, special care should be taken to avoid pinching fingers and other parts.

### 3.2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid Passive entry & start system

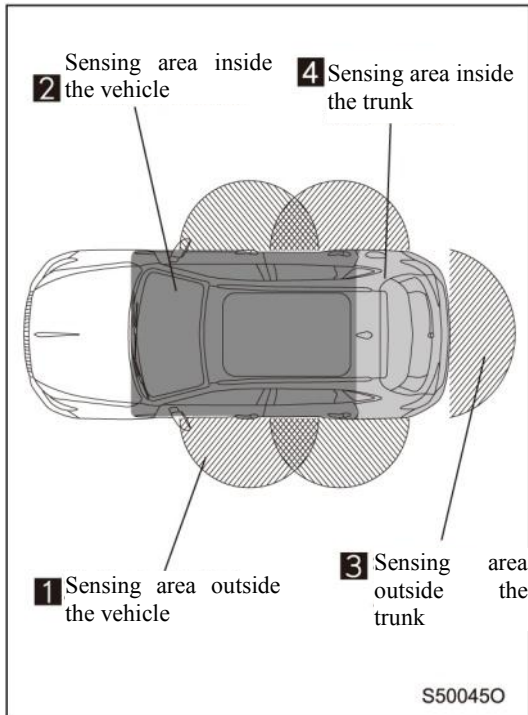
As long as you carry a smart key or card key with you, for example, in your pocket, you can perform the following operations. (The driver must always carry the key with him)



Note: This picture only takes the smart key as an example.

- 1** Lock and unlock the doors. (See P.77)
- 2** Unlock the trunk lid. (See P.81)
- 3** Start the engine. (See P.121)

■ **Effective range (the zone which can detect the smart key)**



Effective range of the smart key antenna:

A hemispherical area with a radius of about 1.2m (m) around the induction antenna.

**1** When locking or unlocking door

The smart key can lock or unlock the door when it is in the range of the sensing area outside the vehicle.

**2** When starting the engine or changing the engine switch modes

If the smart key is within the range of the sensing area inside the vehicle, the engine can be started or the switch mode of the engine can be switched.

**3** When unlocking the trunk

If the smart key is within the sensing area outside the trunk, the trunk can be unlocked if the conditions are met.

**4** When the smart key is left in the trunk

If the trunk is closing when the smart key is within the range of the sensing area in the trunk, the reminder for key left in the trunk will be activated. (See P.83)

■ **Warning and prompting function**

Through the multi-function display screen, alarm speaker, hazard alarm light and engine switch status indicator on the instrument cluster, the system alarm and prompt functions are realized.

- When any alarm indicator turns on

Adopt corresponding measures according to the lit-up warning lamp. (See P.348)

- When an alarm message is displayed

Adopt corresponding measures according to the warning information displayed on the multifunction display of the combination instrument.



### ■ Conditions impairing operation

The passive entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the passive entry & start system and wireless remote control from operating properly.

- When the key battery is insufficient.
- When the key battery is fully discharged.

Replace the battery when necessary. (See P.334)

- When close to TV towers, power stations, petrol service stations, radio stations, large displays, airports or other facilities that generate strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- When carrying portable radio, mobile phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device.
- When the key comes into contact with or is covered by the metal object
- When more than one smart/card key is in the vicinity of the vehicle at the same time
- When the key is carried or used together with the following equipment that emits radio waves
  - Another vehicle's smart key
  - Wireless remote control key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers
- When a sunscreen with metal component or some metal substance is adhered to the rear windshield
- When the following metal objects get in contact with or cover the key.
  - Cards with aluminium foil
  - Cigarette case with aluminium foil on the inside
  - Metallic wallet or bag
  - Coins
  - Metallic hand warmer
  - Media such as CD and DVD
- When other wireless remote control keys (transmitting radio waves) are in use near the vehicle.
- When the key is near a battery charger or electronic equipment.

### ■ Operate system correctly

- Make sure to carry the key when operating the system. Do not get the key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.
- Depending on the specific position of the key and how to hold it, the key signal may not be detected, causing the system to malfunction.

### ■ Safety features

- With remote or smart unlocking, the vehicle can be automatically locked for a while if the door or trunk lid is not opened.

### ■ When parking vehicle for long time

- To prevent the vehicle from being stolen, do not place the key too close to the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is not driven for a long period, it must be locked. Otherwise, the battery may be discharged.

### ■ If the passive entry & start system does not operate properly

- Lock and unlock doors: use the mechanical key. (See P.364)
- Start the engine. (See P.365)

### ■ Remarks of passive entry & start function

- Under the following circumstances, the system may not start normally even if the key is within the effective range (sensing area).
  - When locking or unlocking the door, the key is too close to the window or exterior door handle, too close to or too far from the ground.
  - As long as smart or card key is within the effective range, anyone can lock or unlock the door, so please keep the key properly.
  - If there is a large amount of water splashed on the door handle (such as in car washing or heavy rain), smart entry may fail.
  - The door may not be locked under the following circumstances.
    - When the smart key or card key is still in the car, the door is locked with the intelligent locking function.
    - Take the key out of the car and lock the door when the engine switch is not turned off.
    - When either door is not fully closed.
    - When the gear lever is not in the P position.

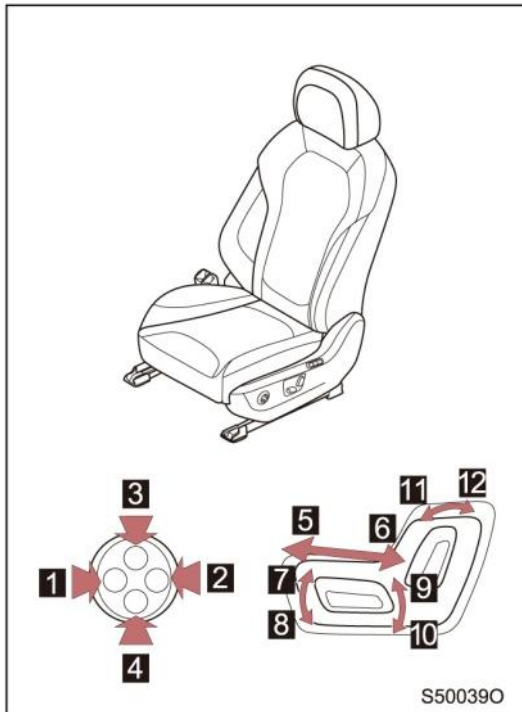
 **CAUTIONS****■ Notes regarding the electronic devices interference**

People who use implantable pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should keep a proper distance from the antenna of smart access and activation system.

- Radio waves may affect the normal operation of this equipment. For details about radio wave frequency and radio wave emission time, please consult an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW. Then consult the doctor about whether it can be used normally.
- For those who do not use implantable pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators, but use other electronic medical equipment, please consult the equipment manufacturer about the impact of radio waves on the equipment's operation.
- Radio waves could have unpredictable effects on the operation of such medical devices.
- For details of smart entry and starting function, please consult an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW.

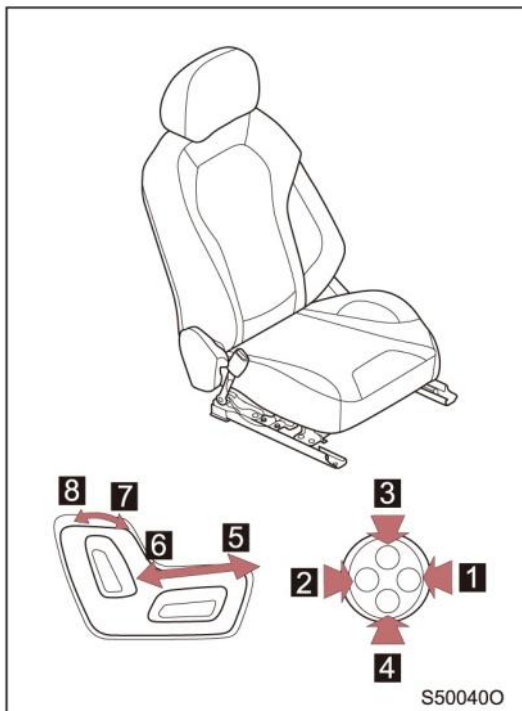
**Adjustment steps**

► Driver side seat



- 1** Waist support bulge
- 2** Waist support pit
- 3** Lumbar support moving upward\*
- 4** Lumbar support moving downward
- 5** Seat shift forward
- 6** Seat move back
- 7** Seat front end up
- 8** Seat front end down
- 9** Seat up
- 10** Seat down
- 11** Seat backrest straight
- 12** Seat backrest tilting back

► Front passenger seat



- 1** Waist support bulge
- 2** Waist support pit
- 3** Lumbar support moving upward\*
- 4** Lumbar support moving downward
- 5** Seat shift forward
- 6** Seat move back
- 7** Seat backrest straight
- 8** Seat backrest tilting back

**CAUTIONS****■ Seat adjustment**

- Do not tilt the seat too much while the vehicle is running to prevent the body from sliding out of the waist belt. If the seat is tilted too much, the waist belt may slip over the hip and directly cross over the abdomen or the shoulder belt may touch the neck, which will increase the possibility of serious injury or even death in the event of an accident.

- Do not place your hands under the seat or near moving parts.

Otherwise, the seat mechanism may pinch your fingers or hands.

- Care should be taken when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers will not be injured when moving the seat.

- Do not allow children to adjust the seat.

It is very dangerous for children to adjust their seats. It may cause serious injuries once the child's hand or foot is trapped.

- Always park the vehicle before adjusting the driver's seat.

It is very dangerous to adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is running. The driver may lose control of the vehicle, causing an accident.

**■ Seat modification**

- Modification or replacement of the front seats may damage the airbag assembly in the seat and the airbag will not deploy properly in the event of a collision.

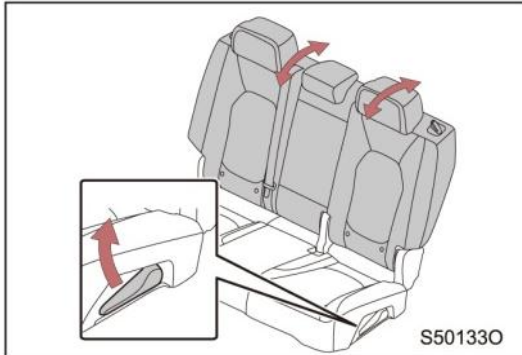
- If you need to remove or replace the seat, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW.

**■ When the seat is damaged**

- If the seat is damaged, driving the vehicle at this time is very dangerous.

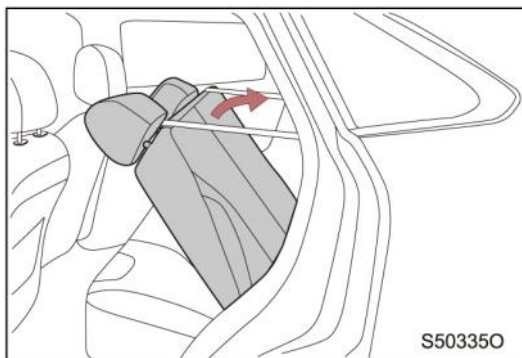
- After a collision, the seat may be damaged even if the seat airbag is not deployed. Therefore, after the collision, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW to check the seat, seat belt pretensioner and airbag.

### Adjust and fold the rear backrest



Pull the left and right seat release handles on the rear seats to adjust and fold the rear backrest.

### Restore the backrest



When returning the folded seat back to the upright position, you must hear a "click" sound and gently shake the seat back slightly back and forth to ensure a firm lock.

Check and confirm that all seat belts are properly handled for the passengers.


**CAUTIONS**
**■ Folding the rear seat back**

Please observe the following precautions, otherwise serious personal injury or even death may result.

- Do not fold the seat back while driving.
- Park the vehicle on a flat surface. Shift the gear lever to P position. Apply parking brake.
- When folding the rear seat back, be careful not to pinch your hands.



- Before reclining the rear seat back, be sure to release the rear seat belt buckle and release the seatbelts to the sides of the seat. Otherwise, the seat belt, buckle and seat back may be damaged.

**■ Folding the rear seat back**

- Do not allow anyone to sit on the folded seat back or in the trunk during driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the trunk.
- Secure the item firmly in the trunk.

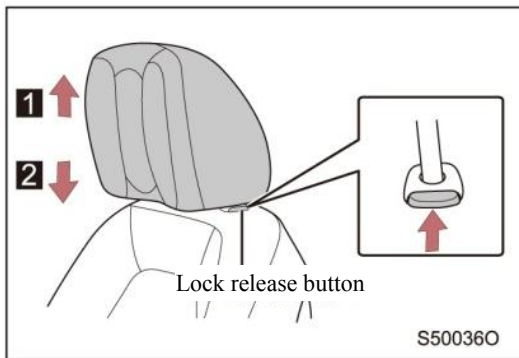
It is very dangerous to drive without firmly securing articles and luggage. They may move and interfere with driving operations in case of emergency braking or accidental collision.

**■ After resetting the seat back to the vertical position**

Please observe the following precautions, otherwise serious personal injury or even death may result.

- Shake the seat back slightly back and forth to ensure it locks securely in place.
- Check that the seat belt is not twisted or stuck under the seat.

### 3.3. Adjusting the seat Head restraints



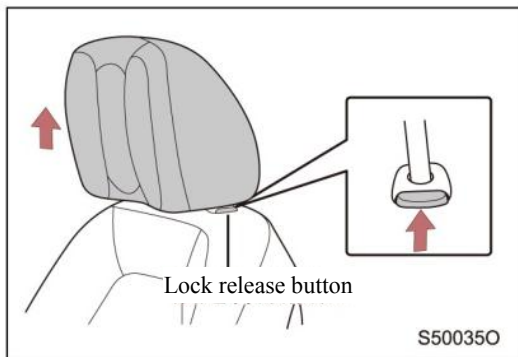
#### **1** Upward

Press and hold the left lock release button while pulling the head restraint upwards.

#### **2** Downward

Press and hold the left lock release button while pushing the head restraint downwards.

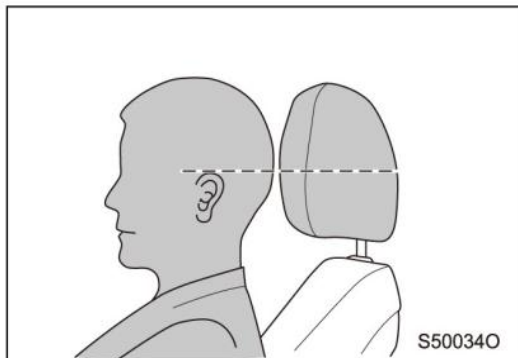
#### ■ Remove the headrest



Press and hold the left lock release button while pulling the head restraint upwards.

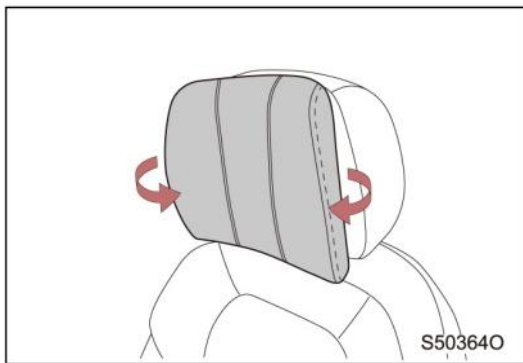
If the head restraint removal is hampered by the roof, you can incline the backrest to conduct the removal.

#### ■ Adjust the height of the headrest



When adjusting the head restraint, make sure its centre flushes with ear top.





Fold the wings of the headrest inward to a comfortable position.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Precautions for Headrest

Please observe the following cautions about the head restraint. Otherwise it may lead to serious personal injuries, or even death.

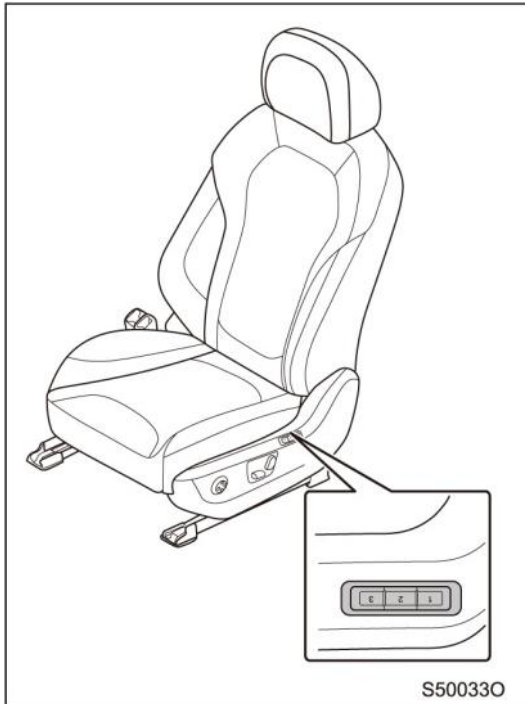
- Please use headrests specially designed for each seat.
- Always adjust the headrest to the correct position.
- Do not drive the vehicle after the headrest is removed.

Whenever you drive the vehicle, the headrest should be installed and adjusted to the proper position. It is very dangerous to drive the vehicle with the headrest in a too low position or not installed. In the event of a collision, unsupported head may cause serious injury to the neck.

■ **Head restraints can reduce whiplash effect during rear impact and reduce neck injuries of the driver and passengers.**

**It can store the information of seats, steering wheel (for partial models), exterior mirrors and the key.**

### Seat memory setting



Memory setting: after adjusting the position of the seat, the steering wheel and the exterior rearview mirror, press any memory key (for more than 3s (seconds)) for a long time, release the key after hearing the instrument prompt, and the position information and current key information will be memorized in the key.

Call up the memory content: Press the memory button to make the seats, the steering wheel and the exterior mirrors automatically move to the stored positions in this button.

Each key corresponds to three sets of memory positions.

#### ■ Initialization setting

Put the engine switch in "IG-ON" mode, and press keys 1 and 3 at the same time for initialization setting. After the alarm speaker sounds once, the initialization is successful.

### Seat greeting function

The greeting function consists of automatic back-off and return.

Automatic return: Turn off the engine switch and open the left front door. The seat and the steering wheel will move backward automatically to the furthest position for the convenience of the driver.

Automatic return: after the engine is switched on, the seat and steering wheel automatically return to the position before the automatic back-off.

**■ Welcome function switch**

It can be set to turn on and off the greeting function in the vehicle setting of the audio system. (See P.224)

**■ When automatically backing off:**

During the automatic return process, if the driver operates the steering wheel adjustment switch, the seat adjusting switch or the seat memory key, the steering wheel and/or seat return operation will be terminated.

**■ When automatically returning:**

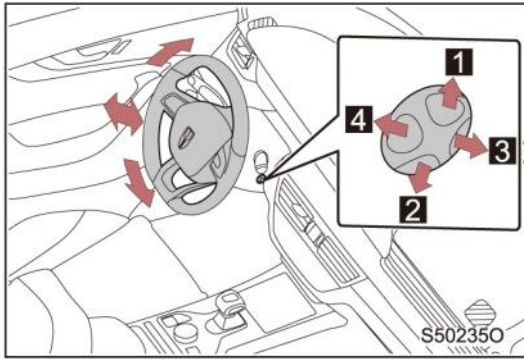
During the automatic return process, if the driver operates the steering wheel adjustment switch, the seat adjusting switch or the seat memory key, the steering wheel and/or seat return operation will be terminated.

If the engine is started during seat automatic return, the return will be at pause. After the starting finishes, this return will be proceeded.

### Adjusting the steering wheel

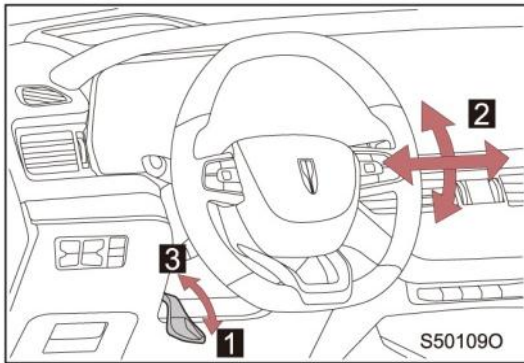
The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.

■ Power adjustment\*



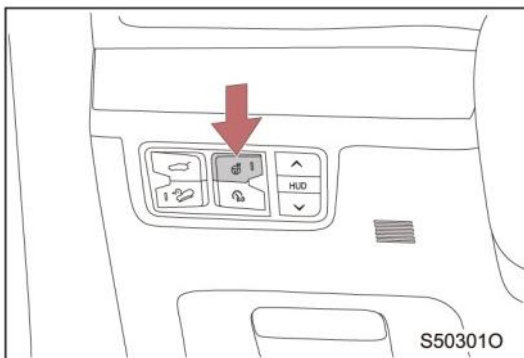
- 1** Up
- 2** Down
- 3** Forward
- 4** Backwards

■ Mechanical adjustment

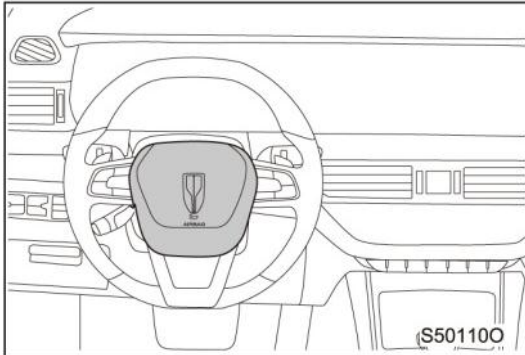


- 1** Release the steering wheel adjustment lever
- 2** Adjust the steering wheel to a comfortable position
- 3** Lock the steering wheel adjustment lever

### Steering wheel heating \*



Touch the steering wheel heating key, the indicator light turns on and the steering wheel heating function turns on, touch again to turn off the steering wheel heating function.

**Horn**

The horn can be sounded by pressing the horn logo or the surrounding area.


**CAUTIONS**
**■ Precautions during driving**

- Do not adjust the steering wheel during driving, otherwise accidents may occur due to driver's misoperation, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
- When driving, the driver's hands should hold on the rim of the steering wheel at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions. Do not hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or hold the steering wheel at other positions, otherwise, the driver's arm or head may be injured when the driver's airbag is deployed.

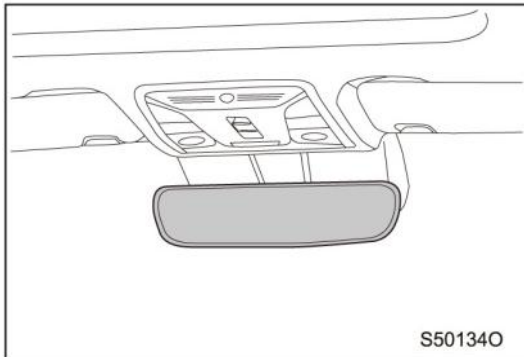
**■ When adjusting the steering wheel**

The distance between the driver's chest and the steering wheel should be kept at least 200mm: do not adjust the steering wheel to the position facing the driver's face, otherwise, the driver's airbag will not provide effective protection in case of an accident.

**■ After mechanically adjusting the steering wheel**

Make sure the steering wheel is firmly locked, otherwise it may cause an accident due to sudden movement of the steering wheel, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.

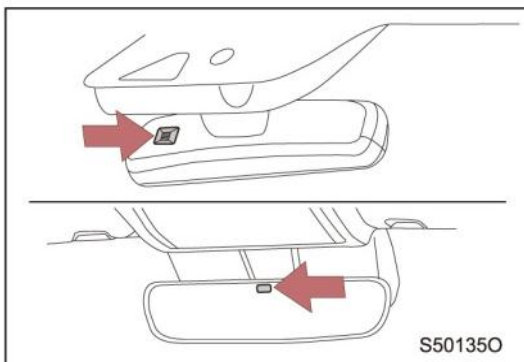
### Adjusting the interior rear-view mirror



According to the driving posture, the rearview mirror can be adjusted up and down/left and right.

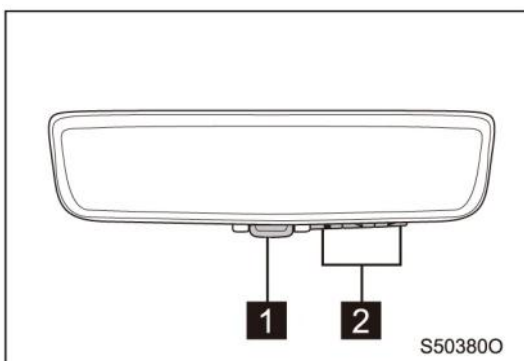
The driver must adjust the interior rearview mirror to a suitable position so as to see the condition behind the car through the rear windshield.

### Glare-proof function



The interior rearview mirror has an automatic anti-glare function. The front and rear light sensors are used to measure the ambient light intensity and the light intensity of the rear vehicle, and the lens can automatically reduce the reflection when the light of the rear vehicle is too bright at night.

### Streaming media interior rearview mirror \*







The streaming media interior rearview mirror can display the images collected by the rear view camera through the interior rearview mirror, so that the line of sight is not affected by factors such as the rear windshield and the rear passengers.

#### 1 Streaming media switch

Toggle the switch forward to turn on the streaming media interior rearview mirror, and toggle the switch backward to turn off the streaming media interior rearview mirror. Both modes are provided with automatic anti-glare function.

**2** Setting button

Press the button  once to enter the brightness adjustment mode. You can adjust the image brightness by pressing the / button .

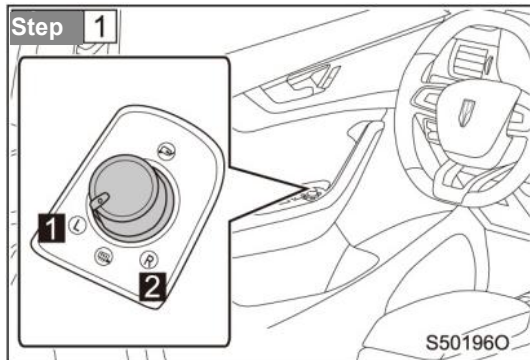
Press the button  twice to enter the height adjustment mode, and the image height can be adjusted through the / button .

**⚠ CAUTIONS****■ Precautions during driving**

- Do not adjust the rearview mirror during driving, otherwise it may cause accidents due to mishandling, leading to serious personal injury or even death.
- When the stacking height of items placed in the rear seat exceeds the seat back, it will obstruct your view in the rearview mirror and cause a traffic accident. Therefore, do not stack items higher than the height of the seat back.

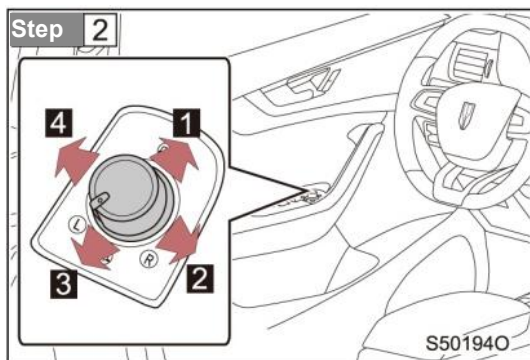
### Adjust exterior rearview mirror

When the engine switch is placed in "IG-ON" mode, the angle of the exterior rearview mirror can be adjusted.



Turn the adjusting knob to select the rearview mirror to be adjusted.

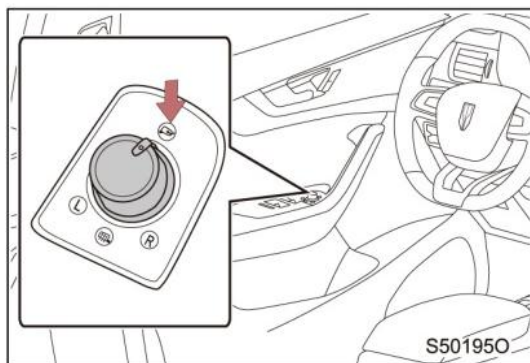
- 1** LEFT
- 2** RIGHT



Adjusting the interior rear-view mirror

- 1** Up
- 2** Shift right
- 3** Down
- 4** Shift left

### Folding exterior rearview mirror



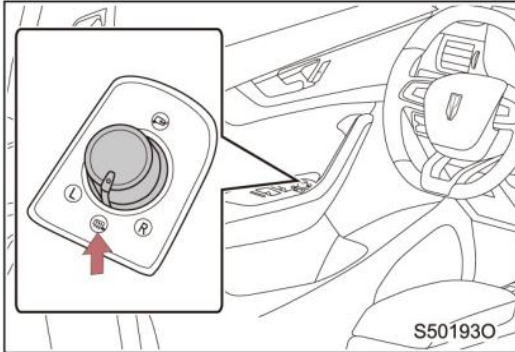
As the figure shows, rotate the adjustment knob to the mirror- folding position to fold the mirror, and rotate the knob to other positions to return the mirror to the original position.

The exterior mirrors will be automatically folded as the vehicle locked and be unfolded as the vehicle unlocked.

The exterior rearview mirror auto folding on/off can be set in the vehicle setting of audio system. (See P.224)



### Adjust exterior rearview mirror



When the mirror fogs up, rotate the adjustment knob to the position with a heating label to heat the mirror.

If it is not manually turned off, the heater will turn off automatically after running for about 10min (minutes).

#### ■ Adjustment conditions for exterior rear-view mirror angles

The engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode and the vehicle is in parking status.

#### ■ Working conditions of folding switch and heating switch of exterior rearview mirror

The engine switch is placed in "IG-ON" mode.

#### ■ Activating electric mode in cold weather

The exterior rear-view mirrors can freeze in cold weather. In such case, the mirrors may fail to be automatically folded and unfolded in the electric mode. In this case, remove the ice and snow from the exterior rear-view mirrors first and then manually operate the mirrors.

#### ■ Exterior rear-view mirror memory

The exterior rear-view mirror memory activates in conjunction with the seat memory. (See P.96)

#### ■ Automatic adjustment function of the right rear-view mirror

The driver can adjust the right mirror to a proper angle at the R gear, and store it as the target turning down position.

Turn the exterior mirror adjustment knob to the right to enable this function. Selecting Reverse (R) gear causes the right exterior mirror to turn down, providing a reversing view for the driver. When the lever is moved from R, the mirror returns to the previous position.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ When driving

Observe the following precautions while driving. Otherwise, it may cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle and accidents to occur, resulting in serious injuries or even death.

- Look around before changing the lane.
- It is very dangerous to change lanes without considering the actual distance from vehicles in the exterior rearview mirror. As the actual distance to the object is smaller than the one you see through the mirror, it may cause serious accidents.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the exterior rearview mirror folding. Before driving, ensure to return the exterior mirror to the unfolded position.

### ■ When the exterior rearview mirror moves

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to trap the hand with the moving mirror.

### ■ When operating the exterior rearview mirror heater

- Do not touch the exterior mirror surface, as the mirror may become very hot and cause a scald.
- When heating is not required, please turn the rearview mirror adjusting knob to the "L" or "R" position.

### ■ Precautions when driving

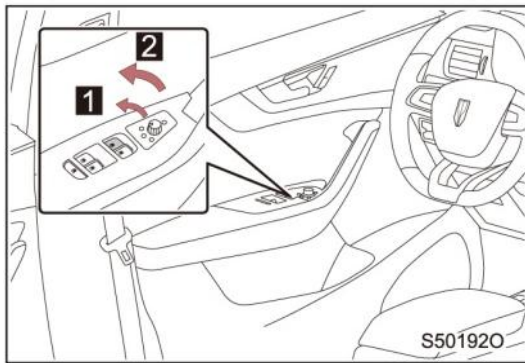
Observe the following precautions while driving.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

### Opening and closing the power window

#### ■ Power window switch on the driver side

The power window switch on the driver side regulates other windows



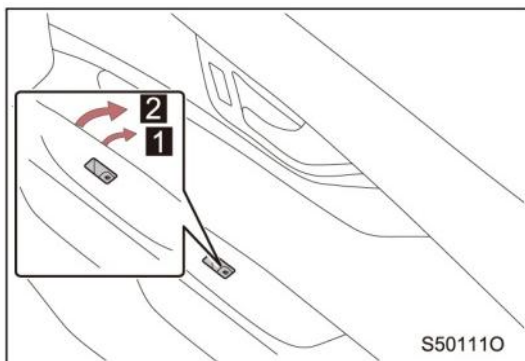
#### 1 Manual UP/DOWN

Pull/press the level 1 on the corresponding window switch (keep pulling/pressing), the window will be regulated up/down manually.

#### 2 AUTO UP/DOWN

The window glass automatically rises/falls when the corresponding window lift switch is pushed up/down to the 2nd position (released after being pushed up/down).

#### ■ Power window switch on the front passenger side



#### 1 Manual UP/DOWN

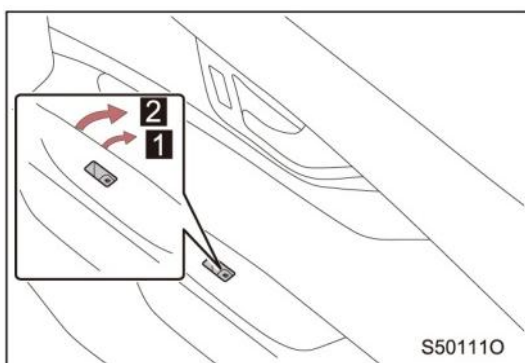
Pull/press the level 1 on the corresponding window switch (keep pulling/pressing), the window will be regulated up/down manually.

#### 2 AUTO UP/DOWN

The window glass automatically rises/falls when the corresponding window lift switch is pushed up/down to the 2nd position (released after being pushed up/down).

#### ■ Power window switches for rear passengers

The power window switch for rear passengers on either side regulates the rear windows on both sides



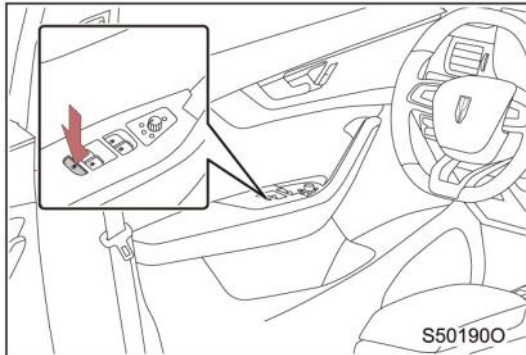
#### 1 Manual UP/DOWN

Pull/press the level 1 on the corresponding window switch (keep pulling/pressing), the window will be regulated up/down manually.

#### 2 AUTO UP/DOWN

The window glass automatically rises/falls when the corresponding window lift switch is pushed up/down to the 2nd position (released after being pushed up/down).

### Power window lock switch



Press this switch to disable the power window switches for rear passengers.

The power window switches on driver and front passenger sides are not regulated by the lock switch.

#### ■ Operating condition for power windows

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

#### ■ Operating power windows after turning off the engine

The power window can be operated even within about 60s (seconds) after the engine switch is turned off.

#### ■ Initialization

When the automatic up/down function fails, the window needs to be initialised. The initialisation method is as follows:

- With the door window at any position of the anti-pinch effective area (more than 4 mm from the window frame), keep pulling the switch on the window to be initialised until the window is fully closed and keep this pulling for more than 2 seconds, then the initialisation process finishes.

Please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer if necessary.

#### ■ Anti-pinching function

When the power window is operated to rise and is interfered by obstacles, the power window will automatically move down.

#### ■ Power window automatic shutdown function\*

When the engine switch is placed in "IG-OFF" mode and the window is not closed, the window is closed automatically by judging the rainfall amount through the rain and light sensor.

#### ■ Remote control window lifting

When all doors, the hood and the trunk lid are closed and the engine switch is set to the "IG-OFF" position, in the effective area, press the lock button on the smart key and hold to close all windows.

#### ■ Smart elevating

When all doors, the hood and the trunk lid are closed and the engine switch is set to the "IG-OFF" position, and you carry a smart key or card key with you, you can close all windows by touching the door handle locking sensing area for a period of time.

#### ■ Window lifting with mechanical key

When all doors, the hood and the trunk lid are closed and the engine switch is set to the "IG-OFF" position, all windows can be closed by locking the doors with a mechanical key.

**CAUTIONS****■ Observe the following precautions when closing windows to avoid serious injury or even death:**

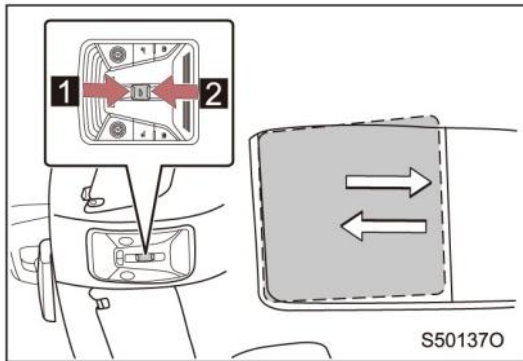
- Check and make sure that all passengers would not have any part of their bodies pinched when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.

**■ Anti-pinching function**

- Never try to activate the anti-pinch function intentionally by having any body part pinched.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if something gets pinched (4 mm) just before the window fully closes.
- The initialisation is required if the power window or anti-pinch function is inoperable.

The sunroof switch can be used to open and close the sunroof.

### Opening and closing



#### 1 Opening

Press the switch when the sunroof is closed, the rear part of the sunroof is tilted up and the sunshade curtain opens partially. Press the switch when the sunroof is at a tilt-up position, the sunroof opens synchronously with the sunshade curtain.

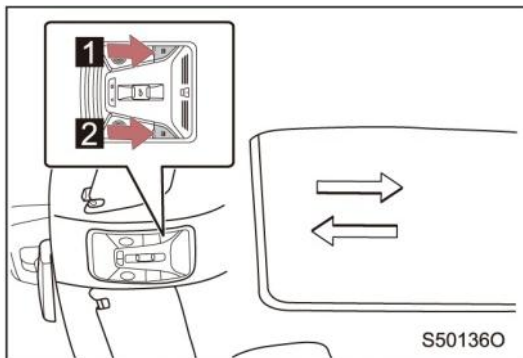
#### 2 Closing

Press the switch when the sunroof is open, the sunroof closes.

Note: When the sunroof is opened or closed automatically, press the sunroof switch to stop the sunroof.

Press and hold the sunroof switch for a long time, the sunroof can be opened and closed manually. It will stop when you release the switch.

### Electric sunshade curtain



#### 1 Opening

Press the sunshade curtain opening button to fully open the sunshade curtain.

#### 2 Closing

Press the sunshade curtain closing button to fully close the sunshade curtain.

Note: When the sunshade curtain is opening or closing automatically, pressing the sunshade curtain button will stop the movement.

Press and hold the sunshade curtain button to manually open and close the blind, and the movement will stop with the switch released.

---

**■ Operating condition for sunroof**

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

**■ Initialization****● Sunroof initialisation**

Initialization is required when the sunroof position is incorrect, the sunroof automatic function fails or the panoramic sunroof and sun visor linkage function fails. The initialization steps are as follows: place the engine switch in "IG-ON" mode, and the sunroof will be fully closed. Press the sunroof switch forward for about 7s (seconds) at this time, release the switch after the sunroof hits the blocking point of the mechanism, press the switch forward again within 5s (seconds), and the sunroof will perform a series of actions such as tilt up, slide open, slide close, and then stop. Release the switch, and the initialization operation is completed.

**● Sunshade curtain initialisation**

Initialization is required when the position of the sun visor is incorrect or the automatic function of the sun visor is invalid. The initialization steps are as follows: put the engine switch in "IG-ON" mode, and the sun visor will be fully closed. At this time, press the sun visor button for about 7s (seconds), release the switch after the sun visor hits the blocking point of the mechanism, press the switch again within 5s (seconds), and the sun visor will move backward and forward and then stop after a series of actions. Release the switch, and the initialization operation is completed.

**■ Anti-pinching function**

If the sunroof/sunshade curtain encounters obstacles during closing, the sunroof/sunshade curtain will automatically return to a safe position.

**■ Automatic sunroof closing function \***

When the engine switch is placed in "IG-OFF" mode and the sunroof is not closed, the sunroof is closed automatically by judging the rainfall amount through the rain and light sensor.

**■ Closing the sunroof with remote control**

When all doors, the hood and the trunk lid are closed and the engine switch is set to the "IG-OFF" mode, in the effective area, press the lock button on the smart key and hold to close the sunroof.

**■ Closing the sunroof with the smart key**

When all doors, the hood and the trunk lid are closed and the engine switch is set to the "IG-OFF" mode, and you carry a smart key or card key with you, you can close the sunroof by touching the door handle locking sensing area for a period of time.

**■ Closing the sunroof with the mechanical key**

When all doors, the hood and the trunk lid are closed and the engine switch is set to the "IG-OFF" mode, the sunroof can be closed by locking the doors with a mechanical key.



#### CAUTIONS

##### ■ Precautions when opening the sunroof

Observe the following precautions when opening the sunroof to avoid serious injury:

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on the sunroof.

##### ■ Precautions when closing the sunroof

Observe the following precautions when closing the sunroof to avoid serious injury:

- Check and make sure that all passengers would not have any part of their bodies pinched when the sunroof is being closed.
- Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

##### ■ During the initialisation

- If the sunroof switch is released during initialisation, then this initialisation operation fails and a new initialisation operation is needed.
- Confirm all functions of the sunroof after initialization.
- If unable to finish the initialisation, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

##### ■ Anti-pinching function

- Never try to activate the anti-pinch function intentionally by having any body part pinched.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if something gets pinched just before the sunroof fully closes.



4-1. Before Driving	
Driving a vehicle .....	112
Goods and luggage.....	118
Trailer towing.....	119
4-2. Driving regulations	
Engine (start) switch .....	120
Transmission .....	123
Driving mode.....	128
Turn signal lamp control handle .....	131
Electronic parking brake (EPB) system .....	132
AUTO HOLD* .....	134
4-3. Operating lights and wipers	
Front headlamp switch.....	136
Intelligent high beam control (IHC) system* ..	138
Fog lamp switch .....	140
Front windshield wipers and washer .....	141
Rear windshield wiper and washer .....	144
4-4. Fill the fuel	
Opening the fuel tank lid .....	145
4-5. Using Other Driving Systems	
Fixed speed cruise control*.....	148
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) function* .....	151
Super Adaptive Cruise Control (SACC) function * .....	157
Front and rear parking radar .....	164
Rear view camera system* .....	169
Panoramic image system* .....	174
Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS).....	179
LDW/LKA Lane keeping assist system* .....	181
Driver Status Monitoring (DSM)* .....	184
Forward collision warning (FCW) system* ....	185
Autonomous emergency brake (AEB) system*	187
Blind Spot Detection (BSD)* .....	190
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)* .....	194
Idling start/stop system .....	196
Auto Parking Assist (APA) * .....	200
Driver assistance system .....	206
4-6. Driving information	
Key points for driving in winter .....	209

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

■ Starting the engine (See P.121)

■ Driving

**Step 1** Depress the brake pedal and operate the gear lever to switch to the D position. (see P.123)

**Step 2** Release the electronic parking brake. (See P.132)

**Step 3** Gradually release the brake pedal and lightly depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ Stopping

**Step 1** When gear level is in D position, depress the brake pedal.

**Step 2** When necessary, the EMU applies the electronic parking brake. (See P.132)

When parking intended for a long time, always shift the shift lever to P or N. (See P.123)

■ Parking

**Step 1** When the shift lever is at D, depress the brake pedal.

**Step 2** Presses the P key to engage the P gear. (See P.123)

**Step 3** Apply electronic parking brake (See P.132)

**Step 4** Press the engine switch to turn off the engine.

**Step 5** Lock the door and make sure you carry the key with you.

### Moving off on a steep uphill

When the gradient is too large and it is not suitable to use EPB hill start assist function, please operate the vehicle as follows:

**Step 1** Depress the brake pedal firmly and change the shift lever to D.

Make sure the gear indicator displays D.

**Step 2** Release the electronic parking brake.

**Step 3** Release the brake pedal and lightly depress the accelerator pedal.

#### ■ When starting on uphill

The hill-start assist control (HHC) will be activated automatically to prevent the vehicle from slipping. (See P.206)

#### ■ ESS emergency brake reminder function

When the speed reaches the designed speed, if emergency braking is applied, the brake lamp flashes quickly to remind the rear vehicle until the brake pedal is released.

#### ■ Driving in the rain

- When it rains, please drive carefully because of poor visibility, foggy windows and slippery roads.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an express way in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, hampering the steering and brakes from operating properly.

#### ■ Running in your new vehicle

In order to prolong the service life of the vehicle, it is recommended that you observe the following precautions:

- Within the initial 1,000 km:
- Avoid sudden stops.
- Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
- Avoid sudden acceleration.
- Do not drive at low speed continuously.
- Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

#### ■ When driving abroad

Comply with the relevant regulations of the country and make sure of the availability of the correct fuel.

**CAUTIONS**

■ **When starting the vehicle**

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle stops with the engine operating. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ **Precautions during driving**

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the locations of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
- Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in serious injury or death.
- Drive with caution when reversing although the vehicle is equipped with reversing camera system and parking radar system.
- When reversing, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
- Even if you move the vehicle slightly, you must maintain the correct driving posture in order to accurately depress the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal.
- Please depress the brake pedal with your right foot. In case of emergency, the response may be delayed if your left foot is used to step on the brake pedal, potentially resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.

The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot, and may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.

- Do not move the vehicle backward when the gear position is in the forward position or the P position or forward when the gear position is in the R or P position, otherwise accidents or damage to the vehicle may be caused.
- If exhaust gas is smelt inside the vehicle, open the windows.

Large amounts of exhaust gas in the vehicle can result in a serious health hazard, and even cause an accident.

- Do not change the shift lever to P, R or N while the vehicle is running, otherwise it will seriously damage the transmission and may cause the vehicle out of control.

Do not change the shift lever to N while the vehicle is running, otherwise the engine braking function may not work properly, resulting in accident.

- Do not turn the engine off while driving.

If the engine is not running, the power steering and brake booster system will not work properly.

- Please use the engine brake (downshift) function to maintain a safe vehicle speed when going down a steep slope.

Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness.

- When the vehicle is parked on an inclined road surface, please confirm that the slope is suitable for the EPB function, otherwise please depress the brake pedal and apply the electronic parking brake to prevent the vehicle from moving forward or backward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the interior or exterior rear-view mirrors while driving. Doing so may result in an accident.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in serious injury or death.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire spinning and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- The sudden changes in engine speed (e.g., engine braking caused by a downshift) may cause the vehicle to spin, thus causing an accident.
- After driving past a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brake is functioning properly. Wet brake linings may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. Even if only one side of the brake friction lining becomes wet and does not work properly, vehicle operation will be affected, resulting in an accident.

### ■ When operating the shift lever

Be careful not to operate the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.

This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident.

### ■ When vehicle stops

- Do not run the engine at high speeds.

If the vehicle is in a gear other than P or N, the vehicle may suddenly speed up unexpectedly, causing an accident.

- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine on for a long time.

If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check if exhaust gas enters the interior of the vehicle.

- Make sure the electronic parking brake functions normally. Otherwise always keep a foot on the brake pedal while the engine is operating to prevent an accident caused by the vehicle creeping.

### ■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, lighters, sprayers or soft drink cans in the vehicle at high temperature, otherwise the following accidents may occur.

- Gas leaks from lighters or sprayers and causes a fire.
- The temperature inside the car may deform or break the plastic lenses and other plastic parts of the glasses.
- The soft drink can may burst, causing the beverage to spill inside vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit to the electrical components of the vehicle.

- Always apply the electronic parking brake, change the shift lever to P, turn off the engine, and lock the vehicle.

- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is operating or immediately after turning the engine off. Doing so may cause burns.

- Do not keep the engine running in places with deep snow or snowing.

If the vehicle falls into snow during engine operation, exhaust gas may accumulate and enter the vehicle. This can seriously harm your health.

- Avoid engine idling at a high speed.

Running the engine at a high speed when the vehicle is stopped may lead to overheating of the exhaust system, thus leading to a fire if there are inflammable material near the vehicle.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Exhaust gas

- Exhaust gas contains colorless, odorless, hazardous carbon monoxide (CO). Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to a serious health hazard or even death.
- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may accumulate and enter the vehicle. This may lead to serious health hazard or even death.
- The exhaust system should be checked from time to time. In case any tiny hole or crack caused by corrosion is found, or any connector is damaged, or abnormal exhaust noise is heard, connect with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor to examine and repair the car.

### ■ When taking a nap in the car

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally change the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may accumulate and enter the vehicle, which may lead to serious health hazard or even death.

### ■ When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.

Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause two sides of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side, the parking brake may not hold the vehicle firmly.

- If the brake assist function does not operate properly, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid long downhills or sharp turns.

In this case, it needs more force than usual to depress the brake pedal, and the braking distance may also increase.

- Do not depress the brake pedal repeatedly if the engine stalls. Each time the brake pedal is depressed, some of the pressure used for brake boost is consumed.

 **Caution**
**■ Precautions during driving**

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal at the same time, otherwise the engine output power may be limited.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress both the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal to stop on a slope.

**■ When Parking**

When parking for a long time, be sure to apply the electronic parking brake and set the gear lever to the P position. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to creep or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

**■ Avoid damage to parts and components of the vehicle**

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and keep it in the utmost positions for a long time, otherwise the power steering system will be damaged.
- When driving on a bumpy road, try to drive at a low speed to avoid damage to the wheels, the bottom of the vehicle, etc.

**■ If a tire leaks while driving**

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Please hold on to the steering wheel and slowly depress the brake pedal to reduce the speed of the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control the vehicle.
- The vehicle will make an abnormal sound.
- The vehicle is running abnormally.

Replace the flat tire with a new one. (See P.354)

**■ In case of accumulated water on the road surface**

Please do not drive on roads with deep water, otherwise the vehicle may suffer the following serious damages.

- Engine shuts down
- Short circuit of electrical components.
- Engine damage due to flooding.

In case water comes into the car, do contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor to examine:

- Whether the braking function is normal.
- Engine oil and transmission oil.

Whether the wheel bearing, the transmission shaft, the drive shaft and the suspension are normal.

**Take notice of the following information about storage precautions for goods and luggage.**

- Try your best to store the goods and luggage in the trunk.
- Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Pay attention to keeping the vehicle level. Place heavy objects as far as possible to keep the vehicle in balance.
- For better driving mileage, do not carry unnecessary weight.



**CAUTIONS**

■ **Items that must not be carried in the trunk**

The following items may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

- A container containing petrol.
- Aerosol cans.

■ **Storage notes**

Observe the following precautions to avoid serious injury or even death:

- Do not put the goods or luggage in the following positions, otherwise the goods may not work properly due to jamming the brake pedal or accelerator pedal, and may block the driver's sight or bump into the driver or occupants, thus causing an accident.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - Front passenger seat or rear seat (when stacking items)
  - Instrument panel
- Secure all items in the passenger compartment, as they may move and injure someone in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Do not store poorly sealed liquid containers in the trunk.

■ **Load and distribution**

- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Be sure to place the goods evenly.

Improper placement may result in poor steering or braking control performance, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.



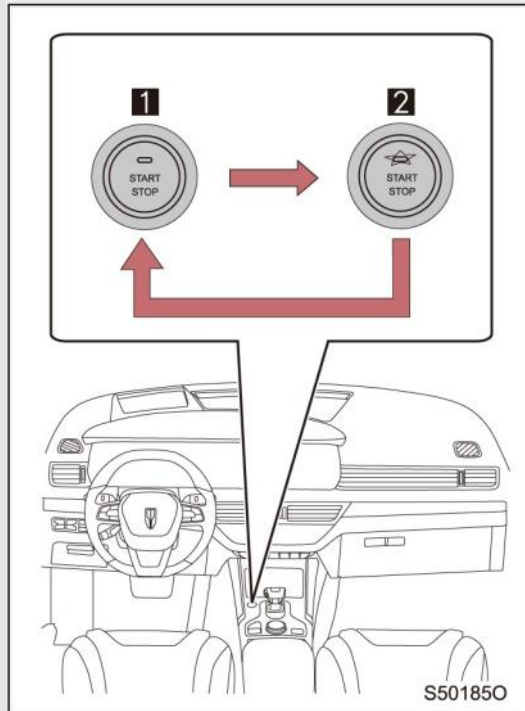
**FAW recommends you not to tow the trailer by your vehicle, neither install towing device or tow wheel chair, small motorcycle and bicycles via towing device. Your vehicle is not designed for towing or as a mounting carrier for towing devices.**



**Start the engine or switch the engine (start) switch mode when carrying the smart key the or card key.**

■ Switch the engine (start) switch mode

When the brake pedal is released, the switch mode can be switched by pressing the engine (start) switch. (Each time the switch is pressed, the mode will be switched accordingly)



**1** OFF mode <sup>\*1</sup>

Light horn, position lights and hazard warning lights can be used.

**2** IGNITION ON Mode

All electronic components can be used.

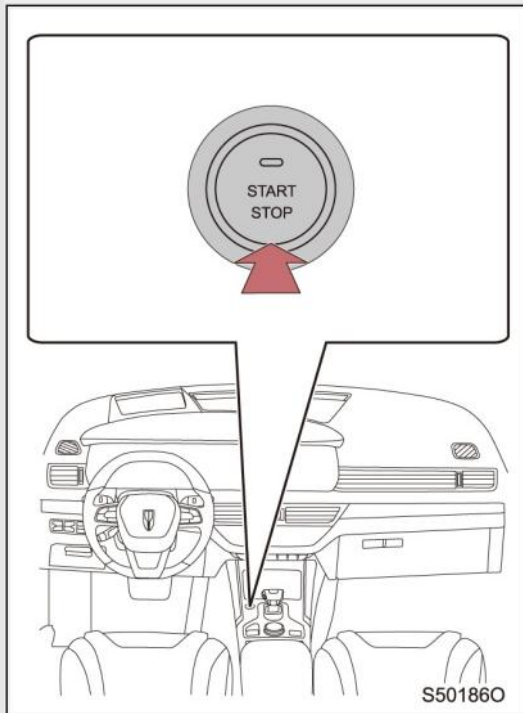
The engine (start) switch indicator lamp turns yellow.

<sup>\*1</sup>: Before shutting down the engine, shift the gear lever to the P position.

**■ Start the engine**

**Step 1** Check that the gear lever is in the P or N position and the electronic parking brake has been applied.

**Step 2** Sit in the driver's seat and firmly depress the brake pedal (the indicator lamp of the engine (start) switch is green).



Press the engine (start) switch to start the engine.

The engine can be started in any mode of the engine (start) switch.

**■ Stop the engine**

**Step 1** Completely stop the vehicle.

**Step 2** Operate the gear lever to P gear.

**Step 3** Apply the parking brake. (See P.132)

**Step 4** Press the engine (start) switch to stop the engine, and the switch indicator turns off.

■ **If the engine does not start**

The engine immobilizer system may have not been deactivated. (See P.51)

■ **When the engine “START STOP” switch indicator flashes**

The system may be malfunctioning. Please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW to inspect the vehicle.

■ **Key’s battery power lost**

(See P. 75)

■ **When the key's battery is low.**

(see P.365)

■ **Conditions impairing operation**

(See P.87)



**CAUTIONS**

■ **When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal when starting the engine under any circumstances.

Otherwise it may result in an accident and consequently create severe injury or even death.

■ **Precautions when driving**

When driving the vehicle, if the engine is forced to shut down in case of emergency, press and hold the engine switch for more than 3 s (seconds), or press the switch for 3 consecutive short times within 2s (seconds).

Do not touch the engine switch during driving unless in an emergency. If the engine is turned off while driving the vehicle, it may cause an accident.



**Caution**

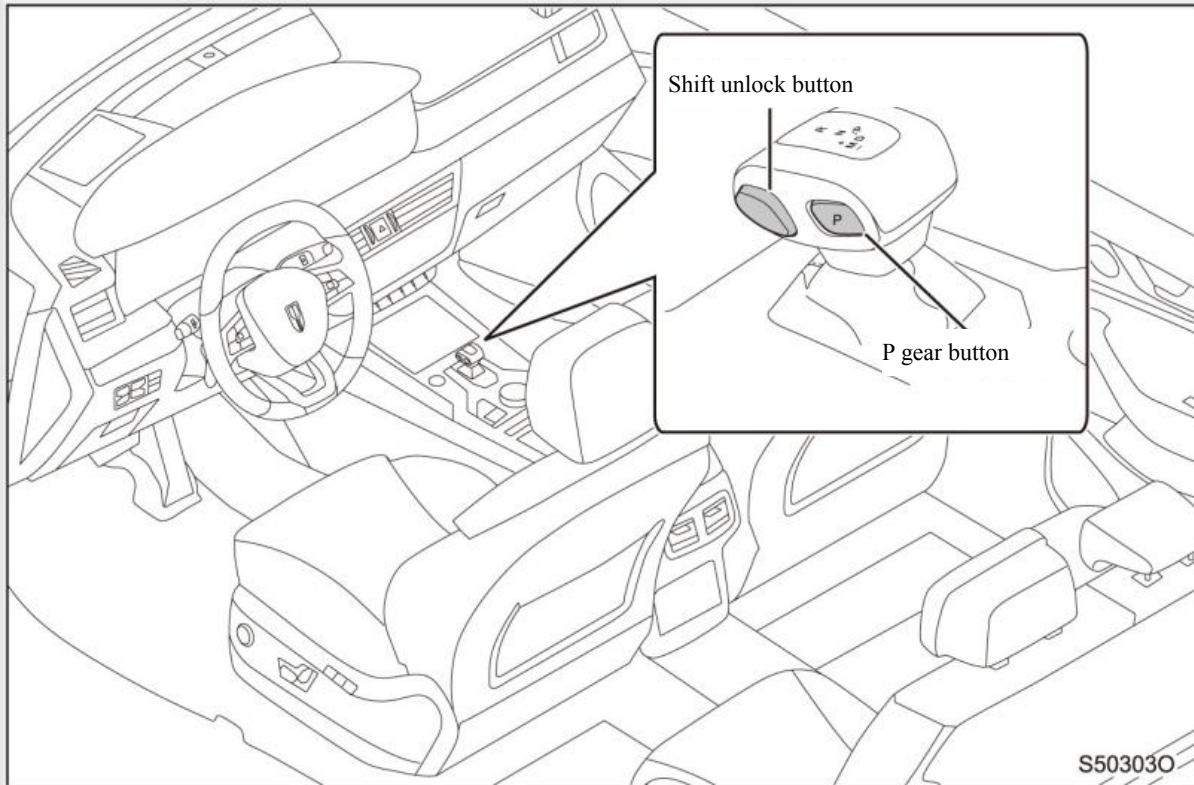
■ **Preventing low battery power**

- Do not place the engine switch in “IG-ON” mode for a long time without the engine running.
- When the driver leaves the vehicle, the vehicle should be locked and the key should be carried. Do not leave the smart key or the card key in the car to prevent the smart entry and start-up system from continuing to work, resulting in insufficient battery power.

■ **When starting the engine**

- Do not allow the engine to run at high speed in cold state.
- If the engine is difficult to start or flames out frequently, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer to check the vehicle immediately.

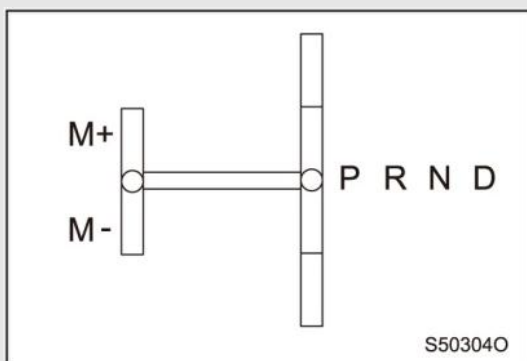
Select a gear position appropriate for driving conditions.



Gently operate the shift lever and ensure correct shifting.

After each shift operation, release the shift lever to reset it.

■ Move the gear lever



The right track is in automatic mode, with two strokes in each of the forward and backward directions.

The left track is in manual mode, with a stroke in each of the forward and backward directions.

Move the shift lever left and right to switch between these two modes. Switch to manual mode only when the gear is in D position.

### ■ Gear switch

After starting the engine, change gears as follows.

- P switched to D: Press the brake pedal, press the release button, and operate the shift lever down to the first or second stroke.
- P to N: depress the brake pedal, press the unlocking button and operate the gear lever upward to the first section of travel.
- P to R: depress the brake pedal, press the unlocking button and operate the gear lever upward to the second section of travel.
- N to D: with the vehicle still, operate the gear lever downward to the first or second section of travel \*.
- N to R: when the vehicle is stationary, press the unlock button and operate the gear lever upward to the first position or the second position\*.

\*: If staying in the N gear position for more than 1 second, the brake pedal needs to be depressed to shift. If staying in the N gear position for less than 1 second, the brake pedal does not need to be depressed to shift.

- D switched to N: Operate the shift lever up to the first stroke.

It can't be switched when the car speed is greater than 60km/h (km/h).

- D to R: depress the brake pedal to Vehicle stationary, operate the gear lever upward to the first section of travel.
- D switched to M: Operate the shift lever to left to the left track.
- M switched to D: Operate the shift lever to right to the right track.
- R to N: operate the gear lever downward to the first position.
- R to D: with the vehicle still, operate the gear lever downward to the second section of travel
- N/D/R to P: with the vehicle still, press the P button.

When selecting a gear, ensure the gear displayed on the instrument cluster is the required one.

### ■ Gear switch

Gear stage	Function
P	Parking
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Driving
M+	Manually up-shifting
M-	Manually down-shifting

### Shift descriptions

#### ► P (parking) gear

The P locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ When operating the shift lever for the first time

The car adopts an electronic gear shifting mechanism and needs to be operated according to the gear indication information on the instrument cluster and the information display screen and the above gear operation instructions. To avoid danger, it cannot be operated by feeling.

#### ■ Ensure to shift to P gear and apply the parking brake

It is very dangerous to put the gear lever to P gear position only without applying parking brake. If the P gear cannot completely secure the vehicle, the vehicle will move, which may cause an accident.

#### ► R( Reverse) Gear

In R gear, the vehicle can only move backward.

#### ► N (Neutral) Gear

When in N gear, the transmission is not locked. When parking on a gentle slope, depress the brake pedal or apply the electronic parking brake; otherwise the vehicle may slide.

#### ► D (Forward) Gear

D gear is the gear usually used when driving. It controls the vehicle to move forward and is displayed as D.

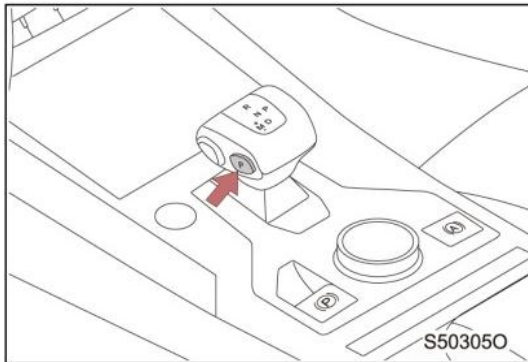
When in sport mode, it is displayed as S, and when in economic mode, it is displayed as E.

► M (Manual) gear

M gear is the manual shift mode. You can switch to the M position only when in the D position. When in the D gear position, move the gear lever to the left to enter the M gear range. Upshifting or downshifting between M1-M6 can be done by moving the shift lever or operating the shift paddle.

**P gear button**

■ When switched to P gear



Shift the gear position to P gear by using the P gear button.

When the vehicle is stationary, press the P button

When switching to P position, the display on the instrument cluster is P.

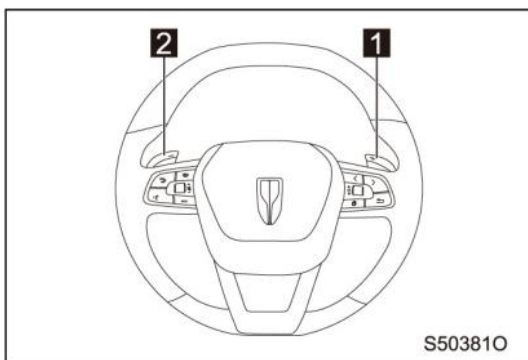
If the vehicle speed is higher than 3km/h, it will not be possible to shift into P position.

■ When switched from P position to other gear positions.

- Operate the shift lever by pressing the release button while pressing the brake pedal with force. If the shift lever is operated without the brake pedal pressed down, the shift operation will be prohibited.
- When switching the gears, make sure that the gears on the combination instrument are displayed as the desired gears.

**Change the shift range in manual mode**

► Upshift and downshift via the shift paddle on the steering wheel\*



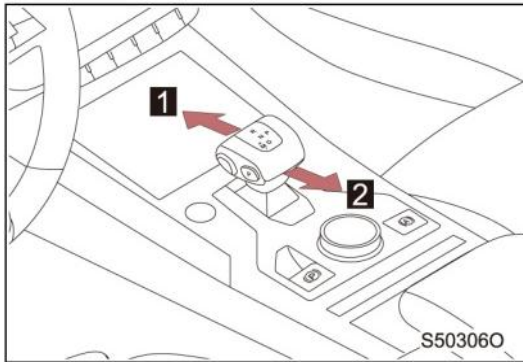
**1** Up-shifting

**2** Down-shifting

The selected gear will be shown on the multi-function display of the instrument cluster.



► Upshift and downshift via the gear lever



**1** Up-shifting

**2** Down-shifting

The selected gear will be shown on the multi-function display of the instrument cluster.

■ **Temporary manual mode**

In the D gear mode, you can enter the temporary manual mode by turning the shift paddles, which can meet the functions of overtaking, power uphill, and engine braking. Press and hold the upshift paddle for 2s (seconds) to exit the temporary manual mode or the vehicle is driven according to the driving The working condition automatically exits the temporary manual mode.

■ The car will automatically switch to P position under the following conditions

- After the engine switch is placed in the "IG-OFF" mode, the vehicle will automatically shift to the P gear position when it is in positions other than N.
- When the vehicle speed is lower than 3km/h, if the driver unfastens the seat belt, releases the brake pedal and opens the door, the vehicle shifts to P gear.

■ **Gear limit (at manual mode)**

To protect the engine and transmission, the gear positions are limited according to engine speed during manual shifting. Therefore, under certain operating conditions, the transmission may not be upshifted or downshifted even when the shift lever is operated, or the transmission is automatically upshifted or downshifted without manual shift operation.

■ **In case of stopping the car when the gear position is in M position.**

- Once the vehicle stops, the transmission will automatically downshift to M1 or M2.
- In M gear, the vehicle can start in M1 or M2 gear.

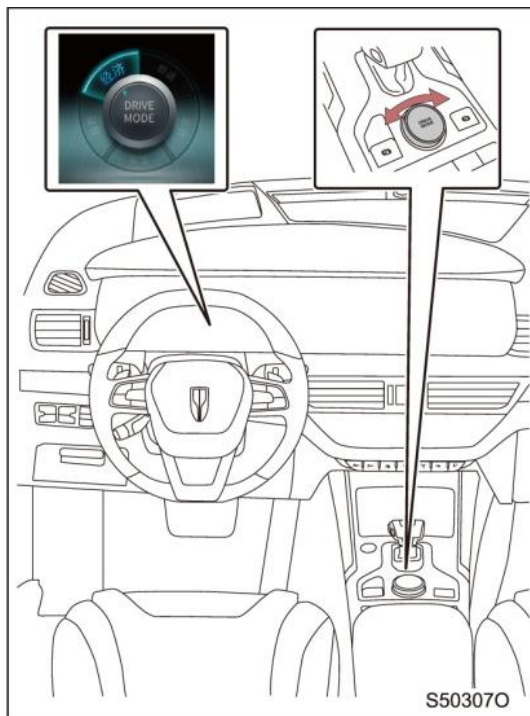
**⚠ CAUTIONS**

■ **When driving on smooth roads**

Be careful when suddenly accelerating and decelerating, otherwise the vehicle may slip or the wheels may spin.

**This vehicle is equipped with a driving mode switching system. It can provide different vehicle modes, and the vehicle has unique driving performance in different modes to meet the driver's needs.**

#### Driving mode switching



Rotate the driving mode switch knob to switch the driving mode cyclically. The vehicle is provided with five driving modes of economy, comfort, sports, off-road and snow.

When the driving mode is switched, the multi-function display area of the instrument cluster simultaneously displays the currently selected driving mode.

#### ■ Economic mode

In economic mode, the vehicle has good economic performance and is suitable for driving under common urban paved roads.

Driving characteristics in sandy mode:

- The acceleration is slow and fuel consumption is low.
- The transmission upshifts ahead of schedule.
- For AWD model, the driving mode is forced to 2WD.
- The steering is heavy.
- The vehicle equipped with smart vibration absorber system, its stiffness is default and the road feel is relatively balanced.

#### ■ Comfort mode

In comfort mode, the vehicle has good comfort performance and is suitable for driving under common urban paved roads.

Driving characteristics in comfort mode:

- Both acceleration and fuel consumption are normal.
- The transmission gear shift is in default status.
- For AWD model, the driving mode is AWD.
- The steering is light.
- For vehicles equipped with intelligent shock absorber system, the shock absorber is relatively soft and highly comfortable.

#### ■ Sport mode

In sport mode, the vehicle has good dynamic performance and is suitable for driving under the highway. Driving characteristics in sport mode:

- Fast acceleration and high fuel consumption.
- The transmission gear shift is delayed.
- For AWD model, the driving mode is AWD.
- The steering is heavy.
- The vehicle is equipped with smart vibration absorber system, its stiffness is high and the road feel is strong.

#### ■ Off-road mode

Off-road mode is suitable for urban road shoulders, driving under mild off-road surfaces.

Driving characteristics in off-road mode:

- The acceleration is highly gentle while the fuel consumption is high.
- Delayed gear shifting when the vehicle is starting.
- For AWD model, the driving mode is forced to 4WD.
- The steering is balanced.
- The vehicle is equipped with smart vibration absorber system, its stiffness is high and the road feel is strong.

#### ■ Snow mode

The snow mode is suitable for severely damaged pavement, low-adhesion road after snowing, and driving on slight cross-country road.

Driving characteristics in snow mode:

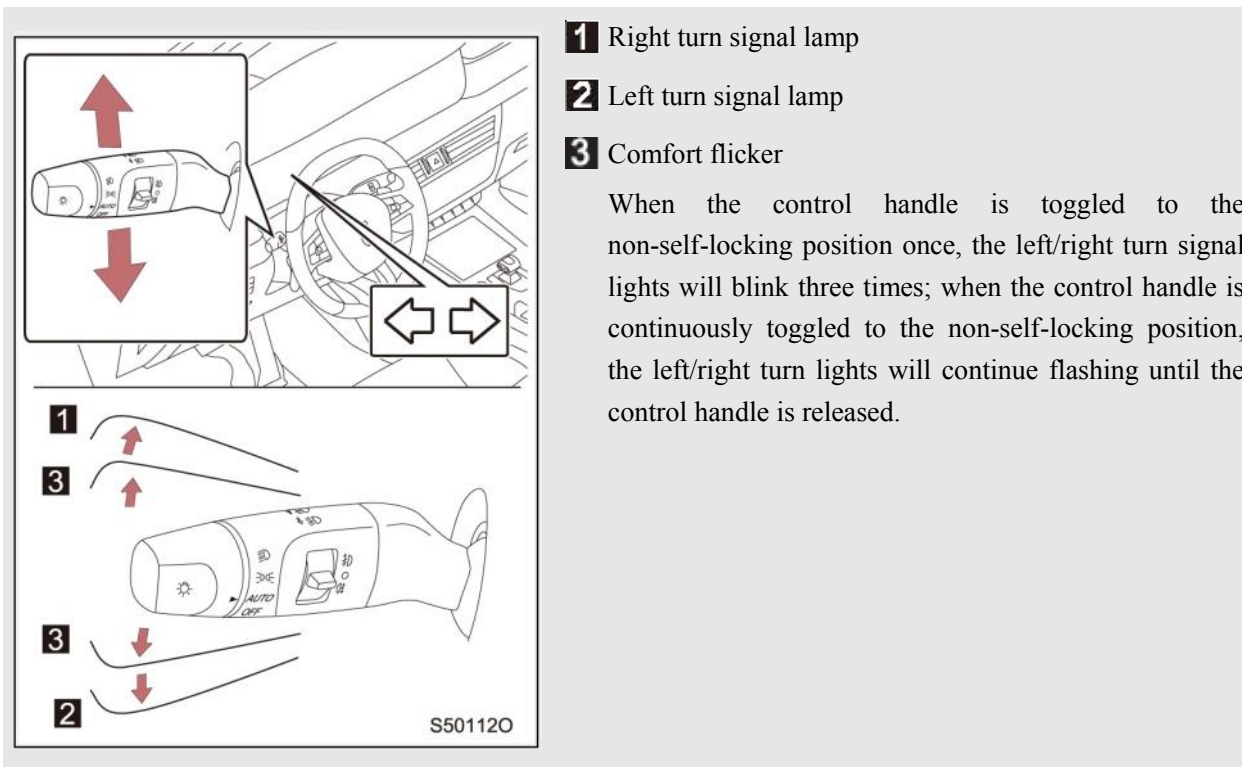
- The acceleration is highly gentle.
- When the vehicle is starting, the shifting is gentle.
- For AWD model, the driving mode is forced to 4WD.
- The steering is balanced.
- The vehicle equipped with smart vibration absorber system, its stiffness is default and the road feel is relatively balanced.

- 
- Setting conditions for driving mode switching
  - The engine switch is placed in "IG-ON" mode.\* The relevant system has no fault.
  - The driving mode switch controller has no fault.

 **Caution**

■ **Precautions when switching the driving modes**

- The driving mode switching system has a self-protection function to prevent the driving mode from being activated under working conditions that do not meet the corresponding driving mode, thus damaging the vehicle and affecting the driving safety. Therefore, when the driver is switching the driving mode, the target mode cannot be activated. This situation may be caused by the system's self-protection function. It is normal.
- With the driving mode operating conditions met, if the driving mode system does not work, please immediately contact the authorized FAW HONGQI dealer to check.
- The driving mode is only a driving assist system and can't replace the driver's judgment on the driving environment. The driver must always maintain the car control and bear full responsibility for car.



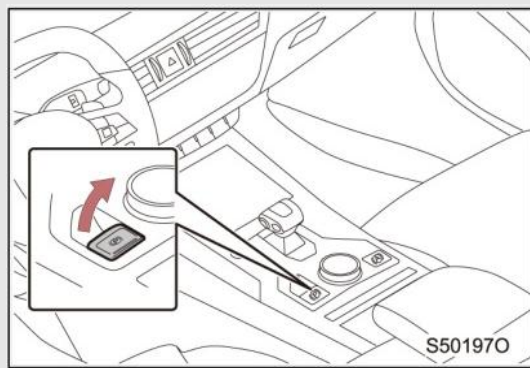
#### ■ Turn signal lamps can be operated when

The engine switch is placed in "IG-ON" mode.

#### ■ Turn signal light and danger warning light control

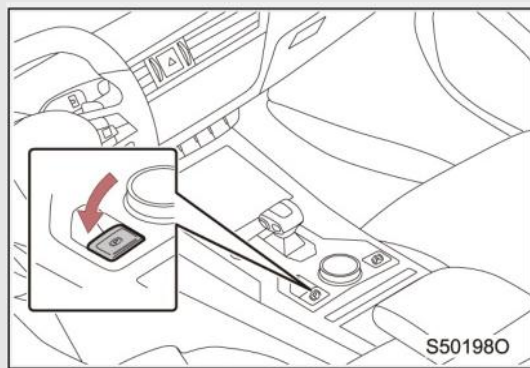
When the turn signal lamp is on, press the hazard warning lamp switch and the turn signal lamps on the left and right sides will flash at the same time. Press the hazard warning lamp switch again to return to the working state as the turn signal lamps.

When the hazard warning lights are on and the engine switch is placed in "IG-ON" mode, turn on the turn signal lights, then the turn signal is working and the hazard warning light stops working. Turn off the turn signal lights and return to the working status of the hazard warning lights.



Applying the EPB electronic parking brake (the indicator on)

When the engine switch is placed in "IG-ON" mode, after depressing the brake pedal to confirm that the vehicle is stationary, lift the electronic parking brake switch upward to apply the electronic parking brake.



Release the EPB electronic parking brake (the indicator off)

When the engine switch is placed in "IG-ON" mode, depress the brake pedal, and press the electronic parking brake switch to release the electronic parking brake.

---

■ **Other functions of EPB**

- Hill-start assist function: When the electronic parking brake is applied, the driver fasten the seatbelt, and when the vehicle starts, the system will automatically release EPB according to the principle of torque balance, so that the vehicle will not slip off the slope and start smoothly.
- Electronic deceleration control function: when the vehicle is running, lift the EPB switch upward continuously, and the vehicle will brake until it stops.

■ **Auto parking upon power off**

- When the vehicle is parked and the engine switch is turned off, EPB will be automatically applied.

The on/off of auto hold upon power-off can be set in the vehicle setting of audio system. (See P.224)

■ **Automatically release the parking brake**

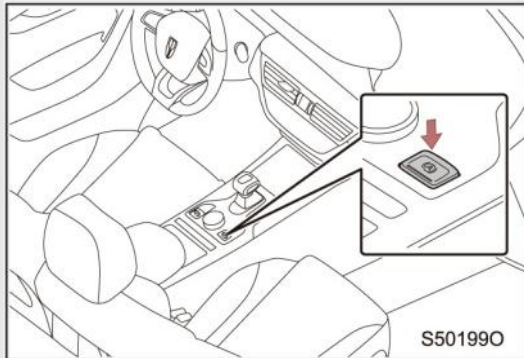
- When the electronic parking brake is applied, the driver shall fasten the seatbelt, shift to D gear, depress the accelerator pedal, and EPB will be automatically released.

 **Caution****■ Precautions before driving**

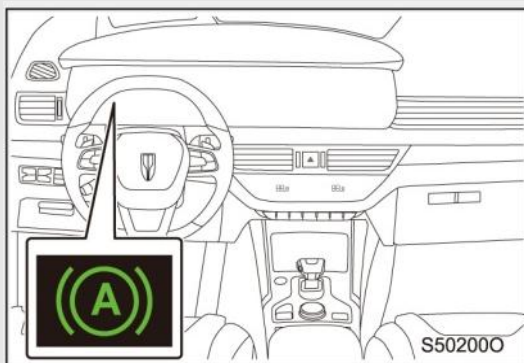
- Release the electronic parking brake completely. In the event of a failure (e.g. an electrical failure), the rear brake disc locked by the EPB can only be unlocked mechanically. It is recommended that you contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer for the operation.
- When the EPB is not released, the red indicator lights up. Driving the vehicle now will cause the brake components to overheat, which will affect the brake performance and aggravate the brake wear.
- If the road condition is not suitable for parking, the multi-functional display of the instrument cluster will prompt "too steep for parking".

**AUTO HOLD**

When the AUTOHOLD function is standby, the vehicle's auto hold will be activated when the brake pedal is depressed with the gear position in D or N to stop the vehicle. At this time, if the brake pedal is released, the vehicle will keep braking. When the accelerator pedal is depressed with the gear position in D, and the system will release the auto hold to realize a smooth start.

**Auto Hold ready state**

Press the Auto Hold button, and the Auto Hold function will be ready and the button indicator will light up.

**Activating the Auto Hold**

After depressing the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and then releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle's auto hold function will be activated. At this time, the auto hold indicator on the multi-functional display of the instrument cluster turns on.

**■ AUTO HOLD**

- Depress the brake pedal and press the auto park button again to turn off the AUTOHOLD function.
- The automatic vehicle hold function may not stop the vehicle when on a steep slope. In that case it is necessary to apply manual braking.
- Vehicles with AUTOHOLD are also provided with hill start assist function.
- EPB electronic parking brake will take over AUTOHOLD after the vehicle's auto hold is activated for about 3 minutes.

**■ Operating conditions for AUTOHOLD**

Conditions for activating the Auto Hold:

- Close all doors.
- Driver wears the belt.
- Start the vehicle and press the AUTOHOLD button.



- Driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle is stopped, and then releases the brake pedal.

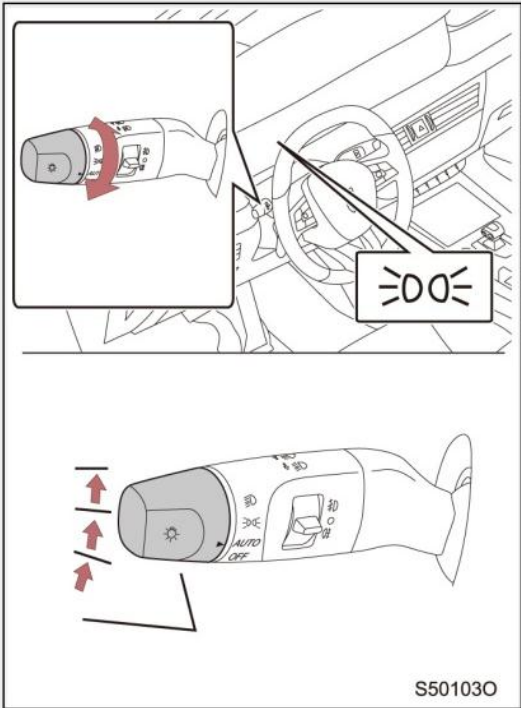
**CAUTIONS****■ When parking on slippery road surfaces**

If the tire's grip is exceeded, the AUTO HOLD automatic parking function cannot stop the vehicle. Do not use this system on slippery roads.

**Caution****■ When Parking**

- AUTO HOLD function cannot be used for long-term parking. For long periods of parking, apply the EPB electronic parking brake. Switching the engine switch to the "IG-OFF" mode when auto hold is activated may release the brake and cause the vehicle to move. When turning off the engine switch, depress the brake pedal, apply the electronic parking brake and shift the gear lever to the P position.

### 4.3. Operating lights and wipers Headlamp switch



The diagram shows the headlamp switch in two views. The top view shows the switch in the 'AUTO' position, with a callout box containing the 'AUTO' symbol. The bottom view shows the switch in the 'OFF' position, with three red arrows pointing to the 'OFF' position and the 'AUTO' position. The diagram is labeled S50103O.

**☰☽☰** Front position lamp, rear position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel backlights illuminate.

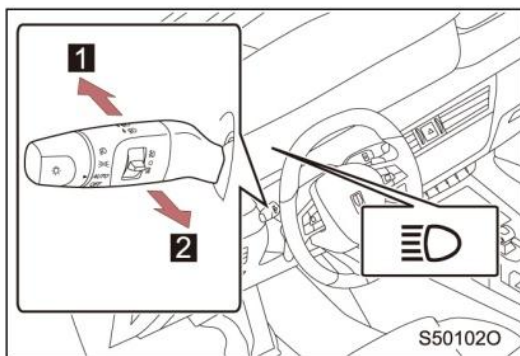
**☰☽** Headlamps (dipped beam) and all the above lamps illuminate.

**AUTO** Headlights (low beam), position lights, license plate lights turn on and off automatically

**OFF** Off.

Note: When the switch is in the AUTO position, if the headlamps, position lights and license plate lights are off, the daytime running lights will be on.

#### Turning on the high beam



- 1** When the headlamp (dipped beam) is turned on, push the lamp control handle forward to turn on the high beam; Pull the handle back to its original position to turn off the high beam.
- 2** Pull backward the lamp control handle to turn on the high beam; releasing the lamp control handle to turn off the high beam.

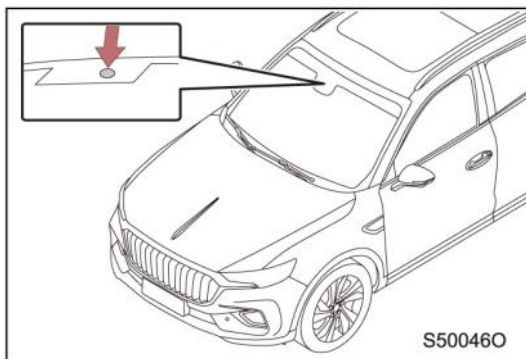
#### ■ Daytime running lamp system

During daytime driving, to make it easier for other drivers to see your car, as long as the engine switch is placed in "IG-ON" mode and the position lights is turned off, the daytime driving light will be automatically turned on.

It can be set to turn on and off the daytime running lamp in the vehicle setting of the audio system.

(See P.223)

### ■ Rain & lamp sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object blocks the sensor, or anything affixed to the windshield blocks the sensor.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the ambient lamp intensity and may cause the automatic headlamp system and automatic wiper malfunctions.

### ■ Automatic headlamp beam height adjusting system



The automatic headlamp beam height adjusting system can automatically adjust the headlamp beam height according to the number of passengers, the load condition of the vehicle and the road environment to ensure that the headlamps will not interfere with other road users.

#### **Off-vehicle lighting system \***

With the engine switch in IG - ON and lamp light switch in AUTO position, if the low beam lamp, position lamp and license plate lamp are on, the door will be locked when the engine switch is turned to IG - OFF. When the door is unlocked again, the above lamps will be on for a while and then automatically extinguish. The on/off of lighting upon boarding and lighting time can be set in the vehicle setting of audio system. (See P.223)

#### **Boarding lighting system \***

When the engine switch is in the "IG-ON" mode and the light switch is in the auto position, if the low beam, position lights and license plate lights are on, then switch the engine switch to the "IG-OFF" mode and lock the doors. When the door is unlocked again, the light will be on for a period of time, then it will turn off automatically. The on/off of lighting upon boarding and lighting time can be set in the vehicle setting of audio system. (See P.223)

**IHC intelligent high-beam control function can help drivers to switch between high beam and low beam automatically according to the surrounding road conditions. When the vehicle speed is greater than 50km/h, the intelligent high-beam control is activated, and the intelligent high-beam indicator  of the combination instrument lights up; when the vehicle speed is less than 30km/h, the intelligent high-beam control stands by and the intelligent high-beam indicator  goes out.**

#### **IHC On and Off**

It can be set to turn on and off the intelligent high beam system in the vehicle setting of the audio system (See P.223)

#### **Operating conditions of IHC**

Start the engine, place the headlamp switch in the AUTO position, the high beam switch handle in the "high beam off" position, and when the automatic light control is in the low beam on state, the intelligent high beam control system is on.

Conditions under which the high beam is automatically turned on or off

- When all of the following conditions are met, the high beam will automatically turn on:
  - The vehicle speed is higher than 50 km/h.
  - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
  - There is a car in front without headlamps completely on or tail lamps completely on.
  - Few street lamps are turned on ahead.
- When any one of the following conditions are met, the high beam will automatically turn off:
  - The vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h.
  - The area in front of the vehicle is not dark.
  - There is a vehicle in front with its tail lamps on or a vehicle on the other road side with its headlamp on.
  - A number of street lamps are turned on ahead.

■ Under the following circumstances, the system may not be able to accurately detect the ambient brightness level, which may cause the intelligent high-beam control system not to work properly. In this case, please switch between high beam and dipped beam manually.

- The rain & lamp sensor or the camera of advanced driver assistance system fails.
- The windshield is blurred by moisture, ice, dirt, etc.
- The windshield is cracked or damaged.
- When the sight ahead is not clear due to fog, heavy rain, snow, etc.
- The camera is deformed or dirty.
- The camera temperature is extremely high.
- The ambient brightness is equivalent to the brightness of the headlamp, tail lamp or fog lamp.
- Headlamps or tail lamps of the front vehicle are off, dirty, decolored, incorrect in alignment, or there is only one bulb working.
- When driving through an area with intermittent changes in brightness.
- Frequent or repeated driving on uphill and downhill roads, bumpy roads or uneven roads (e.g. stone paved roads, gravel roads, etc.).
- Frequent or repeated turning operations or driving on winding roads.
- There is a highly reflective object, such as a sign or mirror, in front of the vehicle.
- The back of the vehicle in front is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck.
- The headlamp of the vehicle is damaged, dirty, or misaligned.
- When the opposite car turns off its headlamps and turns on the fog lamps.
- The vehicle tilts due to flat tires, towing a trailer, etc.
- The high beam and the dipped beam are repeatedly switched in an abnormal way.
- In front of the vehicle there is a light which is similar to the headlights or taillights.
- When there is lamp reflection on the road such as wet, snow and ice roads.



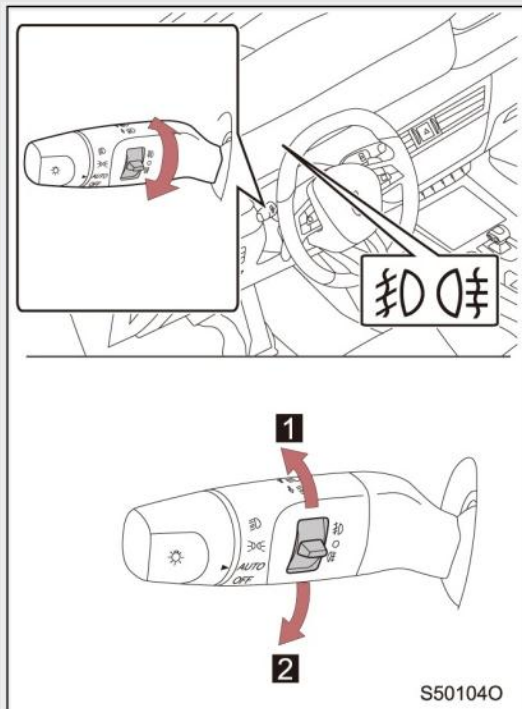
#### CAUTIONS

##### ■ Limitations of automatic high beam

Don't rely on automatic high beam. Be sure to drive safely and observe the surrounding environment. If necessary, turn the high beam on or off manually.

Fog lamp switch

Fog lamps improve visibility under unfavorable driving conditions, such as rainy days or foggy days.



- 1** The front fog lights are on.
- 2** Turn on both front and rear fog lamps

■ Operating conditions of fog lamps

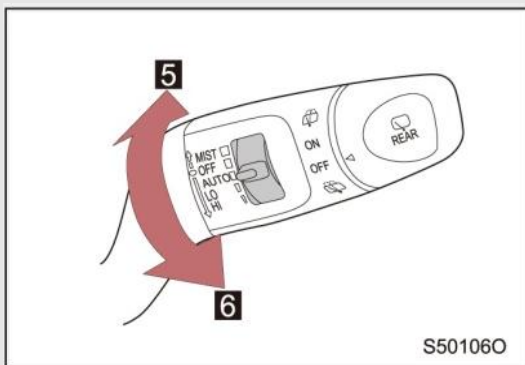
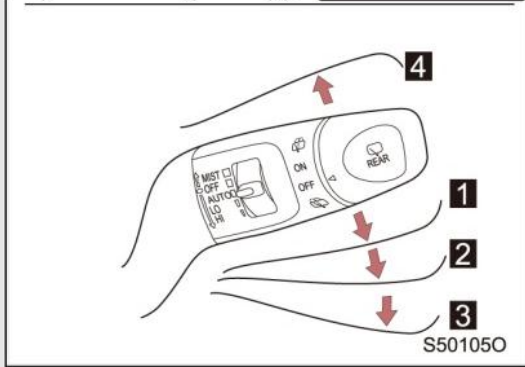
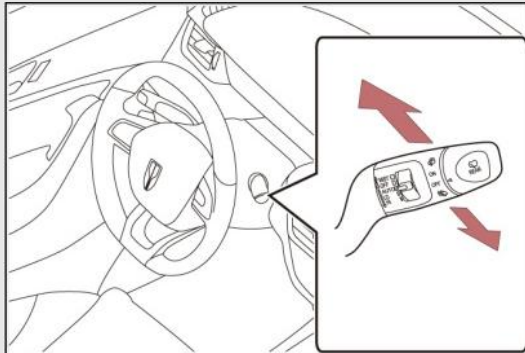
The engine switch is placed in the IG-ON mode, and the headlamps are turned on.

■ Corner lamp

When the vehicle is running at low speed with low beam on, if the driver operates the turn lamp switch or steering wheel to turn, the corresponding side front fog lamp will automatically illumine to help the driver. In R gear, if the driver operates the turn lamp switch, both sides front fog lamps will be on to enhance the lighting around the vehicle

4-3. Operating lights and wipers  
 Front windshield wipers and cleaners

When the wiper control handle is in the AUTO position, if the light rain sensor detects rain, the wiper will move automatically. The system automatically adjusts the wiper speed according to rain volume and vehicle speed.



**1** Wiper AUTO position\* - Automatically adjusts the wiper speed according to rainfall.

**2** LO—low speed.

**3** HI—high speed.

**4** Wipe MIST position - wiping at low speed for 1 cycle.

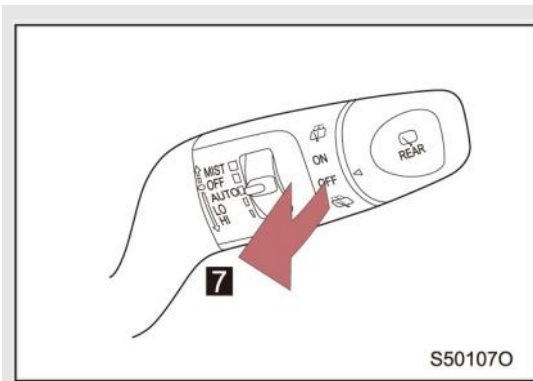
When the hood is opened, even if the control handle is pulled, the wiper will not work.

**5** Rain sensing sensitivity.

(the automatic wiping interval becomes shorter)

**6** Rain sensing sensitivity.

(The interval between automatic wiping cycle becomes shorter)



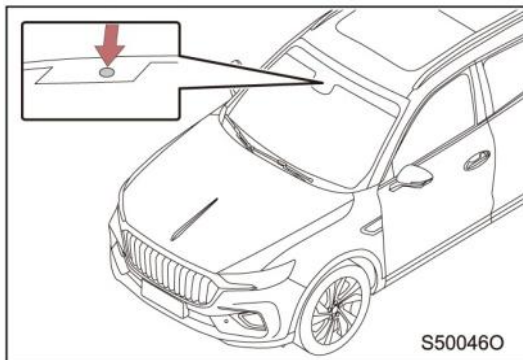
**7** Cleaning / wiping operation

Pull back the wiper control lever for cleaning the front windshield.

■ **Operating conditions of front windshield wiper and washer**

The engine switch is in “IG-ON” mode and the engine compartment cover is closed.

■ **Rain & lamp sensor**



The lamp & rain sensor identifies the amount of rain.

■ **When the sprayer nozzle fails in spraying washer fluid**

Check if there is wash fluid in the windshield washer fluid tank.

Check and confirm if the washer nozzle is not blocked.

■ **If the front windshield wiper blade should be replaced**

- Set the wiper to maintenance position in the vehicle setting of audio system. (See P.227)
- If turning off the engine switch and switching the wiper control handle to MIST position within 10s, the wiper can be set to the service position.
- When the wiper is in the service position, if operating the wiper control handle to a non-MIST position or close the wiper service position in the audio system settings, the wiper will exit from the service position.



 **CAUTIONS**
**■ Warning for using windshield wipers in AUTO mode**

In AUTO mode, if the sensor is touched, the rearview mirror is strongly shaken or the windshield glass is strongly vibrated (e.g. knocking hard on the windshield), the windshield wiper may accidentally operate. Be careful not to pinch your finger or anything else by the windshield wiper.

**■ Precautions when using the cleaning solution**

In cold days, do not use the cleaning solution before the windshield warms up. Otherwise the cleaning solution may ice up on the windshield and reduce the visibility. otherwise it may cause accidents, causing serious injuries or even death. Only washer fluid can be used in the washer fluid reservoir

It is dangerous to use radiator antifreeze as a cleaning fluid. If it is sprayed on the windshield, it will dirty the windshield, obstruct your sight and may cause an accident.

**■ In freezing weather, the windshield cleaning fluid that mixed antifreeze should be used.**

It is very dangerous to use the windshield washing agent without anti-freezing protective agent in frosting days. Because it may freeze on the windshield and obstruct your view, thus causing an accident. In addition, make sure to use defroster to heat the windshield adequately before spraying the cleaning liquid.

**■ The wiper blade should be replaced in time**

Using the worn or dirty wiper blade will reduce the legibility of front visual field and impact the driving safety. Therefore, ensure to replace the damaged or worn wiper blade or that cannot clean the windshield in time.

 **Caution**
**■ When the front windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as the wiper blades may be damaged.

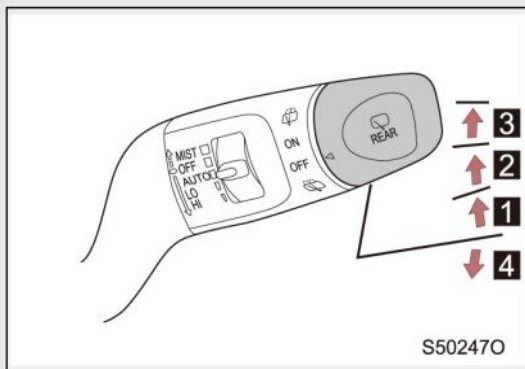
**■ When the nozzle cannot spray cleaning liquid**

If the wiper control handle is pulled backward and held up for a long time, it may cause damage to the cleaning fluid pump.

**■ When a nozzle blocked**

Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

When the rear windshield wiper control handle is rotated to different positions, the wiper and washer can be operated:



- 1** Off.
- 2** Rear wiper ON.
- 3** Cleaning operation.  
After the lever is released, it will automatically restore to the wiper position.
- 4** Cleaning / wiping operation  
After the lever is released, it will automatically restore to the OFF position.

#### ■ Operating conditions of rear windshield wiper and washer

The engine switch is in “IG-ON” mode and the trunk lid is closed.

#### ■ R gear auto wiping

With the front windshield wiper running, if R gear is engaged, the rear windshield wiper will automatically start.

#### ■ When the sprayer nozzle fails in spraying washer fluid

Check if there is wash fluid in the windshield washer fluid tank. Check and confirm if the washer nozzle is not blocked.

#### CAUTIONS

##### ■ Windscreen cleaning solution with ethanol content over 10% is prohibited

In high temperature environment, windshield cleaning liquid with ethanol content over 10% will corrode the rear decorative lamp, resulting in cracking of the rear decorative lamp.

#### Caution

##### ■ When the rear windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as the wiper blades may be damaged.

##### ■ When the nozzle cannot spray cleaning liquid

It may cause damage to the washer fluid pump if the lever is rotated to the cleaning position and held toward you.

##### ■ When a nozzle blocked

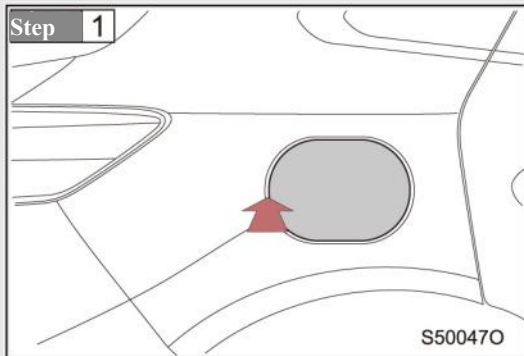
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

**Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank lid.**

■ Before filling fuel

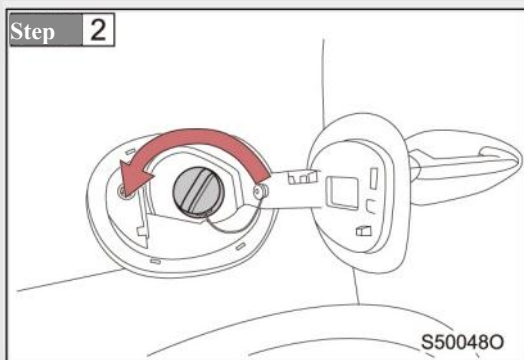
Depress the brake pedal, place the shift lever to the P position, apply parking brake, close the engine switch, and ensure that all doors and windows are closed.

■ Opening the filler cap

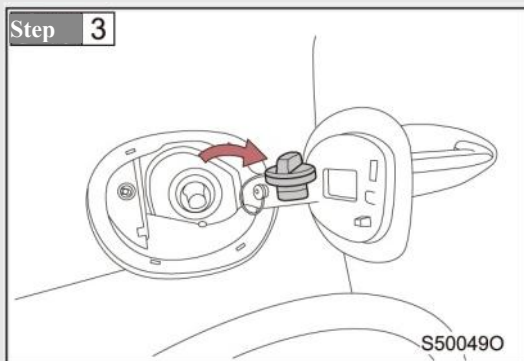


Press the filler cap and open it.

The filler cap can only be opened when the entire vehicle lock is unlocked.

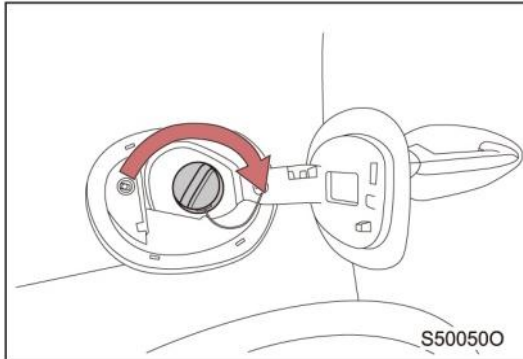


Turn counterclockwise to open the fuel tank lid.



Hang the fuel tank lid on the back of the filler cap.

### Closing the fuel tank lid



When reinstalling the fuel tank lid, it should be screwed until you hear a “click” sound.

---

#### ■ Fuel type

Use only RON 95 and above unleaded petrol.

#### ■ Fuel tank capacity

About 64 L

#### ■ When failing to open the filler cap

In the event of failure to open the filler cap due to low battery power or other reasons, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.

**CAUTIONS****■ Filling fuel**

Observe the following precautions while refuelling the vehicle:

- Static electricity that may be carried on the body needs to be removed before opening the filler cap and the fuel tank cover. When the body is charged, the fuel may catch fire due to discharge sparks, thus causing burns.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- When opening the fuel tank lid, hold tight the lid and turn it slowly to remove it. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck. When unscrewing the fuel tank cover, please do not continue to open the fuel tank cover if it makes a "poof" sound. Wait until the sound vanishes before removing the cap.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel because the fuel contains harmful substances.
- Do not smoke or use cell phone while refuelling the vehicle, or else it may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not touch other people or objects with static electricity, otherwise it may cause static electricity to accumulate and ignite the fuel.
- Observe all the precautions announced in the gas station.

**■ Precautions when replacing the fuel tank lid**

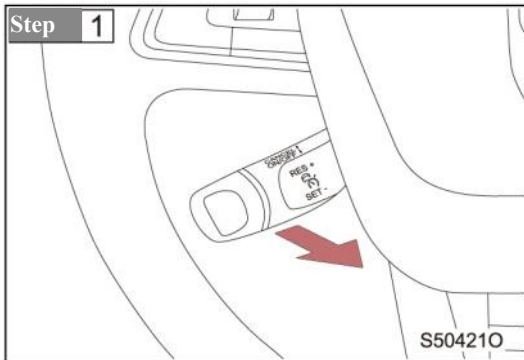
Do not use products other than the original fuel tank lid provided by FAW, otherwise it may lead to poor sealing and further resulting in accidents.

**Caution****■ Refuel.**

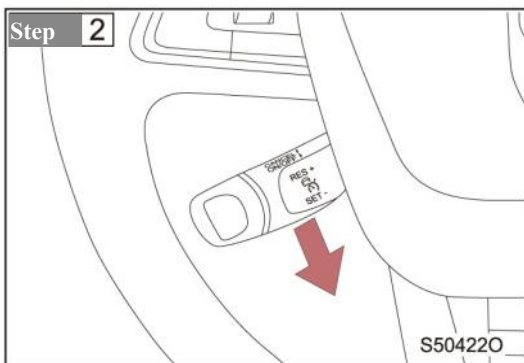
When filling, do not spill the fuel, otherwise it may damage the vehicle, for example, causing the exhaust system failure or damaging the fuel system components or body paint.

**By cruise control, the vehicle can be maintained at the set speed without using the accelerator pedal, and the set speed is recommended not to exceed 130km/h.**

### Setting the constant speed cruise

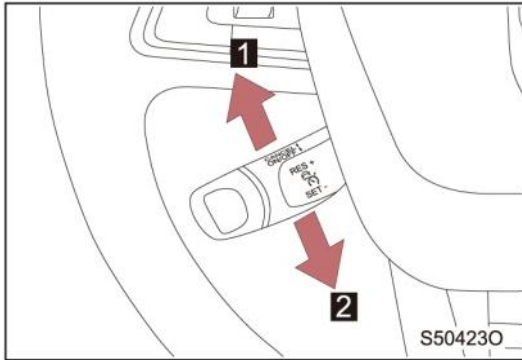


Pull the cruise control handle backward to the "ON/OFF" position and then release the handle to activate the cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate to the required speed, toggle the cruise control handle down to the "SET-" position and then release the handle. The current speed can be set to the cruise speed.

### ■ Adjusting the vehicle speed



#### 1 Increasing the speed

Short pushing: Pushing the lever once increases the speed by 5 km/h;

Long pushing: Rapidly increasing the vehicle speed. If the lever is released, the speed shown on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is the target speed.

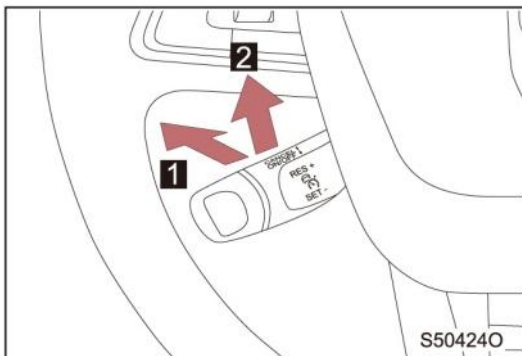
#### 2 Reduce the speed

Toggle and release: toggle once to reduce the vehicle speed by 5km/h;

Toggle and hold: reduce the vehicle speed quickly. when the handle is released, the vehicle speed displayed on the multi-functional display screen of the instrument cluster is the target vehicle speed.

Note: If the currently set vehicle speed does not meet the multiple of 5 in the case of short pushing, the speed will automatically become a multiple of 5 first when adjusting.

### Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



#### 1 Cancel

Push the cruise control handle forward to the "CANCEL" position.

The cruise control could also be canceled when

- The brake pedal is depressed.
- When the gear level is shift to the N position.

#### 2 Restore

To resume the cruise control and return to the set speed, push the cruise control handle up to the "RES+" position and release.

■ **Conditions for cruise control**

- The shift lever is in D.
- Vehicle speed is above 30 km/h.

■ **Conditions to pause cruise**

- When the vehicle needs to overtake, depress the accelerator pedal deeply for less than 1min (minutes), to suspend cruise control, and the cruise control is resumed after releasing the accelerator pedal.

■ **If the cruise control indicator lamp flashes**

Deactivate the constant speed cruise function, and then reactivate it again. If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor for check.



**CAUTIONS**

■ **To ensure driving safety when setting the cruise speed, it is recommended not to exceed 130km/h. It is very dangerous to use the cruise function when driving at high speed, and the driver is recommended to drive actively.**

■ **To avoid activating the cruise control by mistake**

If this function is deactivated, ACC is canceled.

■ **When adjusting the speed**

When adjusting the vehicle speed by pressing the cruise control handle and hold, you should drive carefully.

■ **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills; if the constant speed cruise is used at a steep slope, the speed is likely to exceed the target speed of the cruise.

■ **The driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, who is superior to the constant speed cruise control system. When the driver depresses the accelerator and brake pedals while in constant speed cruise state, the driver will control the vehicle.**

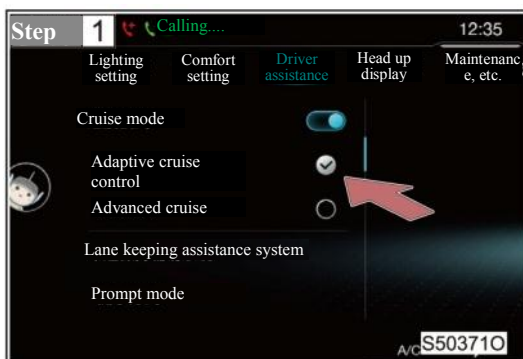
■ **The constant speed cruise control system is only a driving assist system. Do not depend on it more than necessary. Drive with caution if necessary.**



ACC adaptive cruise function can comprehensively control the speed and the distance from the target vehicle within the speed range of 0~130km/h, thus reducing the burden on the driver and increasing the driving comfort. In addition, depending on whether there is a vehicle running ahead, the system can also automatically switch between constant speed cruise and follow-up cruise. Because the actual driving environment is complex, in some cases, the driver can also interfere with the operation of the vehicle at any time as required, actively control the distance between the vehicle and the target vehicle, and ACC will prompt the driver through sound and light alarm when necessary.

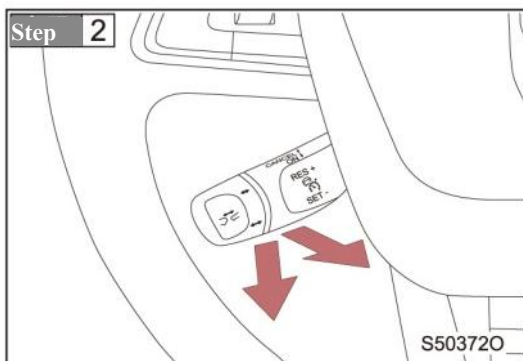
When ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) detects that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance becomes shorter than the set value, the vehicle automatically decelerates; when the vehicles ahead accelerate or drive away, the vehicle accelerates to the set cruise speed.

### Setting the adaptive cruise control



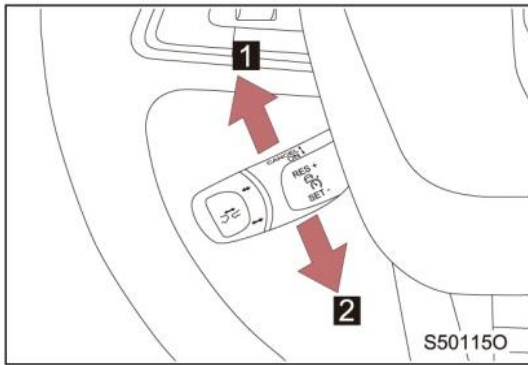
Enable the adaptive cruise control in the vehicle settings of the audio system.

The system can set the cruise mode only when the vehicle speed is 0km/h and the gear level is in the P position.



With ACC white indicator lamp on, accelerate or decelerate to the required vehicle speed, pull down the cruise control lever to SET position or pull back the cruise control lever to ON and then release the lever. The ACC green indicating lamp is on and the current vehicle speed can be set to the cruise speed.

■ Adjusting the vehicle speed



**1** Increasing the speed

Short pushing: Pushing the lever once increases the speed by 5 km/h;

Long pushing: After the system confirms the long pushing is valid, the speed continues to increase by 1 km/h.

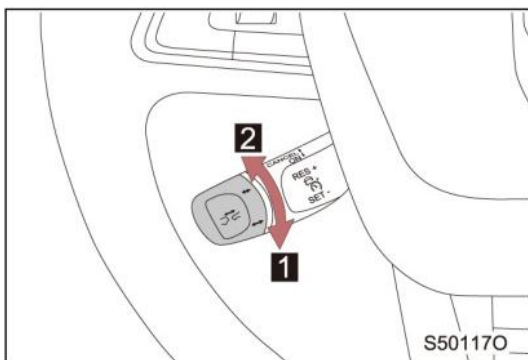
**2** Reduce the speed

Toggle and release: toggle once to reduce the vehicle speed by 5km/h;

Toggle and hold: after the system confirms that this operation is valid, it will continuously decrease by 1km/h.

Note: If the currently set vehicle speed does not meet the multiple of 5 in the case of short pushing, the speed will automatically become a multiple of 5 first when adjusting.

■ Setting the headway



**1** Increasing the headway

**2** Decreasing the headway

The system offers 4 distance modes. The mode changes each time the lever is pulled.



**1** Set cruise speed

**2** ACC indicator lamp

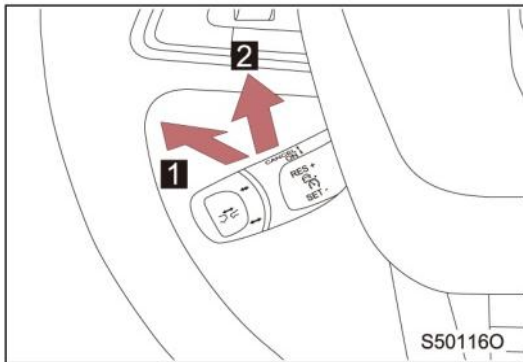
White: The system is on and the set conditions are met, and cruise settings can be made.

Green: system working, in cruise state.

**3** Set following distance

The default follow-up distance is "Spacing 4".

## Canceling and resuming ACC



### 1 Cancel

Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control handle forward to the "CANCEL" position and then release to cancel the cruise control.

### 2 Restore

To resume the cruise control and return to the set speed, push the cruise control handle up to the "RES+" position and release.

### ■ Noise of ACC automatic deceleration

It is normal that noise will be generated when the ACC is applying automatic deceleration.

### ■ Headway

The default headway is "Distance 4".

### ■ Set conditions for cruise control

- ESC function is activated.
- All doors and the hood are closed.
- Driver wears the belt.
- The shift lever is in D.
- The brake pedal is not depressed by the driver.
- The camera of the advanced driver assistance system is not blocked and has no fault.
- The driving mode is not in snow mode or off-road mode.

### ■ Conditions for canceling cruise control

- The driver sets the ACC lever to CANCEL position to cancel the control.
- The driver depress down the pedal or press and hold the EPB button.
- Any door or engine compartment cover is opened.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt.
- The driver depresses the accelerator pedal for more than 1 min (minutes).
- The shift lever is switched to the position except D.
- ABS/TCS/ESC is activated.
- AEB/HDC/APA is activated.
- When the driving mode is switched among snow mode, off-road mode, and sand mode.
- System related function fault.

### ■ ACC system fault

Have the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer check the vehicle if a fault has occurred.

■ **After turning off the IGNITION switch**

When turning off the IGNITION switch, the set cruise speed or headway will be deleted.

■ **Adjusting or calibrating ACC system**

Adjust or calibrate the ACC in the following situations. Otherwise ACC may not function properly:

- Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- Remove and install the camera unit of the advanced driver assistance system.
- After adjusting wheel alignment.

Please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributors.



**CAUTIONS**

■ **To ensure driving safety when setting the cruise speed, it is recommended not to exceed 130km/h. It is very dangerous to use the cruise function when driving at high speed, and the driver is recommended to drive actively.**

■ **Prevent accidental activation of ACC adaptive cruise control**

If this function is deactivated, ACC is canceled.

■ **When ACC adaptive cruise control is not appropriate**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- When in more complex road conditions.
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep slope
- Static obstruction is in the front of the driving vehicle.
- Snow, rain, ice, fog and other weather.
- When the road lighting is insufficient at night.

■ **The driver is the main operator of the vehicle, and his control over the vehicle takes precedence over the ACC adaptive cruise control. When the driver depresses the accelerator and brake pedals in the adaptive cruise state, the driver will control the vehicle. The driver shall maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.**

■ **ACC is only a driving assistance system. When necessary, the driver should cancel the ACC function immediately and drive by himself. When using ACC, please observe relevant local laws and regulations and adapt to the traffic, roads and weather conditions at that time.**

■ **SACC may malfunction if the front windshield is modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment.**

■ **When leaving the driving seat for a long time, be sure to turn off ACC to avoid accidents caused by misoperation.**

■ **When the vehicle follows a target vehicle, ACC mainly controls the follow-up distance, and the actual vehicle speed may be lower than the set cruise speed.**

**CAUTIONS**

- If during ACC cruise control, when the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead (for example, due to sudden emergency braking of the vehicle ahead), the system will send an audible and visual alarm to the driver through the instrument cluster. At this time, the driver should pay attention to the distance between vehicles and take over the vehicle control.
- When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal to actively accelerate, the cruise speed icon displayed on the multi-function screen of the instrument cluster will flash. This is a normal phenomenon.
- ACC may lose the target vehicle or misidentify the target vehicle when the vehicle enters or leaves a curve, changes lanes or the vehicle ahead is stationary.
- ACC cannot detect other sides other than the rear of the vehicle, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects, and apply brakes for them, so you should drive carefully.
- Due to the SACC's limited braking capacity, there may be no time to decelerate to avoid collision with the preceding vehicle. This may happen when the preceding vehicle suddenly slows down, stops or enters your lane. In case of danger, press the brake pedal for braking actively.
- Focus all of your attention on driving and get ready to take actions and to apply the brakes.
- The driver should adjust the following distance according to the traffic flow ahead and the current weather conditions, such as rain and snow, and set up the ACC system reasonably. Whenever, you need to ensure that your vehicle can be decelerated to standstill within your field of vision.
- ACC can only identify motor vehicles (e.g. cars, trucks, etc.) with legal license plates and can run on the highway. If the vehicle ahead is irregular in shape, have been modified and covered by spraying, the identification effect cannot be guaranteed, and the identification of pedestrians and narrow vehicles (e.g. bicycles, motorcycles, etc.) cannot be guaranteed. At this time, the driver should take over the vehicle according to the actual situation.
- ACC system may not be able to accurately identify large trailers. At this time, the driver should take over the vehicle according to the actual situation.
- ACC system cannot judge accurately the width of the front lane. Therefore, when the front lane in the driving direction of the vehicle is too narrow and the driver feels unable to pass through it normally, the ACC system should be deactivated immediately by braking and the vehicle should be controlled by the driver.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control on steep slopes. ACC may not detect the preceding vehicle in the same lane on a long steep slope. You usually need to control the acceleration and braking of your vehicle by yourself on a long steep slope. If the brakes are applied, ACC is canceled.
- The preceding vehicle icon on the combination instrument will be displayed if the vehicle travelling in the same direction on the same lane is detected. If the icon display does not match the actually observed situation, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle and driving it based on the actual situation.
- If the foot is placed on the accelerator pedal, the adaptive cruise control may not apply the brake automatically, thus causing a collision with the vehicle ahead, and the driver should pay attention.

**CAUTIONS**

- If a vehicle in the adjacent lanes enters the front of the direction in which your vehicle moving but it is not covered by the monitoring area, the system may not detect it, resulting in sluggish response of SACC. Pay close attention to the vehicle movement in the adjacent lanes. Control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- If the front car brakes suddenly (emergency stop), there will be a risk that ACC will not respond or react too slowly, resulting in too late braking.
- In this case, you may not receive a request of controlling your vehicle. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- If the target vehicle of SACC stops, it means the target vehicle may be screens or there is pedestrian passing. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.

**Caution**

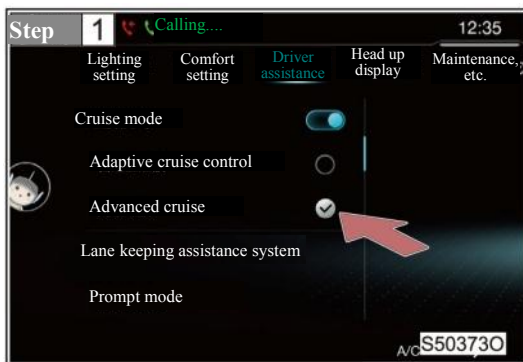
- ACC will keep the set distance with the vehicle ahead to follow the target. If the target vehicle slows down and stops, ACC will control the vehicle to stop automatically.
- The vehicle will automatically start under the control of ACC if the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane within 3s after stopping.
- When the target vehicle stops for more than 3s (seconds) but less than 3min (minutes) and starts or leaves the lane again, the multi-function screen of the vehicle's instrument cluster will prompt the information of resuming the cruise control. The driver can resume the SACC function by depressing the accelerator pedal lightly or turning the cruise control handle to "RES+" to realize automatic starting. At that time, the driver should pay attention to whether it is safe to start the vehicle.
- ACC will be automatically released when the vehicle stops for more than 3 minutes.
- ACC cannot keep the vehicle in a braking state for a long time. Do not leave your vehicle while the ACC keeps the vehicle stopped. Be sure to shift the selector lever in the P position before leaving your vehicle.
- **Observe the following precautions when cornering with the ACC activated:**
  - In a sharp corner, the ACC may be canceled or limit the vehicle speed.
  - On curves, advanced cruise control may react to vehicles in another lane, or may not have time to react to vehicles in the same lane, may collide with the vehicle ahead, or lose control of the vehicle. Especially when driving in a ramp, the vehicle may be accelerated since the system loses its target due to an excessive curve. Pay special attention to the curve and be prepared to apply the brake if necessary. When driving on a curve, select the appropriate speed.
- When your vehicle follows the preceding vehicle to pass through the intersection with traffic lamps, observe the change of the traffic lamps and intervene actively if necessary to avoid violating the traffic rules.
- When the vehicle is in a heavy fog, rain, snow and other weather conditions, or frost and smudgy marks exist in the window area of the camera of the advanced driving assistance system, or when the vehicle is driving towards the direction of the sun (or strong light source), the camera can report through the instrument cluster that the camera of the advanced driving assistance system is blocked, please clean the windshield. ACC cannot work at this time.

#### 4-5. Use other driving system Super Adaptive Cruise Control (SACC) function\*

**SACC advanced cruise control is based on ACC adaptive cruise function. It can not only provide cruise and follow-up functions, but also identify lane lines through cameras of the advanced driving assistance system. It can control vehicles to drive along the center line of the lane and improve driving comfort and safety.**

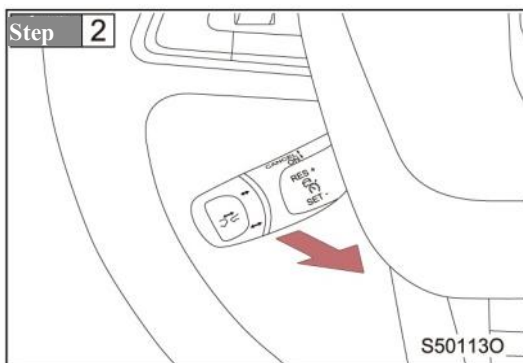
When SACC (Super Adaptive Cruise Control) detects that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance becomes shorter than the set value, the vehicle automatically decelerates; when the vehicles ahead accelerate or drive away, the vehicle accelerates to the set cruise speed.

### Setting the advanced cruise



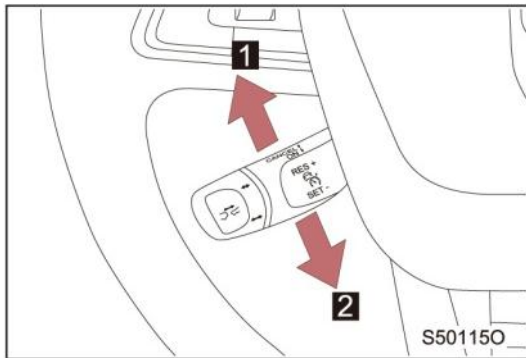
Turn on advanced cruise control in the vehicle settings of the audio system.

The system can set the cruise mode only when the vehicle speed is 0km/h and the gear level is in the P position.



When the white indicator for advanced cruise control on the instrument cluster is ON, accelerate or decelerate to the required vehicle speed, pull the cruise control handle backward twice consecutively to set to "ON" position and then release the handle, the advanced cruise green indicator light turns on, and the current vehicle speed can be set as the cruise control speed.

■ Adjusting the vehicle speed



**1** Increasing the speed

Short pushing: Pushing the lever once increases the speed by 5 km/h;

Long pushing: After the system confirms the long pushing is valid, the speed continues to increase by 1 km/h.

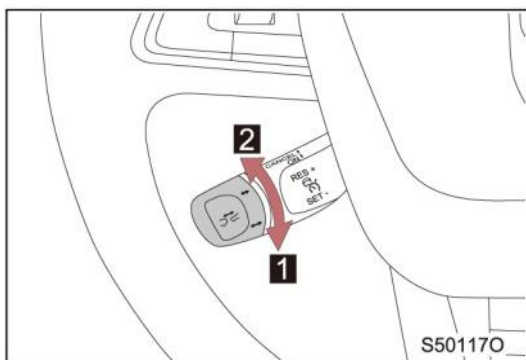
**2** Reduce the speed

Toggle and release: toggle once to reduce the vehicle speed by 5km/h;

Toggle and hold: after the system confirms that this operation is valid, it will continuously decrease by 1km/h.

Note: If the currently set vehicle speed does not meet the multiple of 5 in the case of short pushing, the speed will automatically become a multiple of 5 first when adjusting.

■ Setting the headway



**1** Increasing the headway

**2** Decreasing the headway

The system offers 4 distance modes. The mode changes each time the lever is pulled.



**1** Set cruise speed

**2** SACC indicator lamp

(Off) (Off): system standby, setting conditions not met.

(Off) (White): system active, ACC can be set.

(White) (White): The system is turned on for the advanced cruise settings.

(Off) (Green): system working, ACC active.

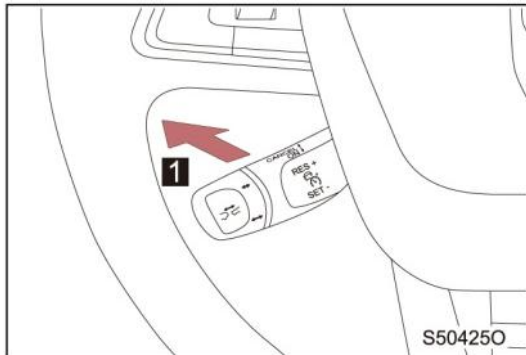
(Green) (Green): system working, in cruise state.

**3** Set following distance

The default follow-up distance is "Spacing 4".



## Canceling the super cruise control



### 1 Cancel

Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control handle forward to the "CANCEL" position and then release to cancel the cruise control.

### ■ SACC and ACC switch setting

- When the ACC is working and the SACC setting conditions are met, pull the cruise control handle back to the "ON / OFF" position twice consecutively to switch to the SACC mode.
- When SACC is operating, the driver operates the steering wheel or turn signal switch to automatically switch to ACC mode.
- When SACC is working, the camera cannot recognize the lane in front and automatically switches to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, and there is a sudden sharp curve, it will automatically switch to ACC mode

- When SACC is working, when the camera detects that the lane line is too wide or too narrow, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

### ■ Noise of SACC automatic deceleration

It is normal that noise will be generated when the SACC is applying automatic deceleration.

### ■ Headway

By default, the follow-up distance is "Spacing 4".

### ■ Advanced cruise control can be set when

- In the audio system, set the cruise mode to SACC.
- Close all the doors and the engine compartment cover.
- Driver wears the belt.
- The shift lever is in D.
- The brake pedal is not depressed by the driver.
- The camera of the advanced driver assistance system is not blocked and has no fault.
- The lane line is clear and meets national standards.
- SACC/ESC/AEB/TCS/ABS/EPS/EMS functions are normal.
- HDC/APA is not activated.
- The driving mode is not in snow mode or off-road mode.

### ■ SACC conditions paused

- When the vehicle needs to overtake, depress the accelerator pedal deeply for less than 1min (minutes), and the advanced cruise control is resumed after releasing the accelerator pedal.

■ **Conditions for canceling the super adaptive cruise control**

- The driver operates the cruise control handle to the "CANCEL" position.
- The driver depress down the pedal or press and hold the EPB button.
- Any door or engine compartment cover is opened.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt.
- The system determines the hands leave the steering wheel for a while.
- The driver depresses the accelerator pedal for more than 1 min (minutes).
- The shift lever is switched to the position except D.
- ABS/TCS/ESC is activated.
- AEB.HDC.APA function is activated.
- When the driving mode is switched among snow mode, off-road mode, and sand mode.
- System related function fault.

■ **SACC system fault**

Have the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer check the vehicle if a fault has occurred.

■ **After turning off the IGNITION switch**

When turning off the IGNITION switch, the set cruise speed or headway will be deleted.

■ **Adjusting or calibrating SACC system**

Please adjust or calibrate SACC under the following circumstances, otherwise SACC may not work properly:

- Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- Remove and install the camera unit of the advanced driver assistance system.
- After adjusting wheel alignment.

Please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributors.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **To avoid activating the SACC super adaptive cruise control by mistake**

If this function is deactivated, ACC is canceled.

■ **Situations unsuitable for SACC**

Do not use SACC in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- When in more complex road conditions.
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep slope
- When there are static obstacles in front of the vehicle,
- Snow, rain, ice, fog and other weather.
- When the road lighting is insufficient at night.
- When the lane line is unclear -

■ **The driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, who is superior to the SACC system. When the driver depresses the accelerator and brake pedals or operate the steering wheel in the advanced cruise state, the driver will control the vehicle. The driver shall maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.**

■ **When running on the repaired asphalt pavement or highly light reflective road, the vehicle may deflect from the running lane. The driver must take care and actively interfere if necessary.**

■ **When SACC is operated, the driver should hold the steering wheel with both hands to ensure the driving safety.**

■ **SACC is only a driving assist system. If necessary, the driver shall immediately cancel SACC and drive independently. Observe local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions when using SACC.**

■ **SACC may malfunction if the front windshield is modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment.**

■ **Make sure to turn SACC OFF if leaving the driver seat for an extended period of time to avoid an accident.**

■ **When following the target vehicle, SACC mainly controls the headway. The actual speed may be lower than the set cruise speed.**

■ **If SACC is activated, when your vehicle is too close to the preceding vehicle (for example, due to emergency braking of the preceding vehicle), the system will send a sound and lamp alarm message to you through the combination instrument. As a result, you should pay attention to the inter-vehicle distance and control your vehicle.**



## CAUTIONS

- When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal to actively accelerate, the cruise speed icon displayed on the multi-function screen of the instrument cluster will flash. This is a normal phenomenon.
- SACC may lose the target vehicle or misidentify the target vehicle when the vehicle enters or leaves a curve, changes lanes or the vehicle ahead is stationary.
- Exercise greater caution to drive since the SACC cannot detect other sides, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects but rear of the vehicle or apply the brakes.
- Due to the SACC's limited braking capacity, there may be no time to decelerate to avoid collision with the preceding vehicle. This may happen when the preceding vehicle suddenly slows down, stops or enters your lane. In case of danger, press the brake pedal for braking actively.
- Focus all of your attention on driving and get ready to take actions and to apply the brakes.
- You need to adjust the safe interval and set the SACC system reasonably according to the front traffic volume and the current weather conditions (e.g., rain and snow). Whenever, you need to ensure that your vehicle can be decelerated to standstill within your field of vision.
- SACC can only identify the motor vehicles (such as cars and trucks) that are installed with legal license plates and allowed to travel on highways. If the preceding vehicle is irregular in shape, modified and/ or covered by painting, it may not be identified by the ACC, and the pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) may not be identified, either. In this case, you should get ready to control your vehicle according to the actual situation.
- SACC system may not be able to accurately identify large trailers. At this time, the driver should take over the vehicle according to the actual situation.
- SACC system cannot judge accurately the width of the front lane. Therefore, when the front lane in the driving direction of the vehicle is too narrow and the driver feels unable to pass through it normally, the SACC system should be deactivated immediately by braking and the vehicle should be controlled by the driver.
- Do not activate SACC on a long steep slope. SACC may not detect the preceding vehicle in the same lane on a long steep slope. You usually need to control the acceleration and braking of your vehicle by yourself on a long steep slope. If the brakes are applied, SACC is canceled.
- The front vehicle symbol located on the instrument cluster will be displayed when vehicles traveling in the same direction on the same lane are detected. If the symbol display is inconsistent with the actual situation observed by the driver, the driver is responsible for taking over the control and driving the vehicle according to the actual situation.
- If you rest your foot on the accelerator pedal, SACC may not automatically apply the brakes, resulting in a collision with the preceding vehicle. In this case, exercise extreme caution.

 **CAUTIONS**

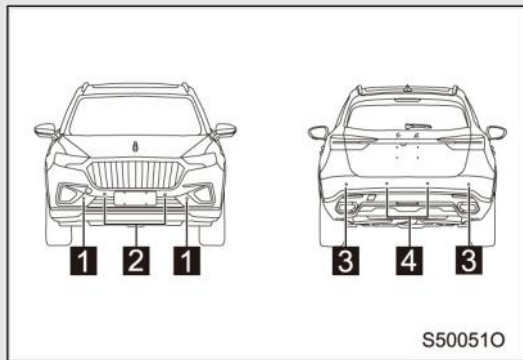
- If a vehicle get in front from adjacent lanes but not in the sensor monitoring area, the system may not be able to detect the vehicle, resulting in lagging of SACC response. Pay close attention to the vehicle movement in the adjacent lanes. Control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- If the front car brakes suddenly (emergency stop), there will be a risk that SACC will not respond or react too slowly, resulting in too late braking. In this case, you may not receive a request of controlling your vehicle. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- If the target vehicle of SACC stops, it means the target vehicle may be screens or there is pedestrian passing. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.

 **Caution**

- SACC will keep the set distance with the vehicle ahead to follow the target. If the target vehicle slows down and stops, SACC will control the vehicle to stop automatically.
- When the target vehicle stops for less than 3s (seconds) and restarts or leaves the lane, the vehicle will start automatically under the control of SACC.
- When the target vehicle stops for more than 3s (seconds) but less than 3min (minutes) and starts or leaves the lane again, the multi-function screen of the vehicle's instrument cluster will prompt the information of resuming the cruise control. The driver can resume the SACC function by depressing the accelerator pedal lightly or turning the cruise control handle to "RES+" to realize automatic starting. At that time, the driver should pay attention to whether it is safe to start the vehicle.
- SACC will automatically be canceled if the vehicle stops for over 3 min.
- SACC cannot keep the vehicle in a braking state for a long time. Do not leave your vehicle while the ACC keeps the vehicle stopped. Be sure to shift the selector lever in the P position before leaving your vehicle.
- The following items should be paid attention to when using SACC advanced cruise control for turning:
  - In a sharp corner, the SACC may be canceled or limit the vehicle speed.
  - On curves, advanced cruise control may react to vehicles in another lane, or may not have time to react to vehicles in the same lane, may collide with the vehicle ahead, or lose control of the vehicle. Especially when driving in a ramp, the vehicle may be accelerated since the system loses its target due to an excessive curve. Pay special attention to the curve and be prepared to apply the brake if necessary. When driving on a curve, select the appropriate speed.
  - In the curve course, too small road radius may impact the judgment of SACC over the lane. When driving on a curve, please drive carefully.
- Drivers should pay attention to traffic light change when the vehicle follows a vehicle ahead through the intersection with traffic lights, and should take the initiative to intervene when necessary to avoid violating traffic rules.
- When driving in heavy fog, rain, snow or other weather conditions, or there is frost and/or dirty trace in the camera window area of the advanced driver assistance system, or when your vehicle is moving in the direction toward the sun (or strong light source), the “the camera of the advanced driver assistance system has been blocked, please clean the windshield” prompt may appear on the combination instrument due to limited visual field of the camera. As a result, the SACC cannot work.

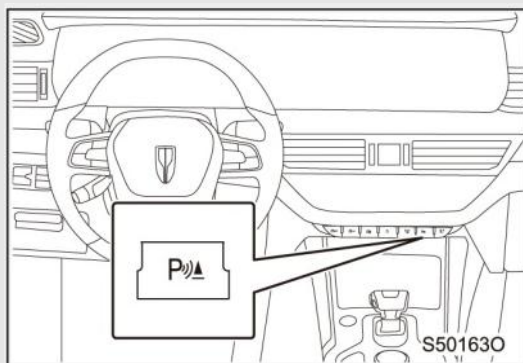
The front and rear parking radar system consists of a controller and an ultrasonic sensor. The ultrasonic sensor can measure the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle. According to the distance change of the obstacle entering the detection area, the speaker sounds at different frequencies, and the multimedia display screen will display the distance and orientation information of the obstacle. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

■ Sensor type



- 1** Front side radar sensor
- 2** Front middle radar sensor
- 3** Rear side radar sensor
- 4** Rear middle radar sensor

■ Enable/disable parking radar



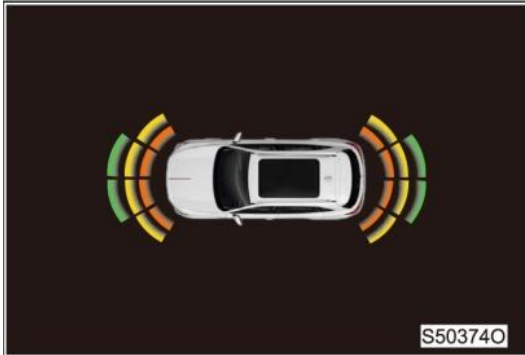
When the vehicle speed is lower than 10km/h, press the radar/image switch button, the indicator on the button turns up, and the parking radar turns on. Press the radar/image switch button again, the indicator on the button turns off, and the parking radar turns off.

■ Shift the gear lever to R. The parking radar system is turned on. For vehicles equipped with reversing image, press the parking/image image switch to turn off the parking radar system.

■ After the system is turned on, when the gear lever is in R position, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15km/h, the system stops working. For vehicles equipped with reversing image system, when the vehicle speed is lower than 10km/h, the parking radar system will work again: when the gear lever is in D position, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15km/h, the system will stop working and will not resume automatically.

## Display

### ■ When obstacles are detected



If the PDC sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the multimedia display screen according to the obstacle position and the distance from the obstacle.

The slow-driving zone, warning zone and danger zone are displayed in green, yellow and red, respectively.

### Obstacle distance alarm

If an obstacle is detected, the color bar corresponding to the sensor will continue to be lit.

#### ■ Information display on parking slow-driving zone for sensor



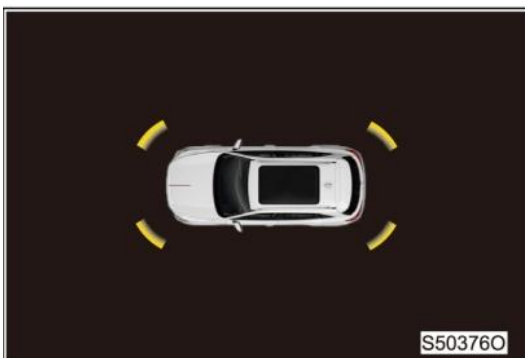
Front

Distance to obstacle: 90~120cm

Distance to obstacle: 90~150cm

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the green color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a warning to the driver.

#### ■ Information display on parking warning zone for side sensor



Distance to obstacle: 40~60cm

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the yellow color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a warning to the driver.

■ Information display on parking warning zone for center sensor



Distance to obstacle: 40~90cm

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the yellow color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a warning to the driver.

■ Radar sensor parking danger zone information display

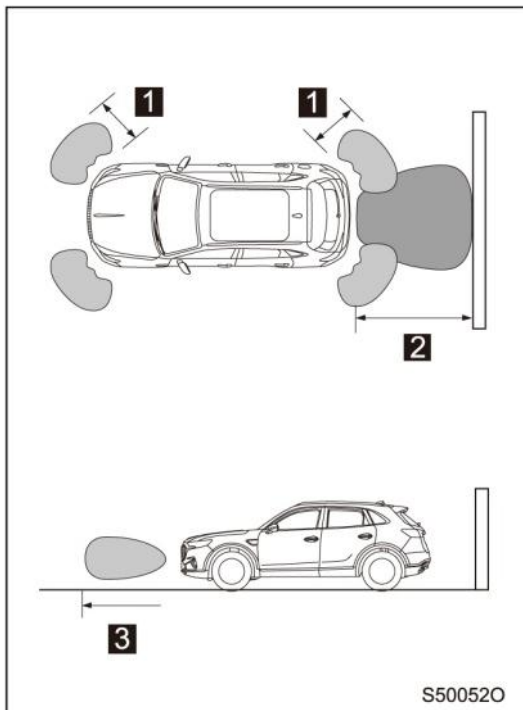


Distance to obstacle: 1~40cm

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the red color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a warning to the driver.



### Longest distance detected by the sensor



**1** About 60cm

**2** About 150cm

**3** About 120cm

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. (Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.)

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the obstacle.

#### ■ Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. For example:
  - There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
  - A sensor is covered in any way.
  - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
  - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
  - Due to the horn of vehicle, the sound of the motorcycle engine, the air brake sound of large vehicle or other strong noise that generates ultrasonic waves, the vicinity of the vehicle is very noisy.
  - There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity, and the sensor of this vehicle is in working.
  - The vehicle is equipped with fender antenna pole or wireless antenna.
  - Towing eyelets are installed.
  - A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
  - The vehicle is approaching a tall or bended curb.
  - In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay special attention to the following obstacles.

- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves.
- Sharply-angled objects.
- Low obstacles.
- Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle.

■ **Speaker sound warning**

- One of the systems detects obstacles.

When two or more obstacles are detected at the same time, the speaker will respond according to the nearest obstacle. If the obstacle appears in front, the front speaker gives an alarm, otherwise, the rear speaker gives an alarm.

- Front and rear systems detect obstacles

If obstacles are detected by both the front and rear systems, the front and rear speakers will alarm at the same time.

- Speaker sound alert OFF

- If EPB is activated, the audible alert will be turned off, only the visual alert.

- When the radar system is in working state, and when the system detects that the relative distance to the obstacle no longer changes (the position of the obstacle is in the non-hazardous area), the system will turn off the sound warning after 10s (seconds) and only the image warning remains. If the distance to the obstacle detected by the system changes again, the audible alarm will start again.



**CAUTIONS**

■ **Warning of using front and rear parking radar**

Observe the following cautions to avoid accidents:

- Do not install anything within the working range of the sensor.
- The parking radar system is only a driving assistance system. Do not rely too much on its function. Please drive carefully. If necessary, intervene actively to avoid danger.
- When the vehicle speed is too high, the system will stop working. The driver should drive carefully.



**Caution**

■ **Please pay attention when washing the car.**

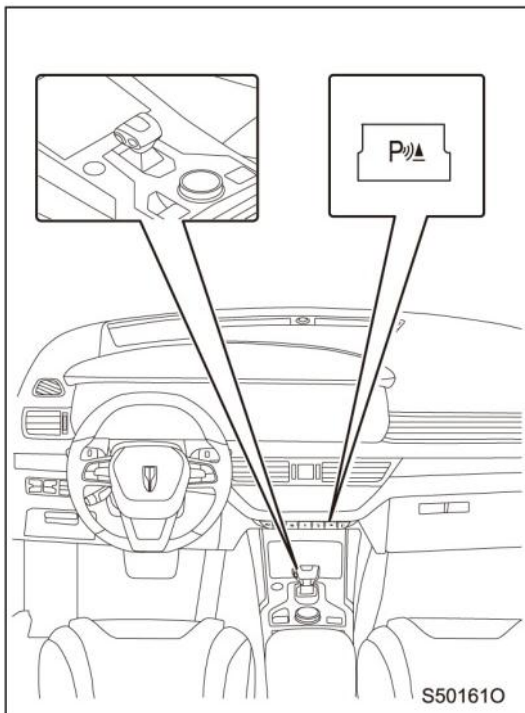
Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area. Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

**When reversing (for example, parking), the rear view camera system assists you by displaying the vehicle rear view image on the audio multimedia display.**

### Activating/deactivating the rear view camera system

#### ■ Activating

There are two ways to enter the reversing image system:



Method 1: Shift the gear lever in R position to activate the reversing image system.

Method 2: When the vehicle speed is less than 15km/h, press the radar/image switch button to activate the reversing image system.

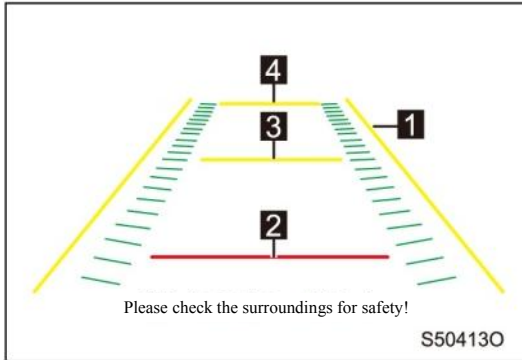
#### ■ Deactivating

When the reversing image is activated through the R gear position, shift the gear level to the D position, and the reversing image system is disabled when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

When the rear view camera system is activated by the radar/image button, the rear view camera system is withdrawn by pressing the radar/image button again.

### Reversing information display

Assist the driver to complete the parking with by screen display. Dynamically adjust the parking guide line according to various angles.



**1** Parking guide line

Indicating the predicted vehicle track line with the steering wheel operating.

**2** Distance guide line (red)

Indicating the distance line 50cm away from bumper back edge.

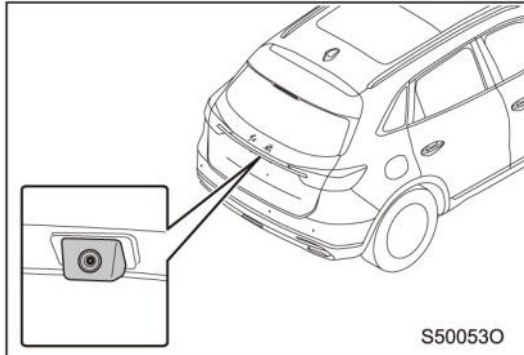
**3** Distance guide line (yellow)

Indicating the distance line 150cm away from bumper back edge.

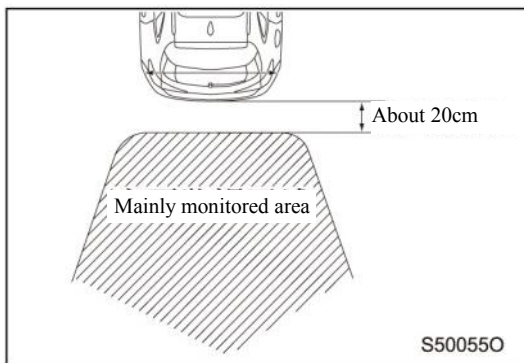
**4** Distance guide line (yellow)

Indicating the distance line 250cm away from bumper back edge.

## Reversing camera



The vehicle backup camera is located in the illustrated position.



The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects that are close to either corner (within 20 cm) of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen. The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.



If a bright lamp, such as sunlight reflects off the vehicle body, is picked up by the reversing camera, a smear effect characteristic <sup>\*1</sup> to the reversing camera may occur.

\*1: When the reversing camera is used to transmit images, the light source appears to have a vertical stripe extending up and down.

### Displaying the difference between the screen and the actual road

- Even if it seems that the distance between the auxiliary parking line and the left/right dividing line of the parking space is the same, it may not be the same in practice and must be checked visually.
- Even if it seems that the close warning line and the auxiliary parking line are parallel to the dividing line of the parking space, they may not be parallel in practice and must be checked visually.
- When only one line separates the parking spot, the dynamic extension guide line may not parallel with the parking space right (left) side even they seem parallel on the display screen.
- Close warning lines provide distance guidance on flat roads. Under any of the following circumstances, there will be a certain error between the guide line displayed on the screen and the actual distance/path on the road.
  - When the ground behind the vehicle suddenly rises, the displayed distance between the close-in warning line and the vehicle is nearer than the actual distance. Therefore, the displayed distance of the object is farther than the actual distance. Also, there may be some error between the guide line and the actual distance/path on the road.
  - When the ground behind the vehicle suddenly descends, the displayed distance between the close-in warning line and the vehicle is farther than the actual distance. Therefore, the displayed distance of the object is nearer than the actual distance. Also, there may be some error between the guide line and the actual distance/path on the road.
  - When any part of the vehicle sinks due to the number of occupants or load distribution, there will be a certain error between the guide line on the display screen and the actual distance/path on the road.
  - When approaching a three-dimensional object, the distance between the object (e.g. vehicle) and the plane (e.g. road surface) displayed on the display screen is different from the actual distance.
  - Parking guide lines are displayed according to the plane (e.g. road surface). The position of a three-dimensional object (e.g. vehicle) cannot be determined by using the parking guide lines.

As above, the vehicle seems not to hit the truck shown outside the parking guide line. However, the extension line of truck width is on the guide line. Therefore, the vehicle will hit the truck if reverses according to the parking guide line.

Be sure to check the area behind and around the vehicle with your own eyes when parking guide line running through objects or obstruction in the vicinity.

**CAUTIONS**

■ **The reversing camera system is only a driving assistance system, please do not rely too much on its function.**

Be sure to drive carefully and visually confirm the conditions behind and around the vehicle. It is very dangerous to reverse the car only by observing the display screen, which may lead to an accident or collision with an object. The reversing image is only a visual reversing aid system. The image on the display may differ from the actual situation.

■ **When using reversing image system**

- Please observe the following precautions to avoid serious personal injury and even death accidents.
- Do not rely solely on reversing images when reversing.
- **Be sure to check visually and through the rearview mirror to confirm that the selected path is clear.**
- The displayed distance between the object and the plane is different from the actual distance.
- Do not use this system when the trunk lid is not fully closed.

■ **The situation that affects the reversing image system**

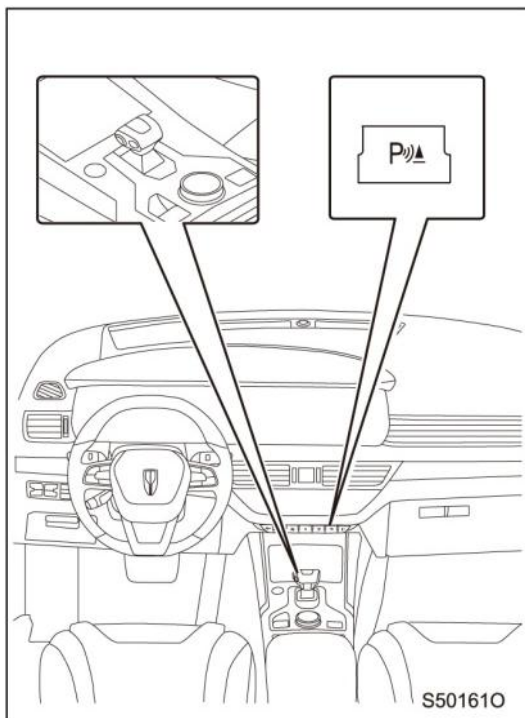
- If the back of the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor for check.
- If the temperature changes drastically, such as the vehicle is splashed with hot water in cold weather, the camera may not work properly.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and wipe it.
- When the temperature is low, the displayed image may darken and the moving image may be slightly distorted.
- Do not use the rear view camera system when:
  - On slippery road surfaces covered by ice or snow.
  - Using tire chain or emergency spare tire.
  - On uneven or unsmooth road, such as bends or steep hills.
- If you change the tire, then the guiding line displayed may be of a little deviation; When changing tires, please consult an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW
- The guide line position on the display screen may vary according to the vehicle conditions, such as passenger and luggage number. Be sure to visually inspect the rear and surroundings of the vehicle before operation.

Panoramic image system is displayed by audio multi-media display screen, which is convenient for drivers to clearly see and understand the surrounding conditions of vehicles. At the same time, the relative orientation and distance of obstacles are judged to achieve safe and easy parking.

### Activating/deactivating the panoramic image system

#### ■ Activating

There are two ways to enter the panoramic image system:




Method 1: Setting the selector lever in R activates the panoramic image system.

Method 2: When the vehicle speed is less than 15km/h, press the radar/image switch button to activate the panoramic image system.

#### ■ Deactivating

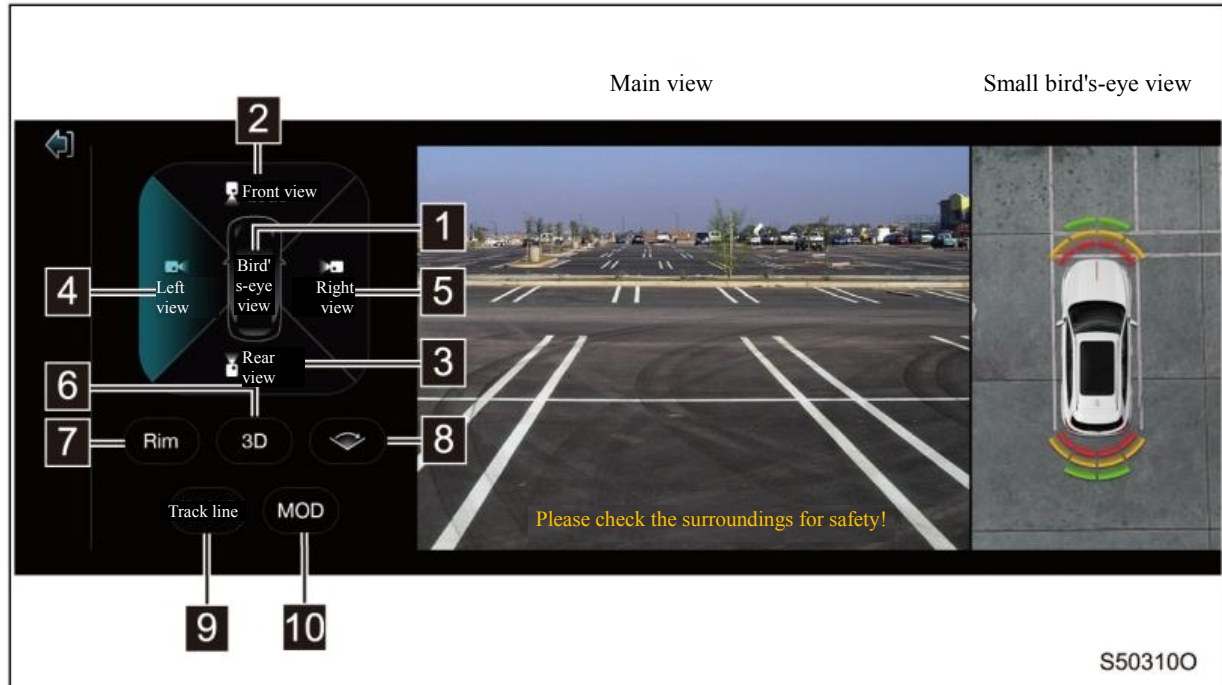
When the reversing image is activated through the R gear position, shift the gear level to the D position, and the panoramic image system is disabled when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

When the panoramic image is activated by the radar/image button, the panoramic image system is withdrawn by pressing the radar/image button again or pressing the screen button .



### Panoramic image system screen mode

Panoramic image system has a variety of screen modes, the driver can choose the appropriate mode according to need.



#### 1 Large bird's-eye view

① Large bird's-eye view Switch the main and small bird's-eye views to large bird's-eye views.

#### 2 Front view

Display the front view and the small bird's-eye view.

#### 3 Rear view

Display the rear view and the small bird's-eye view.

#### 4 Left view

Display the left view and the small bird's-eye view.

#### 5 Right view

Display the right view and the small bird's-eye view.

#### 6 3Dview

The 360 degree stereo image around the vehicle can be displayed, and the dragging angle can be displayed.

#### 7 Rim

It can be selected in front and rear view modes. Left view, right view and small bird's-eye view are displayed after selection.

#### 8 Wide view

It can be selected in front and rear view modes. After selection, switch the main view and small bird's eye view to wide-angle view, and you can see a picture of nearly 180 degrees.

**9** Track line

⑨ Track line When selected, the parking aid line will be displayed.

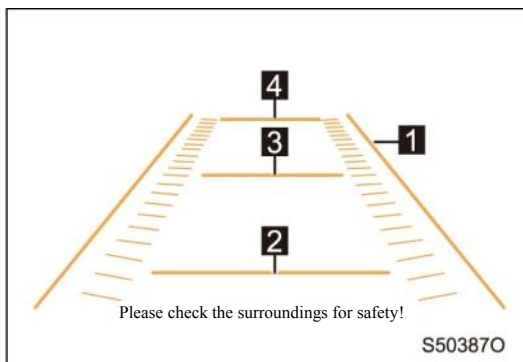
**10** MOD (Moving Object Detection)

It can be selected in front and rear view modes. After enabled, it can detect dynamic objects within the range of 3m (meters) in front and rear of the vehicle and 3m (meters) in left and right. In wide view mode, it can detect dynamic objects of 3m (meters) in front and rear of the vehicle and 6m (meters) in left and right.

When the turn lamp signal is enabled, the picture mode will automatically switch to the corresponding left/right view and small aerial view; when the turn lamp signal is disabled, the previous picture mode will resume.

**Parking auxiliary line**

Assist the driver to complete the parking with by screen display. Dynamically adjust the parking guide line according to various angles.



**1** Parking guide line

Indicating the predicted vehicle track line with the steering wheel operating.

**2** Distance guide line

Indicating the distance line 50cm away from bumper back edge.

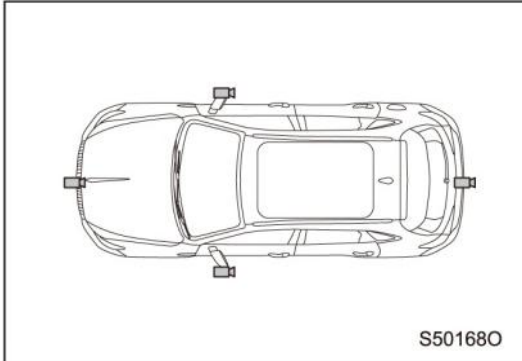
**3** Distance guide line

Indicating the distance line 150cm away from bumper back edge.

**4** Distance guide line

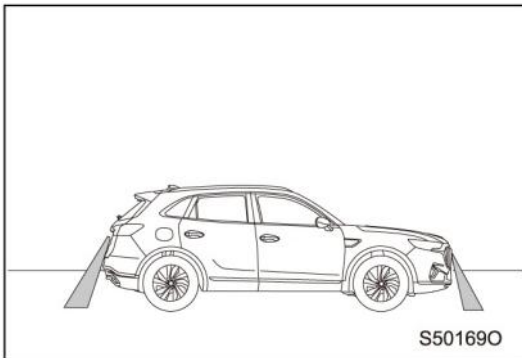
Indicating the distance line 300cm away from bumper back edge.

## Panoramic camera



Panoramic cameras are respectively installed at the front grille, trunk lid and left and right exterior rearview mirrors.

If the above components are opened or folded, the splicing of pictures may fail. When the above components are opened or folded, there will be corresponding indication on the display screen. When the camera cannot normally transmit images, the corresponding area will be prompted in black.



The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects near the corner of the bumper or below the bumper are not displayed on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.



If the camera receives strong light (e.g. sunlight reflected by the car body), it may produce smear effects unique to the camera<sup>\*1</sup>.

<sup>\*1</sup>: When the camera is used to transmit images, the light source appears to have a vertical stripe extending up and down.



## CAUTIONS

■ **Panoramic image system is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on it more than necessary.**

Be sure to drive carefully and visually confirm the conditions around the vehicle. It is very dangerous to back up by observing the display screen only. This may cause an accident or a collision with the object. The panoramic image system is only a visual parking assist system. The image on the display may differ from the actual situation.

### ■ When using panoramic image system

Please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious personal injury, even death.

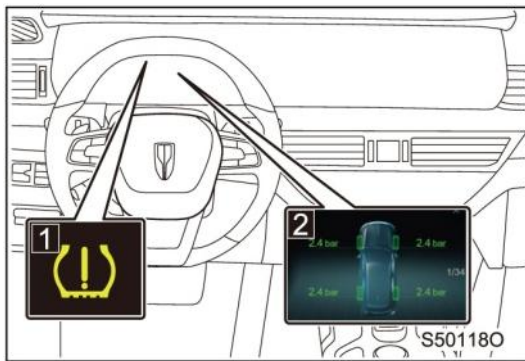
- Never depend solely on the panoramic image system when reversing.
- Be sure to check visually and through the rearview mirror to confirm that the selected path is clear.
- The displayed distance between the object and the plane is different from the actual distance.
- A bird's eye view of a panoramic image can only show nearby objects. The camera will not show objects outside the field of view.
- MOD detection function only detects low-speed moving objects, which has the possibility of missing detection. Keep vigilance while driving.
- Do not use the system when the camera is not operated properly.

### ■ Conditions which may affect the panoramic image system

- If the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor for check.
- If the temperature changes drastically, such as the vehicle is splashed with hot water in cold weather, the camera may not work properly.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and wipe it.
- The image displayed may get dark and the moving image may be slightly distorted if the system is of low temperature
- The camera image may not be clear in the case of rain, snow, fog or low illumination.
- Do not use the panoramic image system when:
  - On slippery road surfaces covered by ice or snow.
  - Using tire chain or emergency spare tire.
  - On uneven or unsmooth road, such as bends or steep hills.
- If you change the tire, then the guiding line displayed may be of a little deviation; When replacing the tire, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.
- The guide line position on the display screen may vary according to the vehicle conditions, such as passenger and luggage number. Before operating, please pay attention to rear of the car and surroundings.

4-5. Use other driving system  
 Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS)

The tire pressure monitoring system can monitor and check the tire pressure and give an alarm automatically when the pressure is lower than the limit value.



- 1** Abnormal tire pressure/system fault warning lamp
- 2** Tire pressure information

**System working conditions**

Vehicle status	Warning
When the tire pressure is abnormal	The system fault warning lamp sounds a warning prompt
When the tire pressure monitor system does not work	The system failure alarm lamp turns on, and a text message "tire pressure monitoring function is disabled" is displayed.

■ **Match the tire pressure sensor**

Tire pressure monitoring system needs to be configured after tire replacement or tire transposition. Please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Precautions for tire pressure monitoring system <TPMS>

- The system cannot prevent tire leakage and puncture. Its main function is to give an alarm after monitoring the tire pressure value below a certain set value.
- In winter, the tire pressure should be adjusted in time. Because the winter temperature drops, the tire pressure may drop or drop below the alarm value. If the tire pressure falls below the alarm value, it will cause an alarm.

### ■ When the tire pressure monitoring (TPMS) system is not working properly

The system can make judgment based on subtle changes of tires, and sometimes cannot work normally in the following conditions.

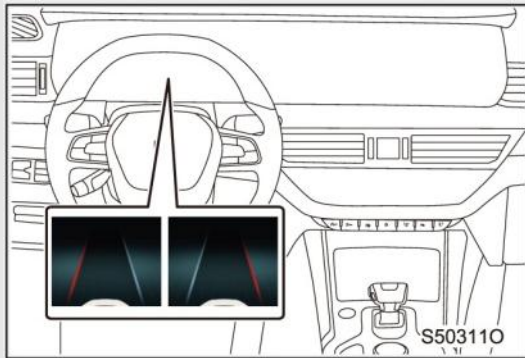
- Four tires are not the same size, the same manufacturer, the same brand and the same pattern, or when installing tires with significantly different degrees of wear (the same for winter tires).
- When using emergency tires, snow tires and installing anti-skid chains.
- Install a tire with a pressure significantly higher than the specified air pressure, or a sudden drop in air pressure due to a puncture (rupture).

### ■ When changing tires

- When replacing a tire or performing tire transposition, be sure to adjust the device, otherwise the device may not work properly.

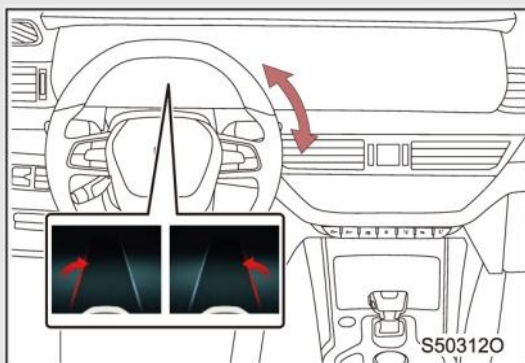
The lane keep assist system can detect the driver's status and the driving state of the vehicle when the vehicle speed is higher than 60km/h. When the system judges that the driver's non-subjective intention (chatting, distraction, operating the sound system, etc.) causes the vehicle to deviate from the lane, the system will send out an alarm or an alarm plus a correction prompt to prevent danger or violations.

■ LDW (Lane departure warning)



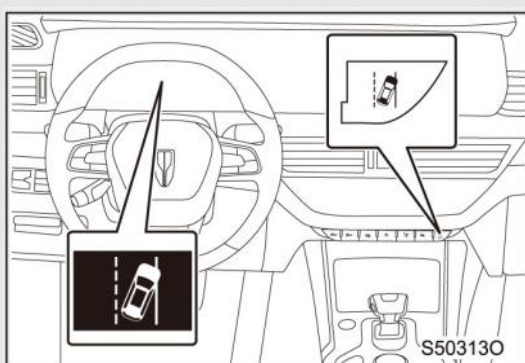
When the lane departure warning system detects that the vehicle is departing from the lane, the corresponding side line turns red and flashes and the speaker on the corresponding side sounds a warning.

■ LKA (Lane keeping assistance)



When the lane departure warning system detects that the vehicle is departing from the lane, the corresponding side line turns red and flashes and the speaker on the corresponding side sounds a warning.

■ System on/off



Press the LDW/LKA switch button, the system will be turned on, and the indicator (white) on the instrument cluster turns on at the same time. Press the LDW/ LKA switch button again, the system will shut down and the indicator light of the combination meter turns off.

When the system is turned on, the vehicle speed is higher than 60km/h and the system recognizes a valid lane line, the lane keep assist light (green) on the instrument cluster turns on.

#### ■ LDW/LKA Lane keeping assist system

The alarm mode of the lane keep assist system can be set in the vehicle setting of the sound system. The alarm mode can be selected as only alarm (LDW) or alarm+steering correction (LKA), and the lane departure sensitivity can also be set. (See P.225)

#### ■ Operating conditions for lane keeping assistance system:

- The vehicle speed is higher than 60km/h.
- The lane line is clear and meets national standards.
- The system camera is not blocked.

#### ■ The LDW is deactivated even if your vehicle is departing from the lane when one of the following conditions occurs:

- When the driver operates the steering wheel to turn.
- Your vehicle has been driving on the lane line.
- Within 3s (seconds) of the previous warning.
- During the effective period when the driver operates the turn signal switch, the lane departure warning on this side is inhibited; And within 3s (seconds) after the turn signal switch returns, the lane departure warning on this side is also suppressed.

#### ■ Under the following conditions, the system will not correct the lane automatically even if there is lane deviation:

- When the turn signal and steering wheel is operated.
- When the single or double lanes disappear.

#### ■ The LDW may not work properly if one of the following conditions occurs:

- When snow, ice or dust stains on the windshield block the camera.
- Low visibility weather such as fog, heavy rain or snow.
- The road is covered by vehicles or other obstacles.
- The road width is too narrow or the curvature of the curve is too large.
- When the system camera's line of sight is blocked.
- When facing the glare driving
- Complex lane conditions such as lane diversion, confluence or construction area.
- When there are bridge cables or shadows of trees on the road surface, which may cause misrecognitions.
- When the light is dark at night or the lane lines are blurred.
- The car speed is below about 60km/h .
- The lane does not comply with the requirements of national standard.
- The brightness of the external environment of the vehicle suddenly changes, such as entering the tunnel.

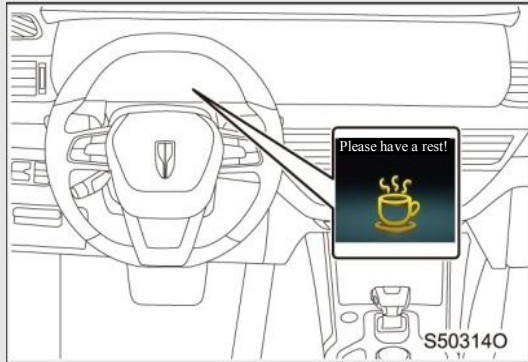
■ The system shall be calibrated when changing the advanced driver assistance system camera unit, front windshield or after four-wheel alignment. Otherwise, the system can not be used normally. Please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributors.



**CAUTIONS**

- **LDW/LKA is only a driving assistance system. Do not rely too much on it. Drivers must drive carefully.**
- **The system may malfunction due to road and environment factors. Stop using this system in that case.**
- **To avoid interfering with the system will not alarm when the activation conditions of the lane keep assist system are not met. An incorrectly calibrated lane keep assist system may misidentify other lanes and even cause accidents.**
- **The lane keep assist system can identify lane lines and kerbs with a certain contrast. For blur and defaced lane lines, it may be inaccurate or unrecognizable. For some vehicle marks, watermarks or shadows with large color difference and contrast on the road surface, it may be misidentified.**

The driver status monitoring system analyzes the vehicle motion in the lane, judges the driver status (for example, tired) and releases warning according to the driver's status to remind the driver of resting now.



After LDW/LKA lane keeping assist system is turned on, the driver status monitoring system will be automatically turned on.

After LDW/LKA lane keeping assist system is turned off, the driver status monitoring system will be automatically turned off.

If the system judges the current driving is abnormal, the cluster gauge multi-function display zone will show the early warning icon.

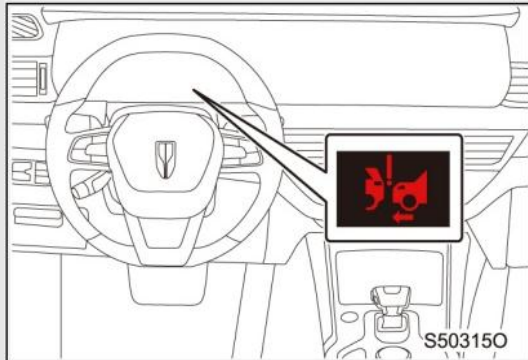
If the system judges the current driving is severely abnormal, it will show the early warning icon and release the warning tone.

■ The system shall be calibrated when changing the advanced driver assistance system camera unit, front windshield or after four-wheel alignment. Otherwise, the system can not be used normally. Please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributors.

#### CAUTIONS

- The driver status monitoring system is only a driving assistance system. It can only give an alarm for the abnormal driving status of the driver and cannot directly interfere with the vehicle. The driver must refer to the alarm, operate the steering wheel by himself to ensure the normal driving of the vehicle.
- Due to the road and environmental factors, the driver status monitoring system may not correctly judge the abnormal driving status. The driver must observe the highway code and take a rest in time according to the actual conditions to ensure the driving safety.
- The driver status monitoring system without correct calibration may identify other lanes by mistake, resulting in accidents.

The system automatically judges the collision risk level by the relative distance, relative speed and relative acceleration between the vehicle and the target vehicle. If the conditions are met, the system will give an alarm.

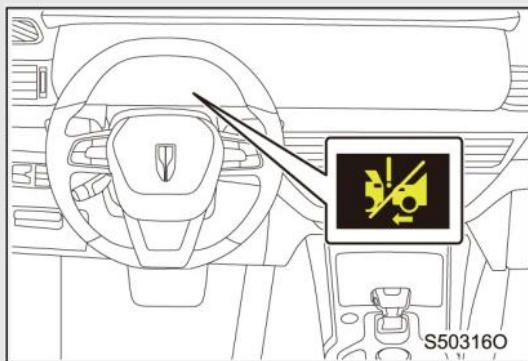


When the system determines there may be collision, the meter will display the warning message and release the warning tone through the speaker/meter.

For the vehicle target, if the collision risk upgrades, the system will release the brake warning tone like the hold-to-run braking effect.

■ FCW front collision warning on/off

It can be set to turn on and off the FCW system in the vehicle setting of the audio system. (see P.225)



If the system is turned off, the indicator lamp for the FCW OFF is lit on the combination instrument.

■ The system shall be calibrated when changing the advanced driver assistance system camera unit, front windshield or after four-wheel alignment. Otherwise, the system can not be used normally. Please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributors.

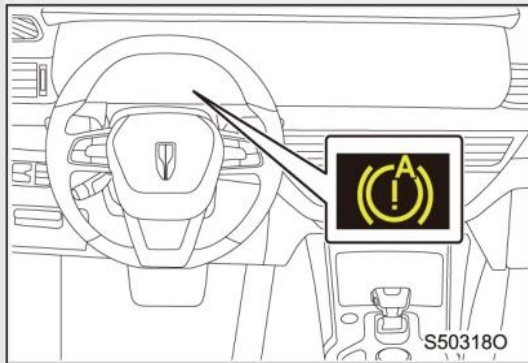
**CAUTIONS**

- For the sake of safety, the passengers must wear seat belts properly.
- FCW is only a driving assistance system. Do not rely too much on FCW. Drivers must drive carefully.
- FCW only makes warning for collision danger. Driver must operate the brake pedal or the steering wheel to avoid collision.
- FCW may not be able to identify the modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- The FCW system obtains vehicle information by identifying the rear of the vehicle, so the system will not give an alarm to vehicles coming in the reverse direction and vehicles crossing laterally in front.
- Under complex traffic conditions, the FCW system may not recognize vehicles in time, resulting in delays in warning.
- On curved roads, hillside roads or unusually bumpy roads, the system may not be able to detect the vehicle ahead, and drivers must drive carefully.
- The FCW is an alarm system, but it cannot detect the vehicles in all situations. For example: vehicles with a severely obstructed rear part, vehicles with strange shapes (such as overloaded vehicles transporting trees), vehicles with a severely damaged rear part, etc.
- FCW may not identify the narrow objects such as pedestrians or bicycles.
- When rain, snow, ice, fog or dust block the sensor, it may lead to system performance degradation or failure. The driver must drive carefully.
- Windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of FCW may be degraded or invalid.
- If the camera is displaced due to a collision, the FCW function may be degraded or failed. Have the FCW calibrated in time.
- Do not use the improperly-calibrated FCW.
- FCW system may not work normally for scenes such as strong backlight, road surface reflection and insufficient environmental lighting. Drivers should drive carefully.
- If the chassis of the vehicle ahead is very high or the goods protrude from the rear of the vehicle, please pay attention to possible dangerous situations. FCW may not be able to identify targets such as cyclists.

**Caution**

- **To avoid interfering with the driver by false alarm, the system will not alarm when:**
  - Front windscreen is damaged or replaced.
  - Vehicle speed is lower than 8km/h.
  - Within 20s after the last warning.
  - The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
  - The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.

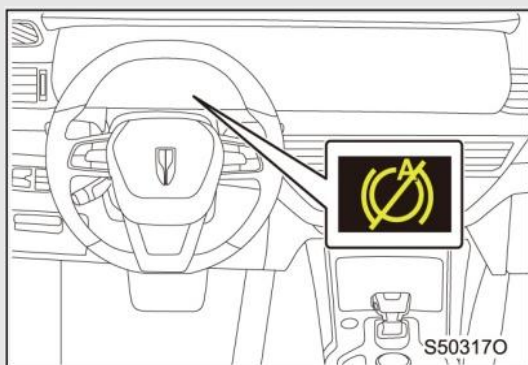
**AEB active emergency braking system works in the range of 8km/h to 80 km/h. When the vehicle encounters an emergency and there is a possibility of collision with the vehicle ahead, if the driver fails to perform emergency braking or emergency steering to avoid danger in time, the system will assist the driver to apply braking force to the vehicle to avoid or reduce the collision injury.**



If the AEB is activated, the alarm information appears on the combination instrument and a warning is sent by the speaker/instrument.

■ AEB ON/OFF

It can be set to turn on and off the AEB system in the vehicle setting of the audio system. (See P.225)



When the system is shut down, the indicator for active emergency braking system shutdown will be displayed on the instrument cluster.

The system is turned on by default.

■ The system shall be calibrated when changing the advanced driver assistance system camera unit, front windshield or after four-wheel alignment. Otherwise, the system can not be used normally. Please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributors.



## CAUTIONS

- For the sake of safety, the passengers must wear seat belts properly.
- AEB is only a driving assistance system. Do not rely too much on AEB. Drivers must drive carefully.
- AEB may not be able to identify the modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- On curved roads, hillside roads or unusually bumpy roads, the system may not be able to detect the vehicle ahead, and drivers must drive carefully.
- The AEB may not be able to identify such targets as riders.
- The braking function of AEB system will not be activated when the electronic stability control system is in disabled or failed.
- The TSR may not work properly if there is heavy snow or rain.
- AEB system may not work normally for scenes such as strong backlight, road surface reflection and insufficient environmental lighting. Drivers should drive carefully.
- If your vehicle is needed to tow a disabled vehicle or a trailer, deactivate the AEB. When the brakes are controlled under towing conditions, the safety of the vehicle deteriorates.
- The high chassis of the preceding vehicles or the cargo protruding from the rear of the preceding vehicle may increase the risk of danger.
- Windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of AEB may be degraded or invalid.
- If the camera is displaced due to collision, it may cause the AEB degraded or fail. Please calibrate the AEB system in time.
- Do not use the improperly-calibrated AEB.
- The AEB system obtains vehicle information by identifying the rear of the vehicle, so the system will not give an alarm to vehicles coming in the reverse direction and vehicles crossing laterally in front.
- The AEB system is an auxiliary system, but vehicles cannot be detected under all circumstances. For example: vehicles with a severely obstructed rear part, vehicles with strange shapes (such as overloaded vehicles transporting trees), vehicles with a severely damaged rear part, etc.
- When your vehicle is driving on a curve, the AEB may not be able to accurately determine the state of a stationary object in the direction of travelling. Therefore, the AEB may not perform active emergency brake assistance.
- AEB system cannot help drivers in all environments, so drivers cannot rely on it completely. They must concentrate on observing road conditions to ensure driving safety.
- The AEB system is an active assistance safety system, but it is not guaranteed to avoid collision with vehicles in front under any circumstances. It is your responsibilities to know how to drive and how to avoid dangerous situations. You should apply the brakes as soon as possible in an emergency.
- If the AEB system is activated, the driver should take over the vehicle in time after the vehicle is braked to prevent the vehicle from starting again and slipping away.

 **Caution**

■ **To prevent the system from disturbing the driver by false alarm, the following situations will not be alarmed:**

- Vehicle speed is lower than 8km/h.
- Within 20s after the last warning.

■ **After the AEB system is triggered, if any of the following conditions are met, the AEB system will be interrupted and the braking behavior will be stopped immediately:**

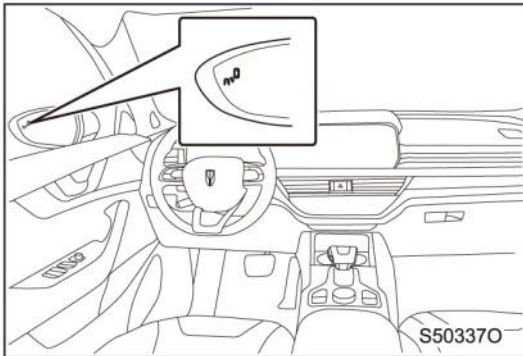
- The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.
- When the speed decreases to lower than the threshold 45km/h, AEB stops braking

■ **The AEB system will not be triggered when any of the following conditions are met, which is intended to allow the driver to control the vehicle without disturbing the driver.**

- ESC. TCS. ABS function enabled.
- The shift lever is in D.
- Any door is not closed.
- Engine compartment cover is not closed.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt.
- The automatic parking function is turned on.
- Within 20s after the last warning.
- The vehicle speed is lower than 8km/h.
- The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.

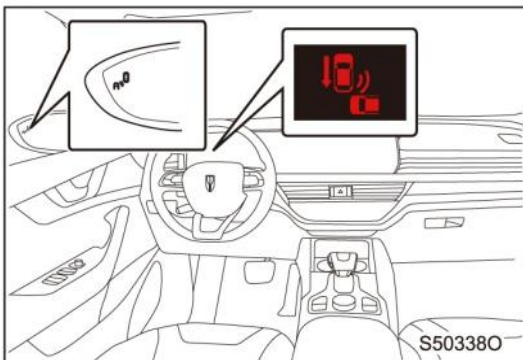
The system contains a blind spot detection, side warning assist (SWA) and a cross traffic alert (CTA) to provide driving assistance.

#### Blind spot detection and side warning assist



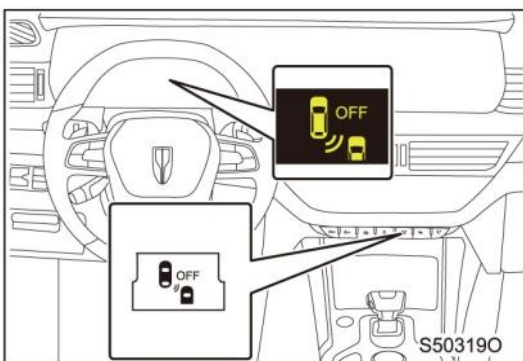
When the gear lever is in D position and the vehicle speed is greater than 30km/h, if the rear-side vehicle in the 7m (m) blind area or the 7 - 70m (m) interval behind the vehicle, the corresponding rear-view mirror warning indicator turns on. If the switch of the turn signal on the corresponding side is turned on at this time, the warning indicator will flash and a warning sound will be sent out at the corresponding side to remind the driver that it is dangerous to change lanes at this time.

#### Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)



When the gear position is in R gear and the vehicle speed is 0~10km/h, if there is a crosswalk vehicle behind the vehicle, the indicator light in the corresponding side rearview mirror will be lit, the instrument cluster will display the warning icon, and the corresponding side speaker will give out a warning sound to remind the driver to pay attention to the crosswalk vehicle.

#### Blind Spot Detection (BSD) ON/OFF



When BSD off key is pressed, the cluster gauge will display the system off indicator lamp and BSD system is turned off. Press the blind area detection button again, the indicator turns off, and the blind area detection system turns on.

If the system is faulty, the blind spot detection system will be in OFF status and cannot be turned on with the switch.



---

■ **Blind area detection and lane change assist functions may not be activated or may be delayed in the following situations:**

- When the vehicle is driven on a steep slope.
- When the vehicle is driven through the mountain top or the mountain road.
- When there is a difference in height between the driving lane and the adjacent lane.
- When there is a small turning radius.
- When the vehicle is driven on roads covered with snow.
- When A lot of snow or ice is gathered near the radar sensor.

■ **In the following conditions, BSD and lane change assistance warning may be advanced or expanded:**

- When the two lanes are too narrow and an alarm will occur in the bay.
- When the vehicle is driven on the road with fixed obstacles (such as tunnel walls, viaduct cement barriers, metal billboards, etc.) at side of the vehicle.

■ **In the following conditions, the reverse lateral warning function may be unable to warn or expand the warning range:**

- When the vehicle is parked obliquely.
- The reversing speed exceeds 10 km/h.
- When a large amount of snow or ice is gathered near the radar sensor on the rear bumper.
- The vehicle speed and yaw angle of target vehicle keep changing in the detection zone.
- When there is a coming vehicle in direct rear of the vehicle.

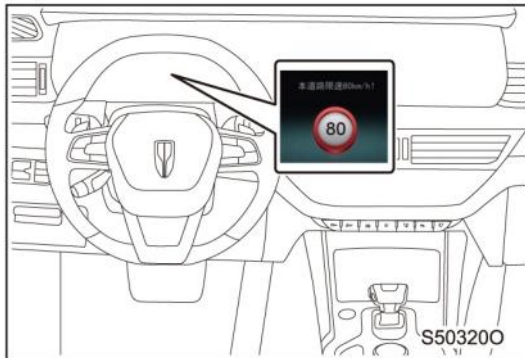
 **Caution**

- **Be sure to prevent the rear bumper from being clashed when parking. Otherwise, the sensor in the bumper may be displaced or damaged, and thus cause the SWA to be automatically shut down or the SWA function to be affected.**
- **To ensure the normal operation of the system, the sensors in the bumper must be kept clean, free of ice and snow, and must not be covered by other articles.**
- **The rear bumper is only allowed to be sprayed with the paint approved by our company. Failure to do so may result in limited functionality of the SWA or a trouble in the SWA.**
- **If blind area detection does not work normally, the system should be shut down immediately. Contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW for maintenance.**
- **After the blind area detection system is repaired, calibration is required. For details, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW.**
- **The blind are detection system will not give an alarm for pedestrians, animals, bicycles and other targets in the blind area.**
- **Blind area detection system only serves as an auxiliary reminder and cannot completely avoid collision of vehicles in blind areas. Before changing lanes, be sure to check the rearview mirror, sweep backward and use the turn signal.**
- **Under special working conditions, such as humid weather and excessively high vehicle speed, the blind area detection system may give false alarm or omission, which is a normal phenomenon.**
- **When the blind area detection radar behind the vehicle is blocked, the system will not work and the radar needs to be cleaned in time.**
- **Blind area detection system is limited by physical laws and system conditions, and may not be able to identify traffic conditions correctly under certain driving conditions. Such as the following conditions:**
  - On a lane with sharp turn.
  - On carriageways of different width.
  - On a fluctuated road in mountainous area.
  - In bad weather.
  - At some special structures on the roadside, such as high or offset highway guardrails.

 **CAUTIONS**

- **Turn off the radar detection system when towing or accessories (such as bicycle bracket) are installed at the rear, otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked, resulting in abnormal operation of the system.**
- **The intelligent technology of blind area detection system cannot violate the laws of physics. It has certain system limitations and can only work within the limits of the system. Therefore, drivers must still concentrate on observing the road and traffic conditions to prevent accidents.**
- Be sure to adjust the speed and the safe distance from the vehicle ahead according to the visibility, weather conditions, roads and traffic conditions at that time.
- Be sure to hold the steering wheel with both hands while driving and get ready to turn.
- Be sure to pay attention to the exterior rearview mirror indicator light and the information displayed on the multi-functional display screen of the instrument cluster, and operate correctly according to the instructions.
- The blind spot detection system may respond to some specific roadside buildings (such as high or offset guardrails) and thus give false alarm.
- Always pay attention to the road conditions and the surrounding conditions.
- Do not activate the blind spot detection system if the sensor is dirty or damaged. The dirty or damaged sensor may affect the system function.
- It may be hard to see the view in the exterior mirror in direct sunlight
- When driving, be sure to strictly follow the instructions of alarm lights/indicators and relevant text information, otherwise, accidents will easily be caused and serious personal injuries may result.

The road traffic sign recognition system can accurately identify the speed limit sign in front of the vehicle and the reminder for the speed limit sign during driving can be canceled.



When the system recognizes the speed limit sign, if the vehicle speed is lower than the speed limit value, the instrument cluster and information display only show the current speed limit requirement through the indicator. Remind the driver of speeding by means of sound / icon / text message.

When the system recognizes the speed limit cancellation sign, the indicator of the combination meter goes out, and the speed limit reminder is cancelled.

#### Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) ON/OFF

The on / off of the road traffic sign recognition system can be set in the vehicle settings of the audio system. (See P.225)

#### ■ The system will cancel this speed limit reminder under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle leaves the board for certain distance.
- Turn on the turn signal before turning.
- Carry out U-turn at low speed.

#### ■ Adjusting or calibrating TSR system

Please adjust or calibrate the TSR system under the following circumstances, otherwise the TSR system may not work properly

- Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- After wheel alignment.
- Replace the camera unit of the advanced driver assistance system.

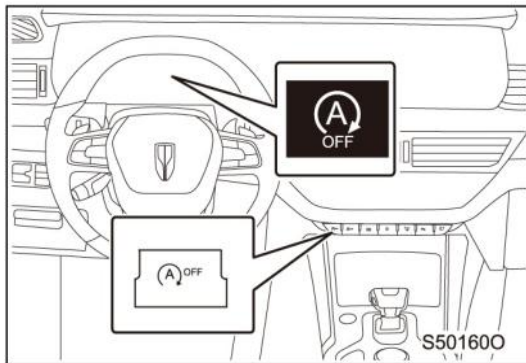
For calibration, contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

**CAUTIONS**

- **TSR is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on TSR more than necessary. Driver shall drive with caution.**
- **The TSR may not work properly if there is heavy snow or rain.**
- **TSR may not work normally for scenes such as strong backlight, road surface reflection and insufficient environmental lighting. Drivers should drive carefully.**
- **Windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of TSR may be degraded or invalid.**
- **If the camera is displaced due to a collision, the TSR function may be degraded or failed. Have the TSR calibrated in time.**
- **When the recognition plate is not in a form that meets the regulations or is not placed in a position that meets the regulations, it will be recognized properly with the system.**

**The idling start-stop system refers to a system that controls the engine's idling start and stop during a short stop based on driving operation and system requirements.**

### Idling start/stop system ON/OFF



Press the idle start-stop system button, the idle start-stop indicator on the instrument cluster turns on, and the idle start-stop system turns off; Press the idle start-stop system button again, the indicator light turns off, and the idle start-stop system turns on.

The system is turned on by default.

- If the ISSS OFF button is pressed while parking
  - When the engine is stopped by the ISSS, pressing the ISSS OFF button restarts the engine. Meanwhile, the ISSS is deactivated and the indicator lamp on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is lit.
  - When the ISSS is in the OFF state, pressing the ISSS OFF button resumes the ISSS without stopping the engine. Meanwhile, the idling start/stop system is turned on.

### Working process of the idling start/stop system

- Stop the engine
  - When your vehicle is traveling in D position, if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero and hold the brake pedal there, the engine is automatically shut down. The indicator lamp on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is lit.
  - When your vehicle is traveling in D position, if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, and then shift to P/N from D and hold the brake pedal there, the engine is automatically shut down. The indicator lamp on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is lit.
  - When your vehicle is traveling in D position, if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, and then shift to P/N from D and release the brake pedal there, the engine is automatically shut down. The indicator lamp on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is lit.
  - When the shift lever is in D position, the driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, and EPB/AUTOHOLD works, the engine will shut down automatically. The indicator lamp on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is lit.

#### ■ Start the engine

- With your vehicle in D/N, the engine shut down and the brake pedal pressed, releasing the brake pedal starts the engine automatically.
- With your vehicle in P, the engine shut down, pressing the brake pedal or acceleration pedal again starts the engine automatically.
- When EPB/AUTOHOLD is activated, depress the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal again, and the engine will start automatically.
- After the gear is changed to the R position, the engine starts automatically.
- Turning the steering wheel may start the engine automatically.
- Starting the A/C or front windshield defogger button may start the engine automatically.

#### **Idling start/stop system indicator lamp**

- When the idle start-stop indicator (green) on the multi-functional display screen of the instrument cluster is on, it indicates that the idle start-stop system is on and working.
- When the idle start-stop limit indicator (white) on the multi-functional display screen of the instrument cluster is on, it indicates that the idle start-stop system is on but the working conditions are not met.
- When the idle start-stop fault indicator (yellow) on the multi-functional display screen of the instrument cluster is on, it indicates that the idle start-stop system is faulty.

#### **Working conditions of the idling start/stop system**

##### ■ Working conditions of the idling start/stop system

- The engine stops automatically

The engine stops automatically if all the following conditions are met:

- No-idling start/stop system corresponding fault.
- The ISSS is activated.
- The driver door is closed.
- Driver side seat belt is fastened.
- Engine compartment cover is closed.
- The air conditioning system should meet the requirements.
- The automatic parking system is OFF.
- The battery has good performance and is adequate.
- The current working conditions of vehicle meet the idling START/STOP setting conditions.
- The selector lever is set in a position other than R.
- The steering wheel angle should not be too large.
- The driving mode should be in comfort or economical mode.

- Preconditions for starting the engine automatically

The engine starts automatically if all the following conditions are met:

- No-idling start/stop system corresponding fault.
- The driver door is closed.
- Engine compartment cover is closed.
- Driver side seat belt is fastened.
- The engine starts again itself without your operation (one of the conditions is satisfied)
- The battery status does not meet the conditions.
- The brake vacuum is insufficient.



#### CAUTIONS

##### ■ When the idle start and stop system works

- Do not leave the vehicle when the ISSS stops the engine. Due to the automatic starting function of the engine, accidents may occur.
- When the vehicle is placed in a poorly ventilated place, do not stop the engine using the idle start-stop system. Due to the engine's automatic starting function, the engine may restart, causing the exhaust gas to gather and enter the vehicle, which may seriously endanger the health or even result in death.
- To ensure safety, it is necessary to ensure the door is closed, the driver's seat belt is fastened, the hood is closed and the steering wheel is returned to its normal position. Otherwise, idle start-stop cannot be activated, and automatic shut down or start cannot be realized.
- To prevent frequent start and stop of the vehicle under extreme congestion, the vehicle speed after shutdown needs to be more than 5km/h to activated automatic shut down or start again.
- In the idle stop status, if the system detects that the relevant conditions are not met, the engine may be started automatically even if the brake pedal is not triggered.
- In idle stop state, the driver performs operations such as unfastening the seat belt or opening the door, and the brake pedal is triggered. At this time, the instrument will prompt that the engine needs to be started manually. At this time, the driver is required to resume these operations or start the vehicle manually through the engine switch.

■ **To ensure the drivability, comfort and protection of various systems of the vehicle, there are many preconditions for starting and stopping idling, such as low battery power or temperature, unsuitable air conditioning system, low engine water temperature, too high altitude, uncomfortable or economical driving mode, too large gradient, too low brake vacuum degree, too high gearbox temperature, and relevant system faults, etc. All of which will prohibit automatic starting and stopping. After vehicle braking, if the vehicle cannot be stopped due to the above conditions, the start-stop limitation symbol will be displayed on the meter. Therefore, it is not necessary to pay attention to whether or not to stop during driving. The idling start-stop system has integrated all aspects of drivability, safety and comfort to ensure all-round escort.**



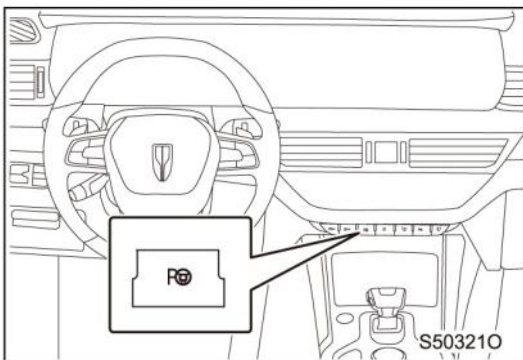
 **Caution**

- **After the engine stops automatically, press the engine switch, and the vehicle cannot start at this time.**
- **When the vehicle is in the idle-stop state, the start-stop function is terminated if one of the following conditions occurs. If you trigger the start-up operation, the instrument reminds you of starting the engine manually.**
  - The engine compartment cover is opened or the transmission sends a signal to disable start-up.
  - The seat belt is unfastened and the door is opened.
  - The seat belt is unfastened or the door is opened. The door is still opened after a period of time.
- **The idle start-stop system will be prohibited from being activated when the air conditioning system is in any of the following states:**
  - The A/C system is in defrosting/defogging mode.
  - The temperature in the car does not reach the target comfortable temperature range.
  - Outdoor temperature is high or low.
- **The idle start-stop system will be prohibited from being activated when the transmission issues the start-stop prohibition signal.**
  - Prevent the risk of dragging caused by the engagement of drive chains when starting after shutdown.
- **The driver is the main operator of the vehicle. The idle start-stop system is only a driving assistance system. The driver should control the vehicle according to the actual road conditions and drive carefully.**

Automatic parking measures the length of parking spaces on both sides of the road through ultrasonic waves and cameras, selects suitable parking spaces, and then controls the vehicle to park automatically in the selected parking spaces. The automatic parking system includes automatic parking in and out. Selection via the multimedia display.

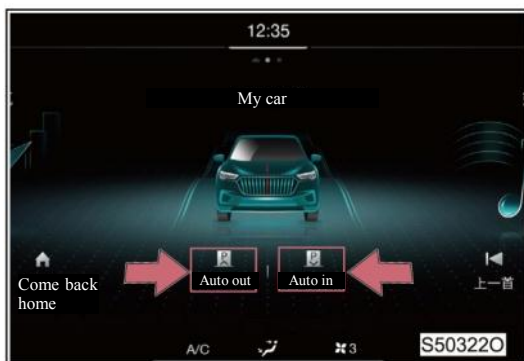
Before using the automatic parking function, please check the automatic parking procedures, precautions and notices described in this section to prevent accidents.

### Access to auto parking system



#### Method 1: Auto parking button

Press the auto parking button once to enter the auto parking selection interface; Press the auto parking button twice successively to enter the auto parking selection interface and select the parking model at the corresponding interface.



#### Method 2: Multimedia display

Touch the park in/park out button on the multimedia display screen to enter the corresponding parking selection interface and select the parking mode in the corresponding interface.

## Auto in

### ■ Select parking mode and space type



There are two parking modes of automatic parking and manual parking. In each mode, there are three types of parking spaces: vertical parking, inclined parking and horizontal parking.

The system will default auto mode when the vehicle speed is not zero. The manual mode is available only when the vehicle speed is zero.

### ■ Select the parking space



Method 1: After the automatic mode is selected and the parking space type is selected, the system will identify the parking spaces on both sides of the driving direction that are the same as the parking space type selected by the user during driving. The system default preferred parking space is the target parking space; You can also touch another optional parking space in the display screen as the target parking space.

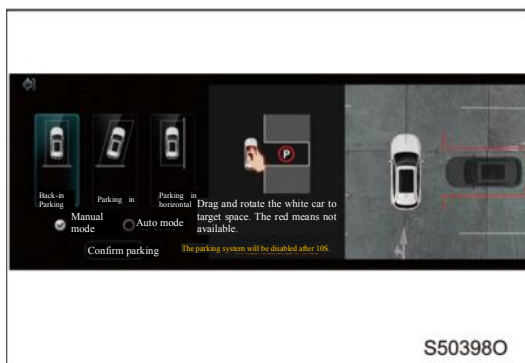
Red: unavailable space

Yellow: available space

Green: optimized space

Method 2: manual mode selection

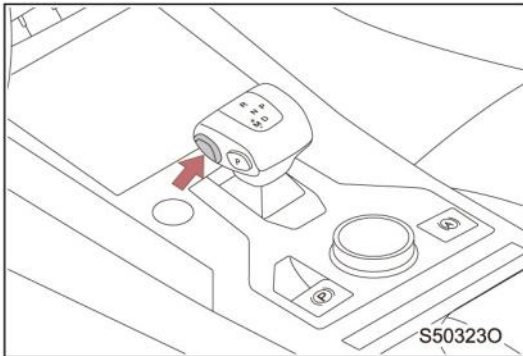
After the manual mode and space type are selected, the screen will show the corresponding target space frame. The user can drag and rotate the target space frame (touching the zone in the target space frame with two fingers, one still and one rotating around the former finger). If the car in the space frame is in red, it means the vehicle cannot park in this zone. Please adjust the position of target space frame on the screen.



#### 4-5. Use other driving system

##### ■ Parking control

After determining the target parking space, depress the brake pedal and touch the "Confirm Parking" button to park.



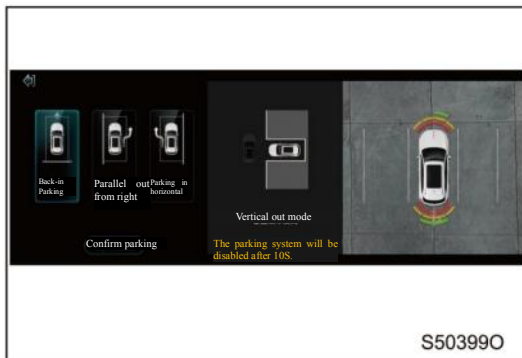
During the parking process, must press and hold the unlock button on the shift handle until the vehicle is parked-in.

When parking, the display screen will show the number of parking steps, the current running status of the vehicle and the images around the vehicle.

In the parking process, release the unlock key of the shift handle, the parking process is suspended, and press the key again to continue parking.

## Auto out

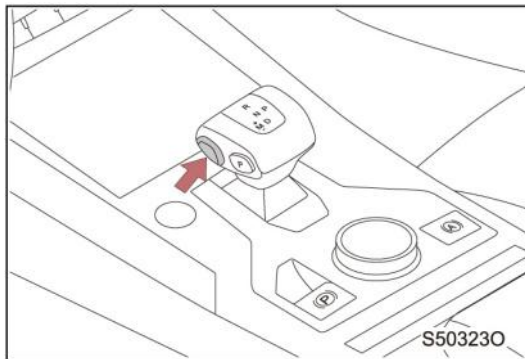
##### ■ Select out type



Through the audio system screen, the user can select vertical out, parallel out from right and parallel out from left.

### ■ Exit control

After selecting the type, depress the brake pedal and press the "Confirm Park" button to start the vehicle.



During the exit process, must press and hold the unlock button on the shift handle until the vehicle exits.

In the vehicle out process, if the gear lever unlocking key is released, the vehicle out will stop; if the key is pressed again, the vehicle out will continue.

### ■ Operating conditions for parking:

- In the process of finding parking spaces, the vehicle speed is lower than 20km/h, and when the vehicle speed exceeds 20km/h, speed reduction is prompted..
- There is no manual operation of the steering wheel in the process of parking.
- The ESCOFF switch is activated.
- The ESC/ABS/TCS function is not activated.
- The PSC/ESC/ABS/TCS/EPS functions properly.

### ■ Conditions to deactivate parking:

- In the process of finding parking spaces, the vehicle speed exceeds 30km/h.
- The driver operates the steering wheel.
- The door is opened.
- Touch the parking cancel button.
- After the automatic parking is turned on, the parking has not been completed within 4 minutes.
- After the automatic parking is turned on, the parking process is not completed after the maximum number of actions.
- SACC function is activated.
- The ESCOFF switch is activated.
- The ESC/ABS/TCS function intervenes.
- The PSC/ESC/ABS/TCS/EPS fails.

■ **During automatic parking. When there is an obstacle that affects the parking of the vehicle, the vehicle stops automatically. Parking continues after the obstacle disappears. If the obstacle still exists after a while, the auto parking will terminate.**

■ **During the auto parking, observe the ambient conditions around the vehicle. Where the emergency braking is required, the driver should quickly release the parking key or depress the brake pedal or pull EPB switch to control the vehicle parking.**

 **Caution**

■ **The driver is the main operator of the vehicle. APA automatic parking system is only a driving assistance system. The driver should control the vehicle according to the actual road conditions and drive carefully.**

■ **In order to ensure the success rate and safety of the parking system, the system needs to be used in the following environmental conditions:**

- The road surface is flat, the height of obstacles is less than 5cm, and the gradient is not more than 4 degrees.
- The parking space lines should be clear and the parking space should be large.
- The weather is good. The driver can clearly and unobstructedly see the environment near the parking space.
- The road surface is dry and difficult to slip.

■ **In the process of automatically searching for parking spaces, the following situations should be paid attention to:**

- The vehicle needs to drive close to the parking space. Too long a distance may cause the parking space failed to be identified.
- The steering angle of the vehicle cannot be too large. Otherwise, parking space identification may fail.
- The vehicle speed should not exceed 20km/h, which may lead to failure of parking space identification.
- In case of rain, snow, fog or dim light, the parking space identification rate may be reduced.
- When the parking space is too small, the parking space line is unclear or the parking space is irregular, it may lead to failure in parking space identification.
- In the process of finding parking spaces, the image can only assist the driver, and the driver must pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.

■ **In the process of automatic parking of vehicles, attention should be paid to the following situations:**

- There may be blind spots with respect to the distance prompt function. The driver needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.
- Insufficient parking space may lead to parking failure.
- When the road slope is too steep, parking may not be possible.
- A wet and slippery road surface may cause the parking failure.
- Uneven road surface may lead to parking failure.
- During the parking process, the driver can operate accelerator pedal, the gears and the steering wheel.

■ **If the tire needs to be replaced, please ensure that the size and specification of the replaced tire are exactly the same as those of the original one, and verify the four-wheel alignment parameters.**



## CAUTIONS

- Pay special attention to the people animals, and various obstacles around the vehicle. The sensors have undetectable blind spots.
- When looking for a parking space or during parking, make sure that there are no obstacles in the parking space, such as stones, thin pillars or drawbars, because the system may be not able to detect such obstacles.
- The system may not be able to recognize the surface or structure of certain objects (such as barbed wire, fences, snowdrifts, etc.) Therefore, check whether there is enough space in the parking space displayed before parking your vehicle.
- The parking radar system detects an obstacle. The car approaching the obstacle may disappear within the detection range of the sensor (this is very easy to happen when detecting obstacles that are too high or too low). As a result, these objects cannot be detected. Do not ignore the warning from the parking distance alarm system, otherwise, the vehicle may have the risk of collision.
- Due to the influence of various external sound fields and electromagnetic fields (e.g. other vehicles using ultrasonic ranging, air pressure, engine noise, electronically controlled gears, induction coils, etc.), the system cannot achieve absolute anti-interference.
- The anti-interference ability and detection performance of ultrasonic ranging may be reduced due to environmental conditions and obstacle reflection characteristics. This is determined by the physical strength of ultrasonic propagation.
- The installation position of the sensor has an important influence on the system performance. It is reflected in the reflection of the bumper surface itself, ground echo reflection and detection range.
- Avoid using high pressure cleaner or steam cleaner to clean the sensors, so as not to damage the sensors. Adopt small water stream to wash the sensor surface for a short time during vehicle cleaning, and maintain a distance over 10 cm.
- The sound waves transmitting in the air is refracted and diffracted based on the physical properties. The difference in temperature in the air is one of the most important factors in the generation of non-uniform propagation media, thereby leading to acoustic diffraction.
- The detection performance of ultrasonic detection equipment will be affected by the following factors:
  - Hot exhaust gas.
  - High-temperature asphalt pavement.
  - Summer breeze.
  - Temperature stratification.
- When there is a difference between the bumper temperature and the ambient air temperature (which usually occurs in winter), temperature stratification will occur, resulting in sound wave diffraction and reflection echo under a specific bumper structure, thus posing a false alarm risk.
- Some important factors that can lead to a reduced detection range or no detection:
  - The bumper surface is covered with snow or sludge.
  - The sensor surface is covered with lime mud or ice.
  - High acoustic attenuation (for example, in a dry and hot environment).
  - In heavy rain or foam.
  - Obstructions with absorbing materials.
  - When the edges and corners of flat obstacles are facing the sensor, the reflected echo only occurs within a specific angle range.

**Functions integrated by ESC (Electronic Stability Program), which may be different according to different vehicle models.**

**To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. However, bear in mind that these functions are only for assistance and should not be excessively relied upon when driving the vehicle.**

■ Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Help to prevent skidding or deviation due to wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface.

■ Electronic brake force distribution (EBD)

Distribute dynamic brakeforce of front and rear wheels in proportion according to vehicle load, road conditions and brakeforce changes to improve the vehicle braking stability and handling.

■ Traction control system (TCS)

Maintains drive power and help prevent any of the drive wheels from spinning when the vehicle is started or accelerated on a slippery road surface.

■ Hydraulic braking assist (HBA)

Fast depress the brake pedal to compensate the brakeforce. The brakeforce may increase effectively.

■ Hydraulic brake booster (HBB)

When the vacuum degree of the braking system is insufficient, braking force compensation can effectively increase the braking force.

■ Hill descent control (HDC)

When the vehicle is going downhill and the speed is 3 - 35km/h, apply corresponding braking force to the wheels to keep the downhill running at a stable speed.

The steep descent button can be set to turn on and off the steep descent function.

■ Hill start assist (HHC)

When the driver moves the foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal during the process from the parking to start on a downhill, the function is used properly to maintain the brake pressure applied by the driver to prevent the vehicle from backward movement.

■ Electronic stability control (ESC)

When turning suddenly or turning on slippery roads, it helps the driver to control the sideslip to ensure the vehicle's correct driving trajectory.

■ Active cruise control deceleration control (CDD-S)\*

The auxiliary ACC adaptive cruise control system is used to carry out the adaptive cruise deceleration control.

■ Parking brake deceleration (CDP)

Long pull EPB button to enter the deceleration state adaptively.

■ Auto hold

When the vehicle is still, the parking brake is applied by the hydraulic system and the parking is briefly maintained. After that, a function of parking is performed by the electronic parking system, which can be turned off/on by the button.



### ■ Active Pre-Braking (ABP)\*

When the brake pedal is pressed in an emergency, the response speed of the brake is improved.

### ■ EPS electric power assisted steering

It uses motor to reduce the required force of turning steering wheel.

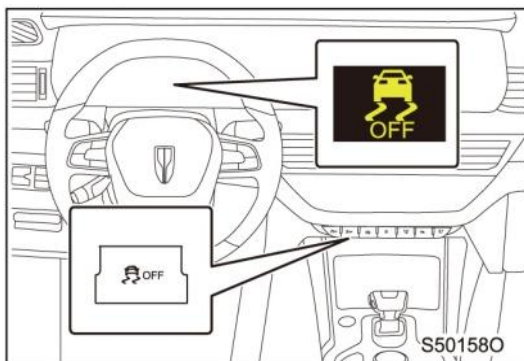
## When TCS/ESC are operating



If the vehicle slips or the drive wheels are idling, the indicator flashes, indicating that TCS/ ESC is working.

## Disabling ESC

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, the ESC may reduce the power from the engine to the wheels. Turn the system off to move the vehicle back and forth to free it.



Press the "ESC OFF" key to turn off the ESC function. The indicator on the multi-functional display of the instrument cluster will be on. Press the "ESC OFF" key again to restore the system.

### ■ The ESC responds automatically

When the ESC/TCS is turned off and the engine is restarted or the vehicle speed exceeds 70km/h, the system will be activated again automatically.

### ■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, HBA, TCS, ESC, CDP, CDD and AUTO HOLD

- When the engine is starting or just after the vehicle starts, sounds may be heard in the engine compartment, This sound does not indicate that these systems have failed.

■ Some of the following normal conditions may occur when the above-mentioned system works. These conditions do not mean that a fault has occurred.

- Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
- A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.



#### CAUTIONS

##### ■ Handling of wheels and suspension:

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system malfunction.

##### ■ ABS does not work effectively under the following conditions

- Tires with inadequate gripping capability are used.
- The vehicle slips when driving at high speed on slippery roads.

##### ■ Braking distance of ABS working on special roads:

ABS is not designed for shortening the brake distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
- When driving with tire chains.
- When driving on a bumpy road
- When driving on roads with multiple pits or uneven roads.

##### ■ TCS may not operate effectively when

When driving on slippery roads, even if the TCS system works normally, it may not be able to control the direction and meet the power requirements. Do not drive the vehicle under conditions that may lose stability and power.

##### ■ When the ESC is activated

If the indicator lamp flashes, always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident.

##### ■ When ESC shuts off

Take special care and drive ESC at a speed suitable for road conditions to ensure the stability of the vehicle. Do not turn it off if it is not necessary.

##### ■ Replace the wheel

Make sure all wheels have the same size, brand, tread pattern and load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level. The ABS and EPS systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle. For details about replacement of tires or wheels, please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor.

**Please make necessary preparation and inspection before driving in winter. Be sure to drive in a way that is suitable for the main weather conditions in winter.**

■ Prepare to use oil suitable for outdoor temperature during winter driving.

- Engine oil
- Engine coolant
- Washer fluid
- Make sure the battery performance is favorable.
- If necessary, install four snow tires on the vehicle or purchase a set of anti-skid chains for driving wheels.

Ensure that all tires are of the same size and brand, and that the chains match the size of the tires.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Take the following measures based on the driving conditions:

- Do not forcibly open the frozen window or move the frozen wipers. Always use warm water to melt the frozen parts. Wipe the melt water immediately to prevent icing again.
- To ensure proper operation of the fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air intake grille.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel housing or on the brakes.
- Before getting on, remove snow or mud from the soles.

■ During driving

Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed according to the road conditions.

### **Tire Chain Selection**

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.

The dimensions of tire chains should be adjusted based on the size of each tire.

### **Regulations on the use of tire chains**

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on locations and types of roads.

Always check local regulations before installing chains.

Install the chain on the driving tire.

Re-tighten the chains after driving for 0.5 - 1.0 km.

---

■ **Tire chain**

Please take the following precautions when installing or removing tire chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install the chain on the driving tire.
- Install tire chains following the instructions in the user manual of the tire chains.



**CAUTIONS**

■ **Drive the car equipped with snow tires**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause serious injury or even death.

- Use tires of specified models.
- Keep the recommended pressure.
- During driving, please do not exceed the road speed limit or limit speed specified for the snow tires.
- Install snow tires for all wheels.

■ **Drive the car equipped with tire chains**

In order to avoid the possibility of causing the vehicle unable to run safely and causing serious injury or even death, and to reduce the risk of accidents, the following precautions should be observed:

- During driving, please do not exceed the limit speed for tire chain used.
- Avoid driving on rough roads or roads with many pits.
- Avoid sudden turning and braking.
- Decelerate sufficiently before cornering to ensure that the car can be controlled.

**5-1. Basic Operations**

Multimedia display .....212

Multimedia switch on the steering wheel .....215

USB interface .....216

**5-2. Settings**

System settings .....217

Vehicle settings .....222

**5-3. Navigation**

Basic functions .....228

Using the navigation .....230

**5-4. Radio**

Using the radio .....234

**5-5. Music**

My music play .....237

**5-6. Bluetooth Music**

Bluetooth music play .....241

**5-7. Video**

Video play .....243

**5-8. Images**

Image viewing .....246

**5-9. Hands-free System**

Using the hands-free system .....249

**5-10. Bluetooth Telephone**

Using Bluetooth® phone .....252

**5-11. Speech recognition**

Using the voice recognition function .....256

**5-12. Mobile phone APP**

Using the mobile phone APP .....258

**5-13. Hongqi Smart Connect**

Using Hongqi Smart Connect .....261

The user can control the navigation, call, radio, music, vehicle setting and A/C through the main menu interface on the multi-media display.



S/N	Name	Function
1	Navigation	Enter the navigation application (see R228) By touching the application icon, you can quickly navigate to the company and home.
2	My car	Enter the vehicle setting (see P_222) Touching the application icon can quickly achieve the auto in and out.
3	Multimedia file	Enter the multimedia application (see P.234, 237, 241) and switch the currently played tracks by touching the application icon.
4	Phone	Enter phone application (see P.252) By touching the application icon, you can quickly access the contacts and call history.
5	System settings	Enter system settings (see P.217) By touching the application icon, you can quickly access voice recognition and theme modes. You can quickly enter the system settings by touching or sliding down the status bar from the top of the screen.
6	Hongqi Smart Connect	Enter Hong Qi smart link (see R261) Touching the application icon can quickly access the QQ music and Himalaya.
7	A/C	Enter air conditioning application (see R270) Touching or pulling up the lower of screen status bar can access A/C system.

## Information display screen

The images shown in this manual are only for reference, and the actual images shown on the vehicle will prevail.

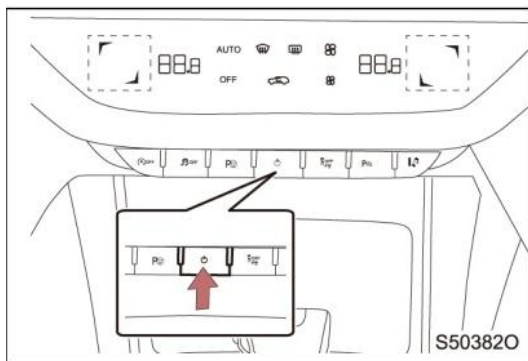
### ■ Splash screen



Splash screen of the audio system.

### ■ Switch key

The switch key is in the lower of message display.



In the off state, short press to turn on; in the on state, short press to turn off / on the screen.

In the power-on state, press and hold for 3 s (seconds), the audio system is turned off.

### ■ Using the phone

With the audio system working, if the mobile phone is used inside or near the vehicle, the audio system speaker may release the interfering noise.

### ■ When using the multimedia display

- If the multimedia display is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The display might be dark or hard to watch clearly when you wear a pair of sunglasses, please change the multimedia screen's angle or take off your sunglasses.
- Do not expose the multimedia screen under the blazing sun for quite a long time.
- Do not expose the multimedia display screen to moisture, dust, oil fume and other pollution.

### ■ To avoid any damage to the multimedia display

- Just touch the multimedia display screen with your hand during operation. If the content displayed on the multimedia display screen cannot be recalled, it means that the content may not be recalled at present. Do not press on the screen too hard to avoid damaging the equipment.
- Please do not use sharp objects or hard objects with edges to touch or sweep the multimedia display, or the display might be damaged.
- Please do not spray any fluid to the multimedia display; because if any fluid leaks into the device, the electronic components will be damaged.
- When cleaning the multimedia display surface, please use soft cloth, and do not use any dilute or other chemical cleaner for wiping.

### Caution

■ **Due to the high sensitivity of this system, noise may be generated when approaching TV tower, radio station, power plant or other places emitting strong radio waves or electric noise interference.**

#### ■ Preventing low battery power

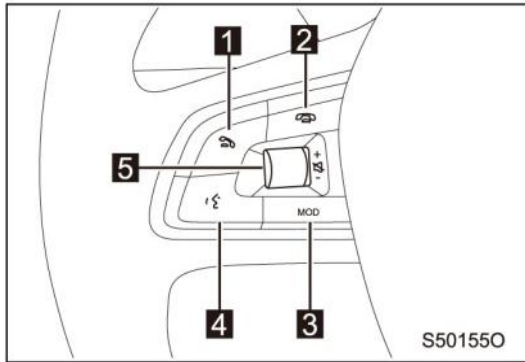
- Do not use the audio system for a long time when the vehicle is not starting

#### ■ Prevent damage to sound system

- Do not spill drinks or other liquids onto the audio system. If the fluid or other objects fall into this unit, immediately switch off the power and contact the authorized dealer of FAW HONGQI.
- Do not repair, disassemble or modify the unit without authorization. In the case of malfunction, immediately shut down the audio system and contact the authorized dealer of FAW HONGQI.



Some multimedia features can be controlled using the multimedia switches on the steering wheel.



- 1** Call answer key
- 2** Call hang up key
- 3** MOD button
- 4** Voice recognition button
- 5** Volume adjustment/mute button

S/N	Features:
1	To answer the phone through Bluetooth, press the phone application; when there is call in, press it to answer.
2	If there is call out, in or talking, press this can hang up.
3	Press: switch among FM → AM → USB1 → USB2 → local → favorite list → FM.
4	Short press: activate/exit voice recognition.
5	Scroll up/down: the volume is increased/minimum, and if it is muted, it will be unmuted; Press: mute/cancel mute.

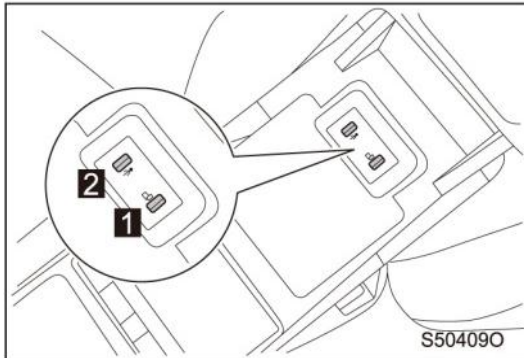
**⚠ CAUTIONS**

**■ During driving**

Take extra care when operating the multimedia switch on the steering wheel to prevent accidents.

Connect a USB device to the USB port, go to the corresponding mode, then you can operate it via the audio system.

#### To use a USB1/USB2 port



Open the front seat center storage box lid, and connect the external multimedia source.

- 1** USB1
- 2** USB2

#### ■ USB memory

Connect the USB memory device.

If the USB memory device is not started, turn it on.

#### CAUTIONS

##### ■ During driving

Do not connect any device or operate its control buttons to prevent any accident.

#### Caution

##### ■ USB port

- Be sure to keep the port clean. If a foreign object or liquid enters the port, it may cause a malfunction of the sound system.
- Do not insert any high-current USB device except a USB stick or a mobile telephone, including mobile hard disk drives and portable power sources.

##### ■ Mobile phone USB cable

- It is recommended to connect with the USB cable provided with the mobile phone to ensure the stability of the connection.

Go to the main interface of system settings by tapping the button [System Settings] on the screen on the main menu interface.



- 1** Go to the System Settings interface (see P.218)
- 2** Enter the audio-visual setting interface (see R220)
- 3** Go to the Document Management interface (see P.221)

### Main interface of system settings



#### 1 Mobile internet

- Enable mobile network: access the network through the network environment created by built-in network card.

#### 2 WLAN setting up

- Enable WLAN: press the key [ON] on WLAN setting interface.
- Search for WLAN: Set WLAN to On and click [Search] button on the screen to find the network.
- Connect the WLAN: select the network to access and enter the password to connect.
- Disconnect WLAN: in the network list interface, press the button [Cancel] to disconnect the corresponding network connection.

#### 3 Bluetooth settings

- Enable Bluetooth: press the key [ON] on Bluetooth setting interface.
- Search Bluetooth: set Bluetooth to ON and press [SEARCH] on the screen to search Bluetooth equipment.
- Connect the Bluetooth: select the Bluetooth equipment to be connected to match. After the connection succeeds, the connection status will be displayed.
- Disconnect the Bluetooth: in the Bluetooth equipment list interface, touch [OFF] to disconnect the corresponding Bluetooth equipment.
- Delete Bluetooth: in the Bluetooth equipment list interface, touch [DELETE] to delete corresponding Bluetooth equipment.
- Setting: to set the Bluetooth visibility and equipment name etc.

#### 4 Personal hotspot

- Enable personal hotspot: press the key [ON] on personal hotspot interface.
- Edit hotspot name: set personal hotspot to ON, enter the name in editing interface and confirm to complete the name editing.

- Password setting: set personal hotspot to ON, enter the new password in the password setting interface and confirm to complete the password setting.

#### **5** Mobile phone interconnection

You can choose how to connect to the phone by default.

#### **6** Voice recognition

- Voice function: it can be set to ON or OFF.
- Part-time wake-up free: Set part-time wake-up free to ON and set part-time wake-up free time in the time setting interface.
- Main awake word: in the interface, open [Self-Defining] and touch editing; press [Modify] to access the editing interface, enter the modification contents and confirm.
- The voice assistant image can be set to flag baby or abstract voice assistant.
- TTS pronounce can be set to: young woman, matured woman.

#### **7** System language

The system can be set to Chinese or English.

#### **8** Date and time

- 24h system: Select [ON] for 24h system; select [OFF] for 12h system.
- Set time: set the auto setting to [OFF], touch the time bar. After setting the date, click OK to complete the time modification.
- Set date: set the auto setting to [OFF], touch the date bar. After setting the date, click OK to complete the date modification.

#### **9** About this unit

You can view system information.

#### **10** Restore factory settings

The system can be reset-only system settings.

The system can be reset to factory settings.

#### **11** Upgraded system

In the system upgrade, USB upgrade and automatic update can be carried out. For specific operation, please refer to the system guide or contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of FAW China.

## Audiovisual settings



### **1** Theme mode

It can be set to classic, sport and concise.

### **2** Display mode

It can be set to automatic, day or night modes.

### **3** Brightness

To adjust the screen brightness, touch the key [+] or [-] or drag the brightness setting bar.

Environment tone effect

It can be set to 4 tone effect modes: CenterPoint, normal balanced, driver's seat preference and rear row seat preference.

### **5** Volume control

It can adjust the key tone, radar tone, E-CALL and phone volume.

To adjust the volume, touch the key [+] or [-] or drag the volume setting bar.

### **6** Timbre setting

It can adjust the value of treble, mediant and bass.

To adjust the sound value, touch the key [+] or [-] or drag the timbre setting bar.

### **7** Sound field setting

Select the best listening point by dragging the round cursor side to side.

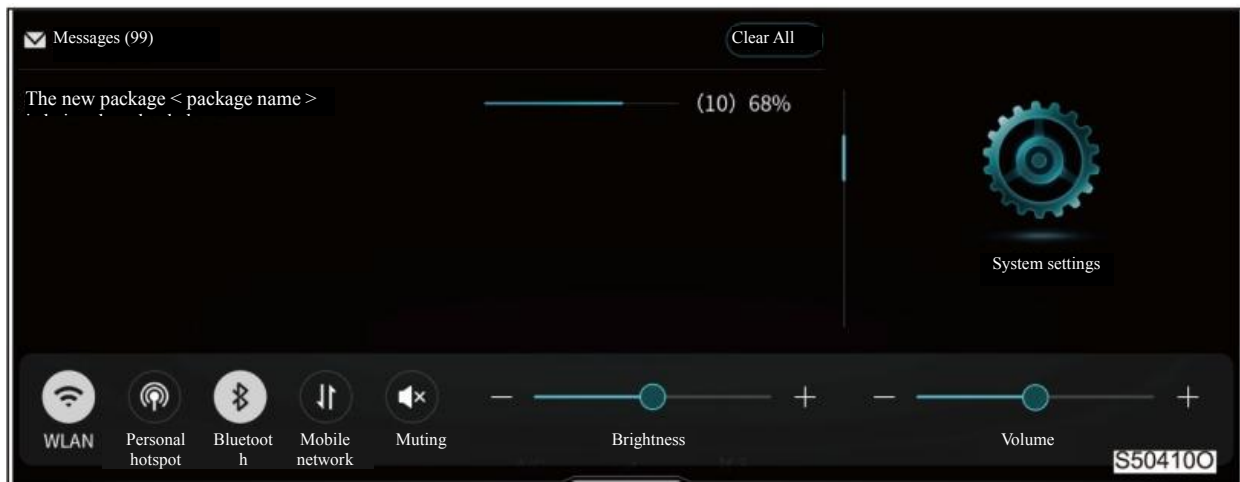
## Document management

Through the file management, the user can view, search, play and delete the files in the media source.



## Shortcut menu

In the open state of the audio system, above the screen status bar, slide down to pull out the shortcut menu, and check some functions quickly.



In the shortcut menu interface, touch the right side system setting to quickly access the setting interface.

In the main menu interface, touch [my car] to access the vehicle setting main interface.

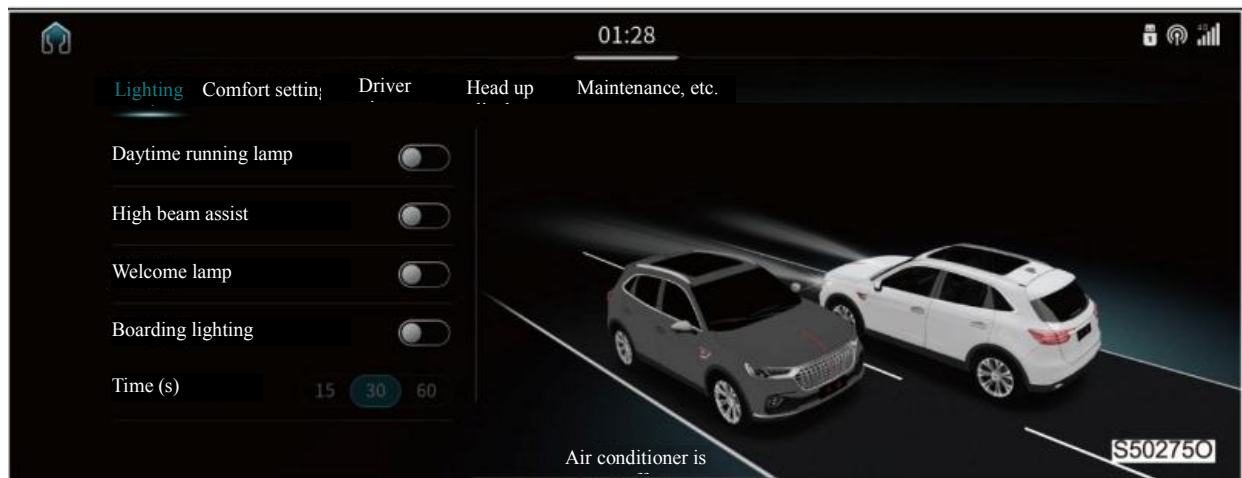
### Vehicle setting main interface



- 1** Enter the lighting setting interface (see R223)
- 2** Go to the Comfort Setting interface (see P.224)
- 3** Go to the Driver Assistance interface (see P.225)
- 4** Go to the Head Up Display interface (see P.226)
- 5** Go to the Maintenance, etc. interface (see P.227)



## Lighting setting



### 1 Daytime running lamp

Set DRL on/off.

### 2 High beam assist

Set the IHC On and Off.

### 3 Welcome lamp

Set LED board on/off.

### 4 Boarding lighting

Set boarding lighting on/off.

It can be used for 15s/30s/60s time settings.

### 5 Off-vehicle lighting system

Set leaving lighting on/off.

It can be used for 15s/30s/60s time settings.

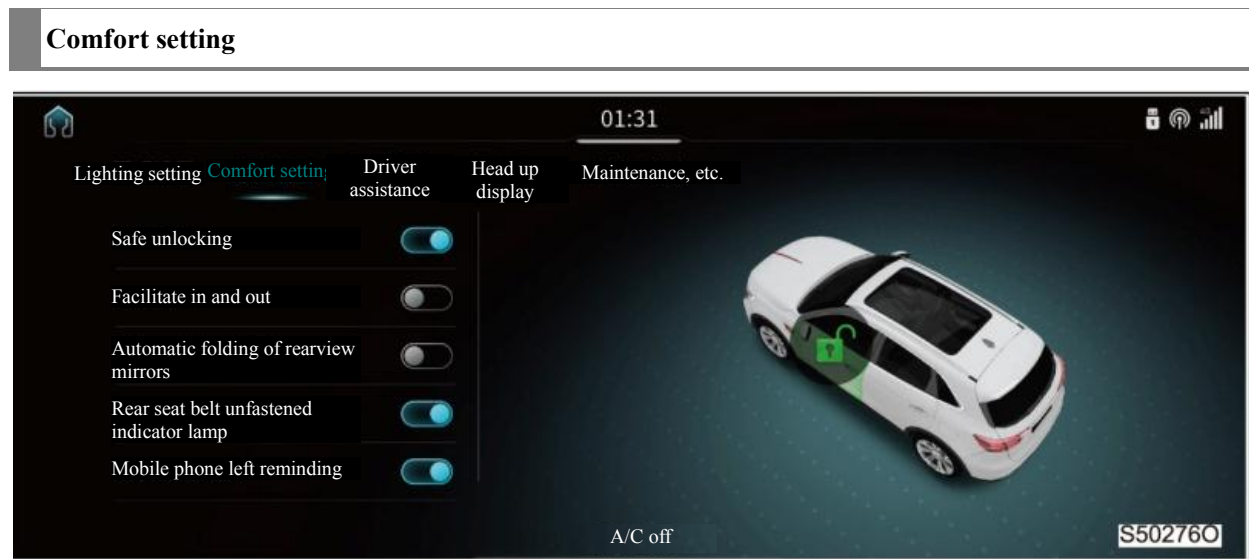
### 6 Backlight brightness

It can achieve 5-level brightness adjustment.

### 7 Ambience lamp

Setting the ambience light on/off.

7 levels of brightness adjustment and color adjustment are available.



### 1 Safe unlocking

Set safe unlocking on/off.

On: press the unlocking key on the remote controller once and the driver's side door will be unlocked; Press the unlocking key twice continuously and all the doors will be unlocked.

OFF: Press the remote control unlock button once to unlock all doors.

### 2 Facilitate in and out

Set LED board on/off.

### 3 Exterior rearview mirror auto folding

Set exterior rearview mirror auto folding or not upon vehicle locking.

### 4 Rear seat belt unfastened indicator lamp

Set rear seat belt unfastened reminding on/off.

### 5 Mobile phone left reminding

Set the phone left reminding on/off.

With this function on, if the engine switch is shut down while the phone is in the wireless charge zone or connecting the on-board CarLife, the instrument cluster will remind.

### 6 Auto parking upon power off

Set auto parking or not upon power off.

### 7 Active unlocking upon approaching

Set active unlocking upon approaching on/off.

With the function on, when the driver is approaching the vehicle with smart key/card key carried, the vehicle will be automatically unlocked.

## Driver assistance



### 1 Smart speed restriction

Set the road traffic mark identification system on/off. The default status is on.

### Speed restriction reminding

Set the speed restriction reminding on/off. The default status is off.

Vehicle speed restriction range:30-220km/h.

### 3 Cruise mode

Set the cruise mode on/off. With the function on, the cruise mode can be set to ACC or SACC.

### 4 Lane keeping assist system

Set the LKA system reminding to warning or warning + correction; in addition, the lane deviation early warning sensitivity can be set.

With SACC off, the lane deviation early warning sensitivity (the default is warning upon line contact) can be set.

### 5 Front collision warning

Set the early warning prior to collision on/off. The default status is on.

### 6 Advanced emergency braking

Set the active emergency braking on/off. The default status is on.



**1** HUD brightness

HUD brightness setting range: -1 (MO, default value is 0).

**2** Cruise system

Set the cruise system display on / off. The default is on.

**3** Smart speed restriction reminding

Set the smart speed restriction reminding display on/off. The default status is on.

**4** Navigation

Set the navigation display on/off. The default status is on.

**5** Call

Set the incoming call display on/off. The default status is on.

**6** Audio

Set the audio display on/off. The default status is on.

**7** Front collision warning

Set the early warning prior to collision on/off. The default status is on.

**8** Lane keeping assistance

Set the LKA display on/off. The default status is on.

**9** Advanced emergency braking

Set the active emergency braking display on/off. The default status is on.

## Maintenance, etc.



### 1 Wiper repair position

With the wiper maintenance position function enabled, set the wiper to maintenance position if possible.

### 2 Maintenance notification

- Mileage interval setting: in the setting interface, the maintenance interval mileage can be viewed and set.
- Time interval setting: in the setting interface, the maintenance time interval can be viewed and set.

### 3 Average fuel consumption billing

Set the average fuel consumption billing on/off. The default status is off.

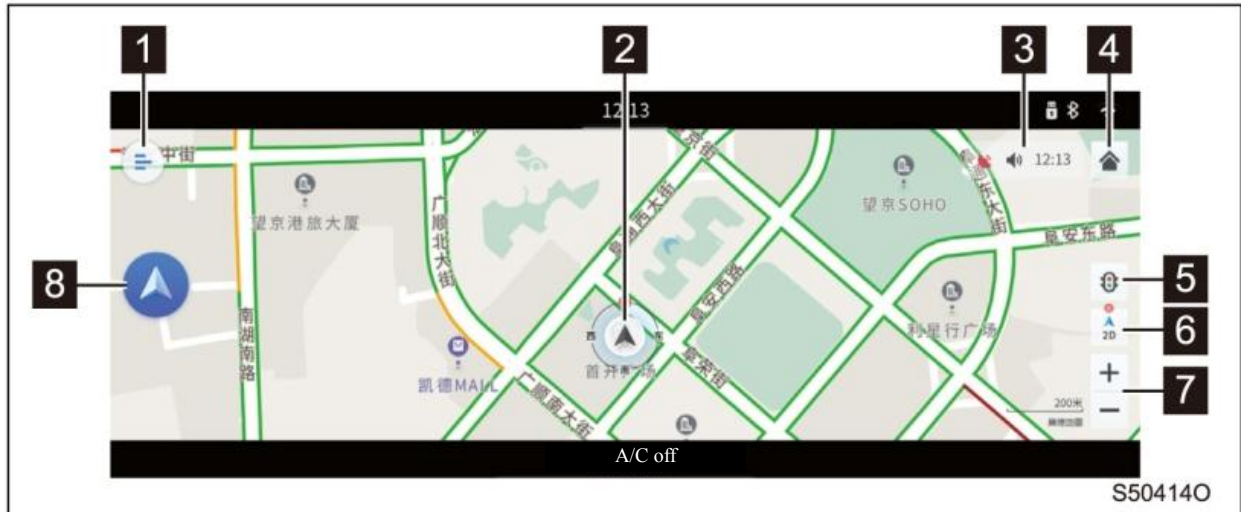
Touch the fuel unit price setting zone to set the unit price.

### 4 Acceleration timer

Set the acceleration timer on/off. The default status is off.

### Navigation map interface -

■ Map mode interface



**1** Main menu

Touch to access the main menu interface.

**2** Current position

Display the current vehicle position

**3** Status bar

Touch to deploy the status bar information.

**4** Return

Return audio system main interface.

**5** Road condition switch

Touch to open the real time road condition.

**6** View mode

Click it to switch to 2D north upward/2D head upward/3D head upward mode.

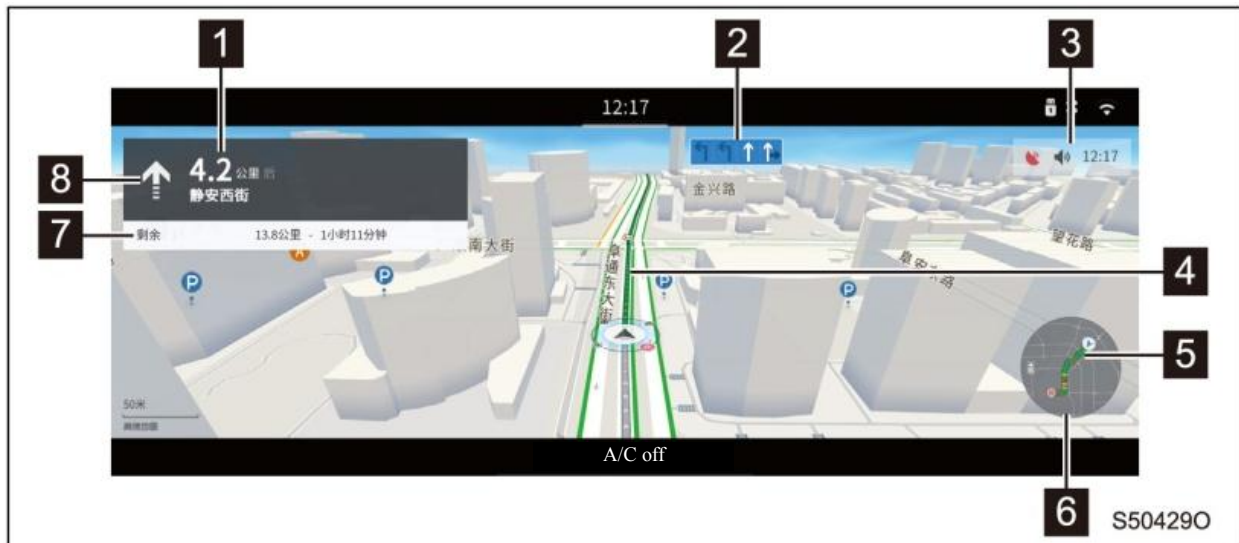
**7** Scale

It can magnify or reduce the map display scale.

**8** Destination

Touch to search the destination and set navigation.

### ■ Navigation mode interface



#### **1** Distance to next intersection and road name

Display the remaining distance to the next intersection and the road name at the next intersection.

#### **2** Lane information

Display the information of lane in which the vehicle is.

#### **3** Navigation status bar

Touch to deploy the status bar information.

#### **4** Name of front road

Display the name of road to access.

#### **5** Hawk view map road condition and progress

Display the road condition in the navigation route and the navigation progress.

#### **6** Hawk view map + full travel overview

Display the entire navigation route map.


#### **7** Remaining mileage and and time

Display the remaining distance and time to destination

#### **8** Turn arrowhead

Display the advance direct of next intersection.

## Main Menu

Touch the screen key  on the navigation interface to access the main menu interface.



### 1 Return

Click it to enter the map mode interface.

### 2 Login

In the case of on-board unit connecting network, the user can log in and synchronize the guidance information with the phone.

### 3 Favorite

Click it to enter the favorites interface for quickly navigation with the favorites.

### 4 Off-line data

Click it to enter the off line data interface to manage the offline data.


### 5 Set

Touch to set the route planning, voice broadcast and map display in the Settings interface.

### 6 My car

Click it to enter my vehicle interface to manage my vehicle.

### 7 My message

Touch to enter my message interface  to view and manage my messages.



### Set destination -

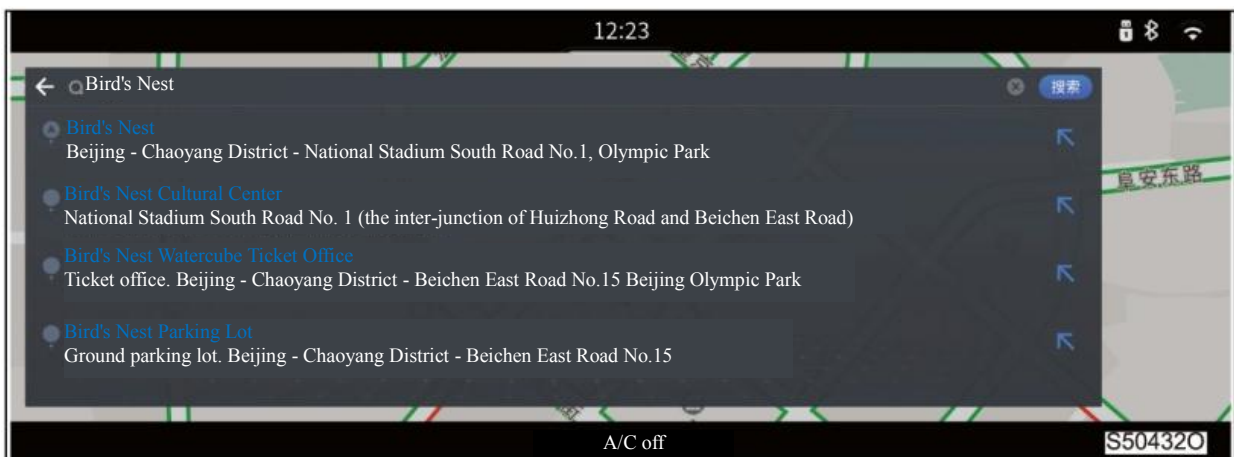
Users can set their destinations by searching POI (points of interest), name search, quick navigation, favorite spots, etc. The following is an example of name search.

#### ■ Name searching

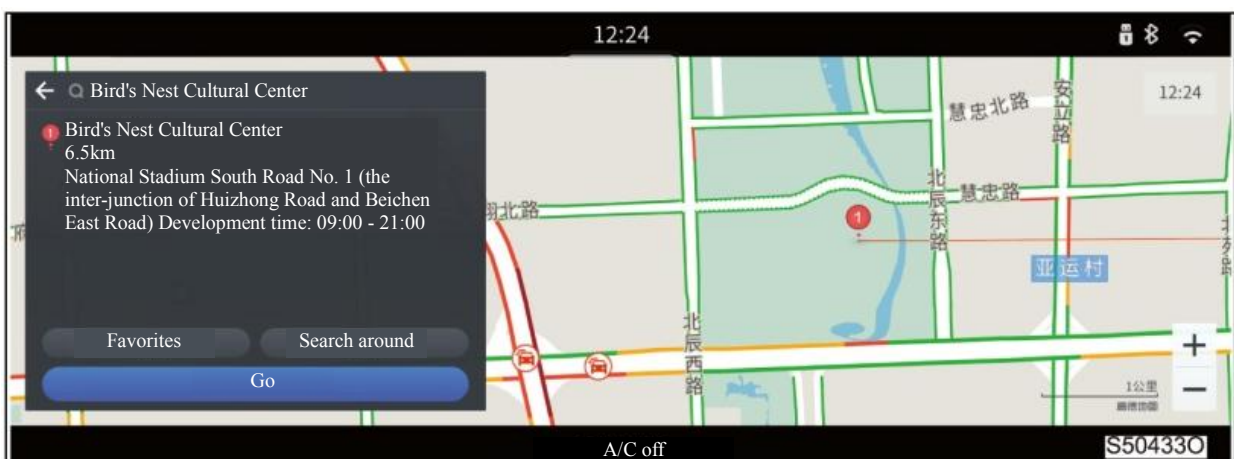
**Step 1** In the map mode interface, touch [destination] to access the search interface.



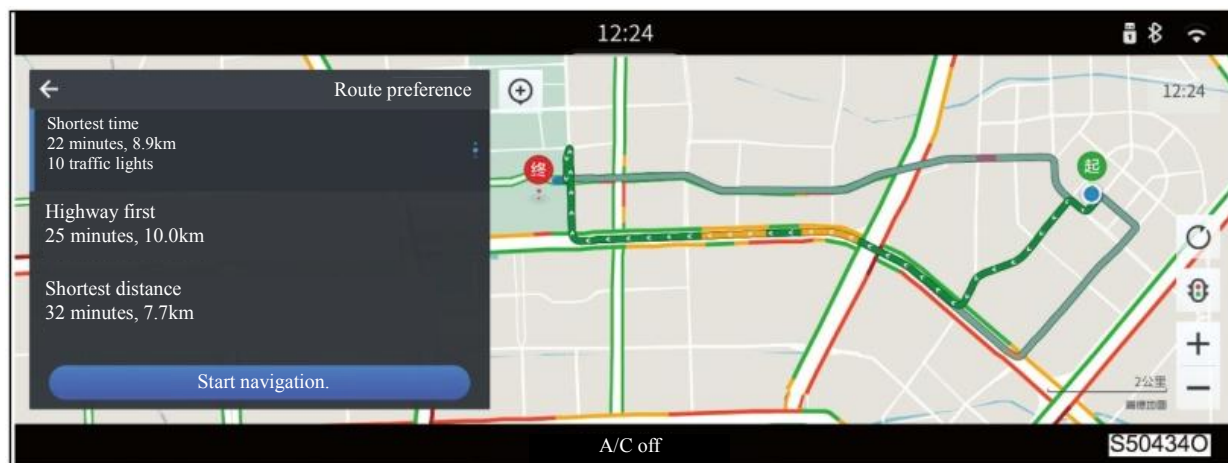
**Step 2** In the search interface, enter the destination and touch [search] to access the search result interface.



**Step 3** Select the destination and touch [go] to access the route planning interface.



**Step 4** In the route planning interface, select the appropriate route and touch [start navigation].



Note: the billing information can be displayed online.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ To reduce the risk of an accident

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.

#### ■ During driving

- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.
- Ensure to observe the highway codes and note the road conditions while driving. If the traffic sign on the road has changed, the route guidance may provide wrong information, such as one-way road direction.
- During the route navigation through the navigation system, follow the actual traffic rules. If you only follow the route of the navigation system, you may sometimes violate traffic rules and lead to traffic accidents.
- In the process of driving, drivers should not conduct operations such as address search. They must stop the vehicle before operating. Failure to observe the situation ahead may lead to traffic accidents.
- Try to listen to voice prompts while driving. You can only scan the screen quickly when you are safe. However, please do not rely solely on voice guidance and only use it as a reference. If the system cannot correctly determine the current position, the voice guide will be incorrect, delayed or soundless.
- Due to the rapid development of traffic construction, the map data in this system may be inconsistent with the actual traffic instructions. Please be sure to follow the actual road conditions, site signs and other traffic rules when driving. The traffic signs and rules always take precedence of driving suggestion of the navigation system. In no case should this system substitute the driver's judgment.
- This system cannot provide some warning messages such as the local safety conditions, road conditions, emergency rescue service available or not. Do not drive in a region unless the safe conditions are ensured.
- Use this system only in the regions allowed by law. Some national/local regulations may prohibit the use of video and navigation screen within the driver's view field.

**CAUTIONS****■ During driving**

- Do not disassemble this product or make modifications without permission, which may lead to accidents, fires, electric shocks, etc.
- If the system enters foreign matters or overflows with water and causes abnormal conditions, please stop using it immediately and contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China Auto. If it continues to be used, it may lead to failure.
- Do not use it when the screen is not displayed or no sound is produced.
- When wiping the multimedia display screen, please put the engine switch in MIG-OFF mode, and use soft flat cloth. Rough rags, chemical rags or organic reagents (alcohol, benzene, disinfectant, etc.) may damage or deteriorate the panel. Do not use them.
- During driving, the volume should be adjusted to the condition outside the car. If the sound can not be adjusted

The situation outside the car, which may cause accidents.

**Caution**

**■ At present, all vehicle navigation systems have certain limitations. Satellite conditions, road structure, vehicle conditions and others may affect the accuracy of vehicle positioning. This will affect the normal functioning of the system. If you have any questions, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW.**

**■ When Failure Arises**

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

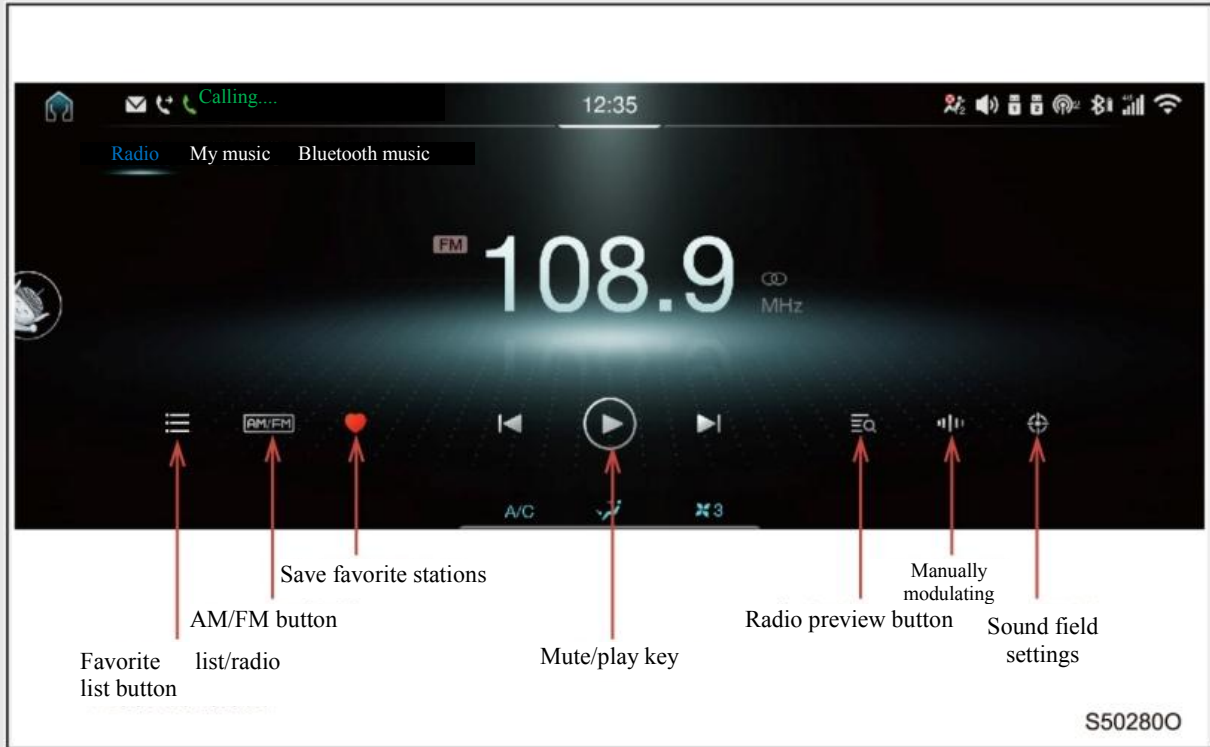
**■ Network connection quality**

The quality of network connection will vary due to the continuous change of antenna position, the difference of signal strength and the influence of nearby objects (such as trains and transmitting stations). It is difficult to maintain perfect reception quality.

**■ As navigation versions are constantly being updated, the actual operation interface may differ from the schematic. Please refer to the latest version.**

5.4 Radio  
Using the radio

Radio has two wave bands: FM and AM.



How to enter the radio screen:

Method 1: touch [multi-media] on the screen and select [radio] to access My music.

Method 2: press [MOD] on the steering wheel and switch to radio interface.

### Searching for channels



- Manually modulating

Touch/drag the frequency bar to carry out manual tuning.



- Manually searching

Manually search for channels by tapping the screen buttons  and .

- Preview and select stations

Preview the stations through the screen key . Touching the screen key  while previewing will stop the preview.

- List update

Touch the radio interface screen button  to enter the radio station list interface. After selecting [AM radio station list] or [FM radio station list], touch the screen button . The system will automatically search for valid radio stations in the current band and store them in the radio station list. Touch the screen button [Cancel] to stop the search.



### Selecting channels

- List of channels

Touch the radio interface screen key; Third, enter the station list interface and select the stations in the list to play.



### Collecting channels

The system supports to save channels in the following ways:

- Touch the button  on the radio interface screen to store the currently playing station to the list of favorite stations.
- Touch the button  on the back screen of a station in the station list to store the current station in the favorite station list.

### Editing the list of channels

#### ■ Favorite stations

Delete radio station = in the list interface of favorite radio stations, press the screen button  to enter the editing mode, select the radio station to be deleted in the list or press the screen button [select all], press the screen button  to delete the selected radio station.

#### ■ Antenna

The radio antenna is built into the shark fin antenna-



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Reduce the possibility of traffic accidents

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switches on the steering wheel to prevent any accident.

#### ■ During driving

- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. If the sound is adjusted so that the condition outside the car cannot be heard, accidents may occur.
- Do not use it when the screen is not displayed or no sound is produced.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For safety, do not use this function to distract attention and hinder safe driving. Ignoring the road and traffic conditions will lead to accidents.



### Caution

#### ■ Receiving sensitivity

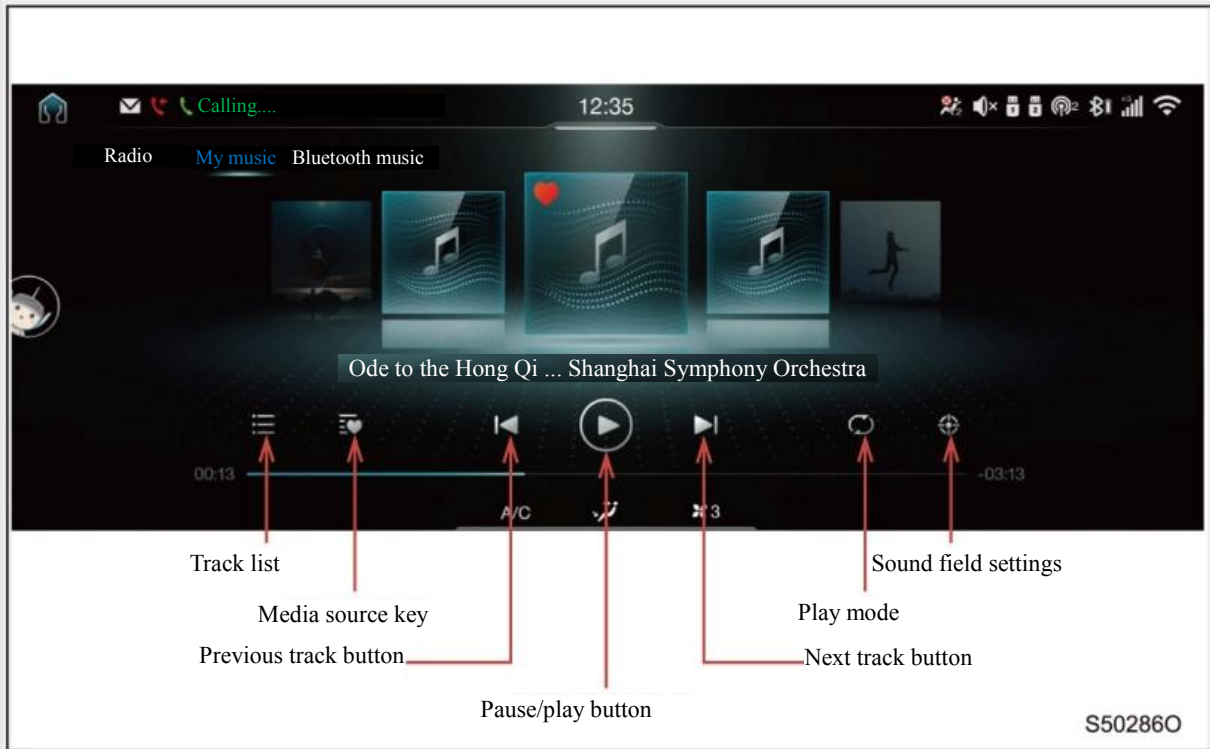
It is difficult to maintain perfect reception at all times due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains and transmitters.

#### ■ When Failure Arises

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

5.5. Music  
My music play

The audio play main interface includes the artist name, track name and album cover.




Methods for entering music interface

Method 1: touch [multi-media] on the screen and select [radio] to access My music.

Method 2: press [MOD] on the steering wheel and switch to radio interface.

### Play control

- Pause/Play

Tap the screen button 



- Play progress control

Touch/drag the progress bar to adjust the playing progress (the progress bar cannot be adjusted when the media source is Bluetooth).

- Switching tracks

Swipe left or right to switch the cover of the track to select the previous / next track to play

- Track list



Touch the music interface screen button  to enter the song list interface, select tracks in the corresponding media source for playing or touch the song list interface screen button  to search tracks for playing.

### Play mode

Touch the play mode button to select among single cycle, cycle play and random play modes.

### Favorite audio

The system supports the following methods to save tracks:

- Touch the music interface screen key  and save the current play list to the favorite list.
- Touch the button  on the back of a track in the song list to store the current track in the favorite list.



Note: the track without song information cannot be added to the favorite list.

If the favorite list is exceeded, the system will give the prompting message.



### Edit favorite list

#### ■ Favorite list

Delete a music: In the favorite list interface, click the screen button  to enter the edit mode, select the music to be deleted in the list or click [Select All] button on the screen and click the screen button  to delete the selected music.

### Media source

Touch the media source button to switch among Favorites, Local, USB1 and USB2.

#### ■ About the format

- The system supports audio files in the formats of WAV, MP3 and WMA.

#### ■ About USB tone source

- The system supports USB memory (U disk) in FAT16/FAT32/exFAT/NTFS format and does not support USBHUB0
- The limit of the number of files in USB memory supports 2,500 audio and video files in formats, excluding formats not supported.

#### ■ About Bluetooth music

- Corresponding to A2DP and AVRCP (1.5).
- If AVRCP version does not match or the Bluetooth equipment does not correspond, no play will occur even if the Bluetooth equipment is requested.
- If the Bluetooth music source is selected but there is no sound playing, please confirm whether the Bluetooth mobile phone has turned on the Bluetooth music player and started playing.
- Whether the relevant operation of the music mode supports dependence on the Bluetooth device.

**CAUTIONS****■ Reduce the possibility of traffic accidents**

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switch on the steering wheel to prevent accidents.

**■ During driving**

- During driving, the volume should be adjusted so that the conditions outside the car can be heard. If the sound is adjusted so that the condition outside the car cannot be heard, accidents may occur.
- Do not use it when the screen is not displayed or no sound is produced.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For safety, do not use this function to distract attention and hinder safe driving. Ignoring the road and traffic conditions will lead to accidents.

**Caution****■ Prevent damage to USB devices and their terminals**

- Do not leave USB devices in the car. The temperature inside the car may rise and cause damage to USB devices.
- When an USB device is connected, do not press or apply unnecessary pressure.
- Do not insert foreign matter into the interface.

**■ Compatibility**

Some equipment may not work properly due to its own compatibility problems.

**■ Ensure normal system identification**

A poor quality USB device will cause the system to fail to recognize it. It is recommended to use a better quality USB device.

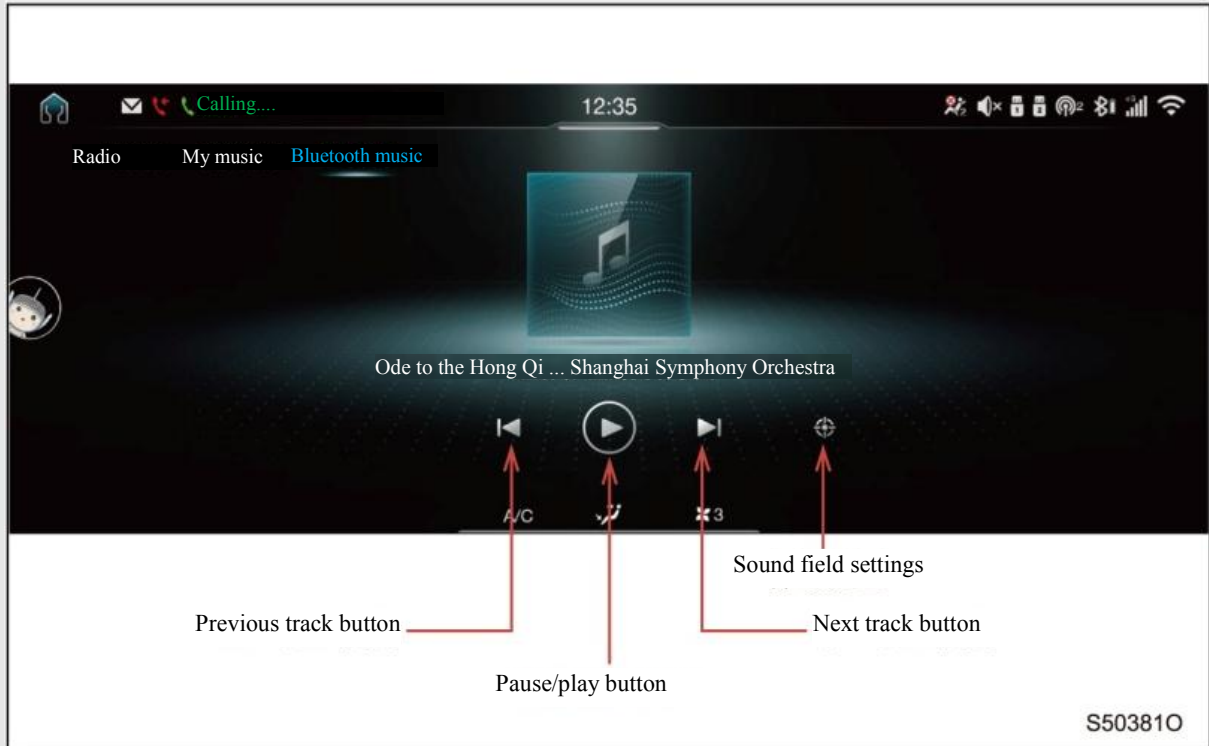
**■ When Failure Arises**

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

## 5.6. Bluetooth Music

### Bluetooth music play

The system supports Bluetooth music play, and you can go to the Bluetooth music play interface by starting the Bluetooth music. You can control the play via the buttons on the Bluetooth music play interfaces.




The way to enter the Bluetooth music playing interface is to connect Bluetooth, press the screen button [multimedia], and select the Bluetooth music media source to enter the Bluetooth music interface.

Note: if the Bluetooth is not connected, connect the Bluetooth through the system settings; after it is connected, go to the Bluetooth music play interface.

### Play control

#### ■ Pause/Play

Tap the screen button 

#### ■ Switching tracks

Touch the on - screen button and both can select up/down tracks to play.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Reduce the possibility of traffic accidents

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switch on the steering wheel to prevent accidents.

#### ■ During driving

- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. If the sound is adjusted so that the condition outside the car cannot be heard, accidents may occur.
- Do not use it when the screen is not displayed or no sound is produced.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For safety, do not use this function to distract attention and hinder safe driving. Ignoring the road and traffic conditions will lead to accidents.

### Caution

#### ■ Prevent battery discharge

Do not turn on the system for a long time when the vehicle is not started.

#### ■ Compatibility

Some equipment may not work properly due to its own compatibility problems.

#### ■ When getting off

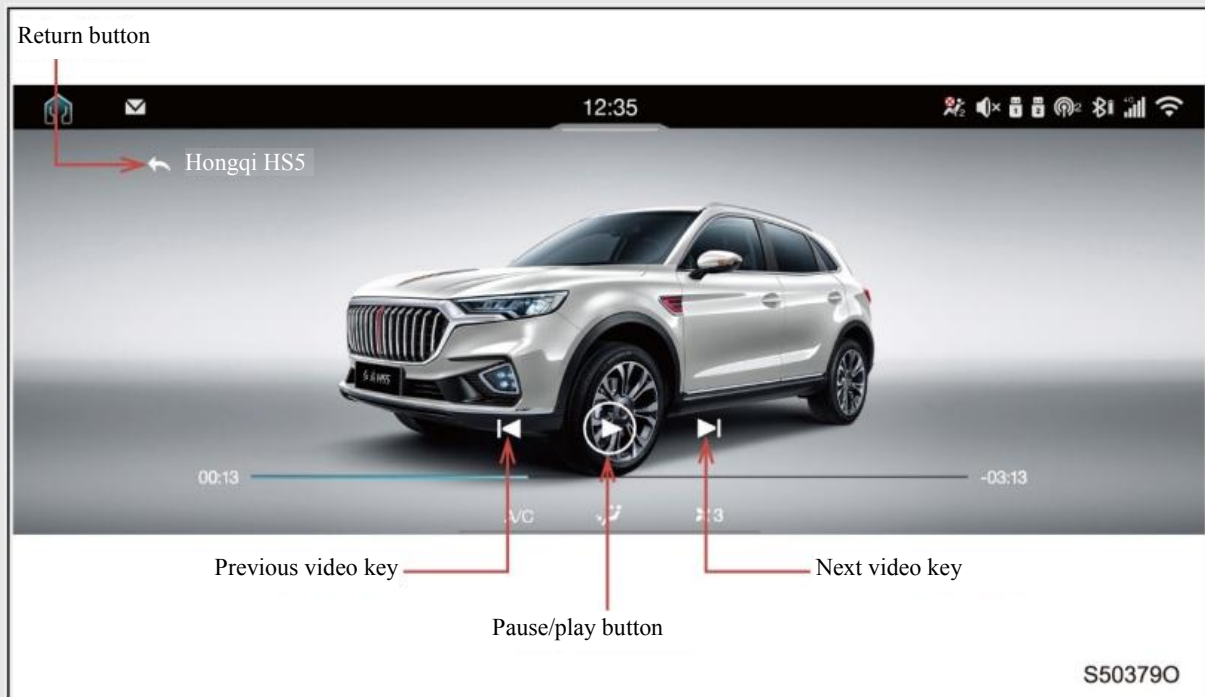
Do not leave your mobile telephone or other belongings behind in the vehicle, which would be damaged because of temperature increase in the vehicle.

#### ■ When Failure Arises

If the problem cannot be solved, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW.

5.7. Video  
Video play


When a USB device with video files is connected, you can play videos in the multimedia display.



Method to access video interface: touch the screen key [HONGQI SMART LINK], select [video] to access the video media source list interface and select the video to play to access the video play interface.

## Play control

### ■ Pause/Play

Tap the screen button 

### ■ Fast backward/fast forward

By tapping/dragging the progress bar, you can control the play progress.

Sliding on the screen side to side will control the play progress.

### ■ Adjust the volume

On the screen right side, sliding up and down can regulate the volume.


### ■ Adjust brightness

On the screen left side, sliding up and down can adjust the screen brightness.


### ■ Switch video

Touch the on - screen button  and  select the up/down video file to play.



### Video search

Select the corresponding media source list and touch the screen button  to search and play.

### ■ Return

Touch the screen button  in the video playing interface to return to the search or file list or file management interface.

## History

Delete history: in the history interface, press the screen button  to enter editing mode, select the video to be deleted in the list or press the screen button [select all], press the screen button  to delete the selected video (do not press when the file does not exist).

### ■ About the format

The system supports MPG, MPEG, VOB, MP4, AVI, 3GP, MKV, MOV, WMV, FLV format video files.

 **CAUTIONS**
**■ Reduce the possibility of traffic accidents**

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switch on the steering wheel to prevent accidents.

**■ During driving**

- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. If the sound is adjusted so that the condition outside the car cannot be heard, accidents may occur.
- Do not use it when the screen is not displayed or no sound is produced.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For safety, do not use this function to distract attention and hinder safe driving. Ignoring the road and traffic conditions will lead to accidents.

 **Caution**
**■ Prevent damage to USB devices and their terminals**

- Do not leave USB devices in the car. The temperature inside the car may rise and cause damage to USB devices.
- When an USB device is connected, do not press or apply unnecessary pressure.
- Do not insert foreign matter into the interface.

**■ Compatibility**

Some equipment may not work properly due to its own compatibility problems.

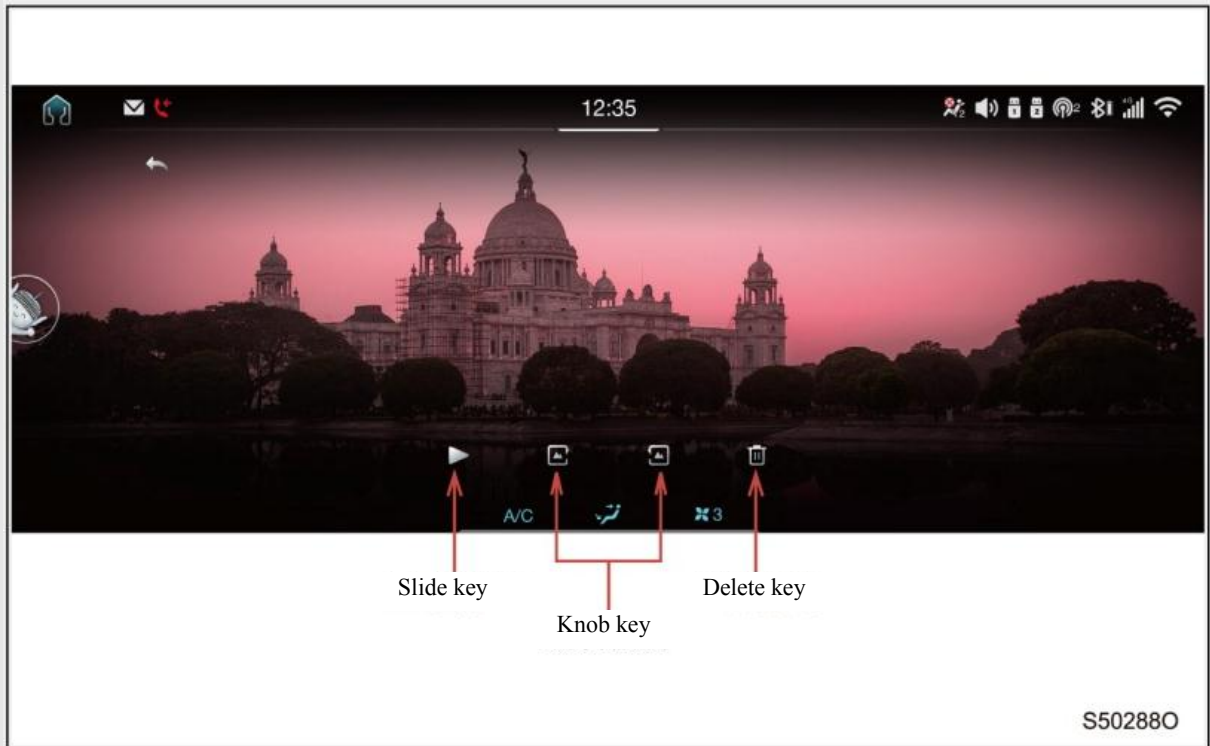
**■ Ensure normal system identification**

A poor quality USB device will cause the system to fail to recognize it. It is recommended to use a better quality USB device.

**■ When Failure Arises**

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

When a USB device with image files is connected, you can view images in the multimedia display.



How to enter the picture viewing interface: press the screen button "Hong Qi Intelligence Link" and select "Picture" to enter the picture media source list interface and select the picture to view to enter the picture browsing interface.



## Image viewing

### ■ Slide play

Touch the screen button  to enter slideshow mode.

In slide mode, the image cannot be magnified or reduced.

### ■ Image zoom in/zoom out

The image can be magnified and reduced by the double-finger scaling.

### ■ Rotating images

By tapping the screen button  or , you can adjust the image angle.


The angle of swing is 90°.

### ■ Manually view images

Swipe to the left on the screen to view the previous image; swipe to the right on the screen to view the next image.

When switching, the image is displayed in the default size.


### ■ Image list browse

Touch the button  on the picture interface screen to enter the picture list interface and browse the pictures by sliding the picture list up or down.

When an image is not viewable, the default picture or damaged ID will be displayed.

## Image editing

### ■ Delete image

In the image interface, touch the screen key  to delete the image being viewed.

The image cannot be deleted under USB mode.

### ■ The system supports images in the formats of BMP, JPG and PNG.

**CAUTIONS****■ Reduce the possibility of traffic accidents**

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switch on the steering wheel to prevent accidents.

**■ During driving**

- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. If the sound is adjusted so that the condition outside the car cannot be heard, accidents may occur.
- Do not use it when the screen is not displayed or no sound is produced.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For safety, do not use this function to distract attention and hinder safe driving. Ignoring the road and traffic conditions will lead to accidents.

**Caution****■ Prevent damage to USB devices and their terminals**

- Do not leave USB devices in the car. The temperature inside the car may rise and cause damage to USB devices.
- When the USB device is connected, do not press it or impose unnecessary pressure to it.
- Do not insert foreign matter into the interface.

**■ Compatibility**

Some equipment may not work properly due to its own compatibility problems.

**■ Ensure normal system identification**

A poor quality USB device will cause the system to fail to recognize it. It is recommended to use a better quality USB device.

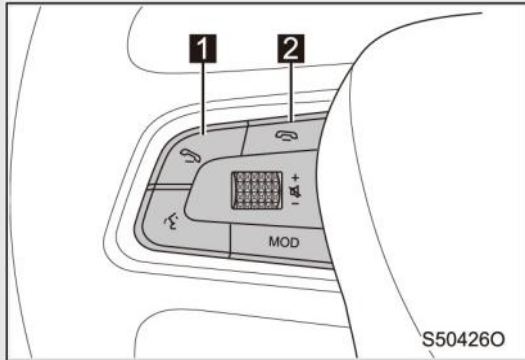
**■ When Failure Arises**

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

**The hands-free system allows you to use the phone call function of a mobile telephone without touching it.**



The system supports Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that enables a mobile phone to wirelessly connect with a hands-free system to make/receive calls.

■ **Phone switch**



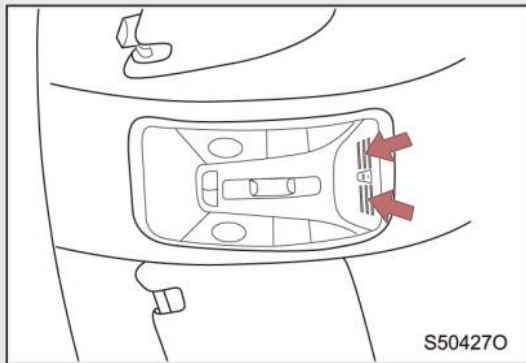
- 1** Call answer key
- 2** Call hang up key

See the following table for specific Bluetooth functions:

Key	Description	Function
	Press	To answer the phone through Bluetooth, press the phone application; when there is call in, press it to answer.
	Press	If there is call out, in or talking, press this can hang up.

In order to use the hands-free system, a Bluetooth® phone must be registered in the system. (See P.252)

■ **Bluetooth microphone**



**Make the other party hear the sound.**

■ **When using the hands-free system**

- The audio system will be muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - The cell phone signal is bad.
  - When driving on unpaved roads.
  - When driving at high speeds.
  - If a window is open.
  - If the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone.
  - If the air conditioning blower delivers too high air volume.

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate:**

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®.
- If the mobile phone is switched off or in flight mode.
- If you are outside service range.
- If the mobile phone is not connected.
- If the mobile phone's battery is low.

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery power/signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the mobile phone itself.

### ■ About Bluetooth®



Bluetooth® is the trademark for Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

### ■ Compatible type

The Bluetooth hands-free system is only compatible with Bluetooth mobile phones of main brands that have passed the Bluetooth certification (SIG) and are sold through regular channels.

#### CAUTIONS

##### ■ Reduce the possibility of traffic accidents

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switch on the steering wheel to prevent accidents.

##### ■ During driving

- Do not use the mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth® system.
- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. Otherwise, it might lead to accident.
- Please do not use the screen when a fault occurs to the display or sound system.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.

#### Caution

##### ■ Compatibility

Some equipment may not work properly due to its own compatibility problems.

##### ■ When getting off

Do not leave your mobile telephone behind in the vehicle, which would be damaged because of temperature increase in the vehicle.

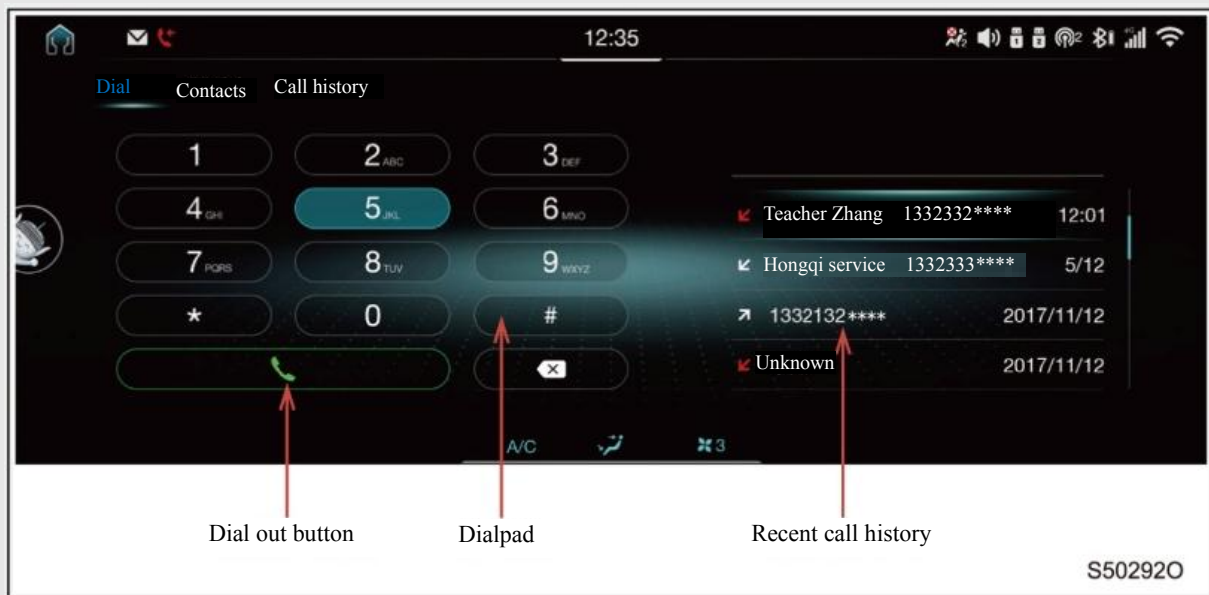
##### ■ When Failure Arises

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

## 5.10. Bluetooth Telephone

### Using the Bluetooth® telephone

The system supports the functions of making and receiving calls, hanging up, checking the contacts, checking the call history, etc.



There are two methods to enter into the Telephone interface:

Method 1: Connect Bluetooth and press the button on the steering wheel to enter the phone interface.

Method 2: connect the Bluetooth and touch the screen key [phone] to access the phone interface.

Note: If Bluetooth is not connected, follow the guide on the screen to connect a Bluetooth phone and enter the Bluetooth phone interface when finished. (See P.218)

## Contacts

### ■ Save contacts


After the mobile telephone is bound to the Bluetooth system successfully, the system will automatically download the contact information from the bound telephone.

Mobile phones can store up to 4 Bluetooth device contact lists.


### ■ View contacts

Press the key [contact] on the phone main interface to view the contact list of mobile phone.

### ■ Introduce contacts

The contacts can be introduced through the contact interface screen key 

### ■ Search contacts

The contacts can be searched through the contact interface screen key 

### ■ Delete contacts

The system supports manually deleting a matching phone and synchronously deleting the phone's contacts in the system: when there are more than 4 matching phones, the previously stored contacts need to be manually deleted.

#### Caution

- **Contacts will only appear on the screen if the phone supports the contacts download function.**

## Call history

### ■ Call history downloading

After the mobile phone is successfully bound to the bluetooth system, the system automatically downloads the call history information from the bound phone.

### ■ Call history viewing

Through the phone main interface screen button [call history] can check the mobile phone has received.

Missed or dialed calls.

#### Caution

- **The call history will only be displayed on the screen if the phone supports the call history download function and the download is manually allowed.**

### Making a call

Methods to make a call:

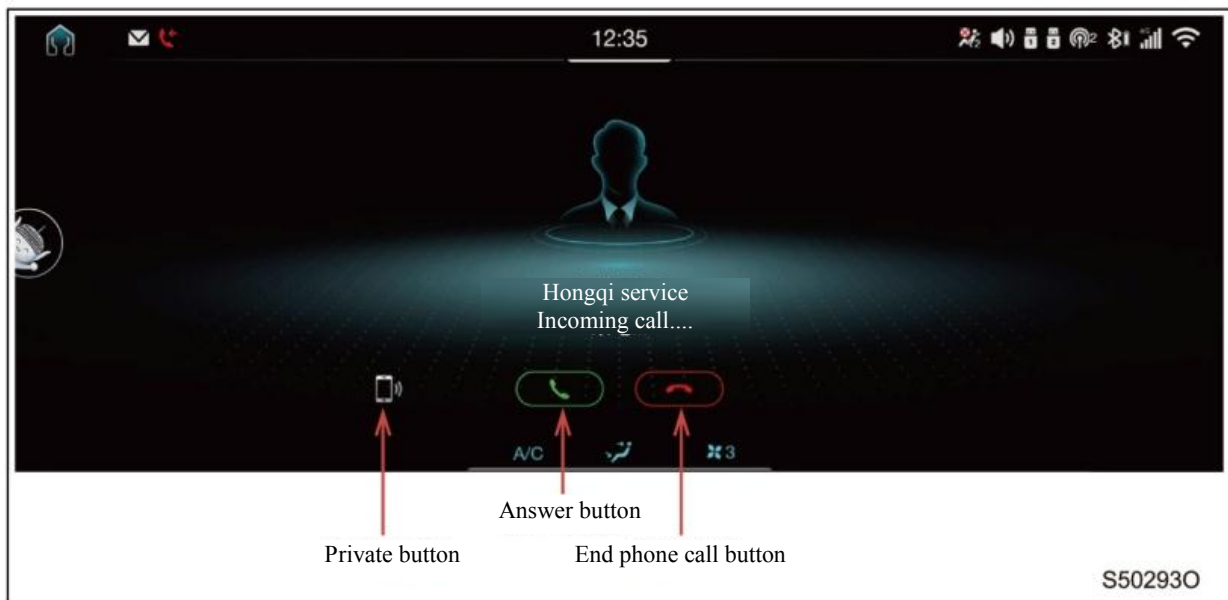
Method 1: Dial through contacts or call history.

Method 2: Enter the number through the dialpad in the phone interface 🔍 and dial.

Method 3: search the contact through the contact interface screen key 🔍 and dial.

### Answering/ending the incoming call

When there is an incoming call, the caller ID will pop up.



Methods to answer/end an incoming call:

Method 1: Touch the screen key 📞/📞/📞 to answer/hang up the phone.

Method 2: Press the steering wheel button 📞/📞 to answer/hang up the phone.

### Hands-free mode shift

During the call, press the on - screen button 📞 to switch between private/hands - free.

Because some mobile phones do not support the private/hand-free shift, the Bluetooth connection might be off during a private/hand-free shift.

### Microphone mute

During the call, by tapping the screen button 📞, you can shift between the microphone mute status and non-mute status. When the microphone is mute, the other party of the call will not listen any sound.



### ■ Bluetooth automatic connection

After the bluetooth function is turned on, if a connected bluetooth device is detected, the bluetooth device will be connected automatically.

### ■ Privacy protection

The contact person and call history of each mobile phone can only be displayed after the mobile phone is successfully connected. In the unconnected state, the contact person and call history of any mobile phone cannot be viewed.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Reduce the possibility of traffic accidents

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switch on the steering wheel to prevent accidents.

### ■ During driving

- Do not use the mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth® system.
- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. Otherwise, it might lead to accident.
- Please do not use the screen when a fault occurs to the display or sound system.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.



## Caution

### ■ Compatibility

Some equipment may not work properly due to its own compatibility problems.

### ■ When getting off

Do not leave your mobile telephone behind in the vehicle, which would be damaged because of temperature increase in the vehicle.

### ■ When Failure Arises

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

**Users can achieve voice control to the system via the voice recognition function.  
Voice control functions include: radio, music, Bluetooth telephone, navigation and A/C control.**

### Voice recognition triggering

Methods Press the steering wheel key 'ⓧ' to trigger the speech recognition system.

Method II: by speaking the wake-up instruction, trigger the voice recognition system.

The voice recognition main waking words can be set in the system setting of audio system.

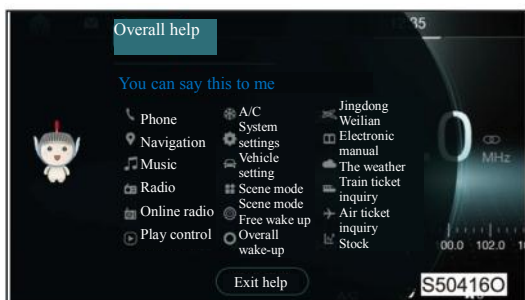
(See P.219)

After activating the voice recognition, speak out the voice command to control the system function. For the voice command information, refer to the help interface of voice recognition.

### Voice recognition help

Method 1: After waking up the intelligent voice system, if the user does not speak within 5s (seconds), it will jump directly to the voice help interface.

Method 2: The user can say "voice help" directly to enter the voice help interface.



For example:


The user says the voice command "FM88.0", and when the system recognizes the voice command, it enters the radio application to play FM88.0.

### Voice recognition exit

Method 1: After triggering the voice recognition system, the system will automatically exit the voice recognition if there is no identifiable instruction.

Method 2: The voice recognition is exited after the normal execution of voice command is completed.

Method 3: After triggering the speech recognition system, if the input command is invalid, the speech system will give a prompt. If the second input is still invalid, the system will automatically exit the speech recognition.

Method 4: Touch the steering wheel button  to exit the voice recognition.

Method 5: Touch "Flag Treasure" to slide to the left of the screen or click on the non-speech area of the screen to exit speech recognition.

Method 6: Say the exit command to exit the voice recognition.



#### Caution

- **The speech recognition results are for reference only.**
- **Please use standard and clear Mandarin, avoid use the system in a noisy environment to prevent incorrect recognition results.**
- **Try to avoid using voice recognition when driving. If using voice recognition, please try to avoid looking at the screen to avoid danger.**

### The vehicle can be controlled and operated remotely with the mobile APP

- Open the logged - in mobile phone on - board Internet APP and enter the APP homepage.



#### 1 My vehicle

Information viewing: You can view the driving behavior analysis, navigation, health manager and electronic fence, and can view the license plate number, remaining oil and residual traffic information above the main interface.

Remote control: It can be used to operate remote control functions, such as locking, unlocking, vehicle finding, air conditioning, starting, windows, lights, sunroof and so on. Driving behavior analysis: View and share the statistic data for driving behavior.

Navigation: it can perform functions like interest point searching, car navigation and remote car searching.

Health manager: can query and operate one-button physical examination, car maintenance, car maintenance, service point searching, annual inspection and license replacement, one-button complaints and other functions.

Electronic fence: you can add and view electronic fences.

#### Finding

View and participate in interactions with recommendations, hotspots, circles, new and event information.

#### 3 Vehicle services

It can be used to view and operate electronic manuals, electronic fences, call the road rescue, one-click call, violation of regulations, model showroom, test drive appointment and so on.

#### 4 Friends

Chat with friends who focus on each other.

#### 5 My

In my interface, you can operate and view check-ins, followers, fans, posts, messages, my vehicle, emergency contact setting, password change, frequent question feedback, about us and so on.

Touch the Setting button in the upper left corner of interface to enter the Setting page, which can perform PIN code management, password modification, cache clearing and logout, etc.

Touch the message button in the upper right corner of the page to enter the message page to view and operate vehicle reminders, synchronous navigation, maintenance suggestions, system messages, vehicle technology upgrades, my comments, marketing promotions, interactive messages, etc.

## Login



By entering the mobile phone No. and your password, and tapping the phone screen button [Login], you can log into the system.

If you forget the password, by tapping [Forget the password], you can retrieve your password.

### ■ APP downloading

About the downloading and installation of the mobile APP, please ask the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

### ■ Login information

Users will provide their personal information to dealers for real name authentication, and the system will give the APP login information and the PIN information on vehicle control to the user after the real name authentication; for details, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

### ■ On-board interconnection version

Because on-board interconnection system versions keep updated, the actual operating interface might differ from the above schematic diagram; the latest version will prevail.

### ■ Using mobile APP

"FAQ" can help users quickly understand and use mobile phone APPs.

### ■ Remote start

- Before starting remotely, please ensure that all doors, windows, sunroofs, trunk lid and hood are closed and the vehicle is locked.
- After the remote start, when the vehicle anti-theft system is released, the engine will stop running.
- After 5 times of remote starting, the engine switch shall be switched to power down the vehicle and lock the vehicle. After 5 minutes, the next remote starting can be carried out only when the vehicle is in the sleep state.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **When your mobile phone is missing**

If the mobile phone is lost, the risk of vehicle theft will obviously increase. Please keep it properly. If necessary, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of FAW China.

■ **Network connection quality**

The quality of network connection will vary due to the continuous change of antenna position, the difference of signal strength and the influence of nearby objects (such as trains and transmitting stations). It is difficult to maintain perfect reception quality.

 **Caution**

■ **Limit length for use**

When using APPs, some functions need to be given corresponding limits, and ensure that third-party tools do not prohibit the network limits of APPs, otherwise the system may not work properly.

■ **When Failure Arises**

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

### 5.13. Hongqi Smart Connect E Using the Hongqi Smart Connect

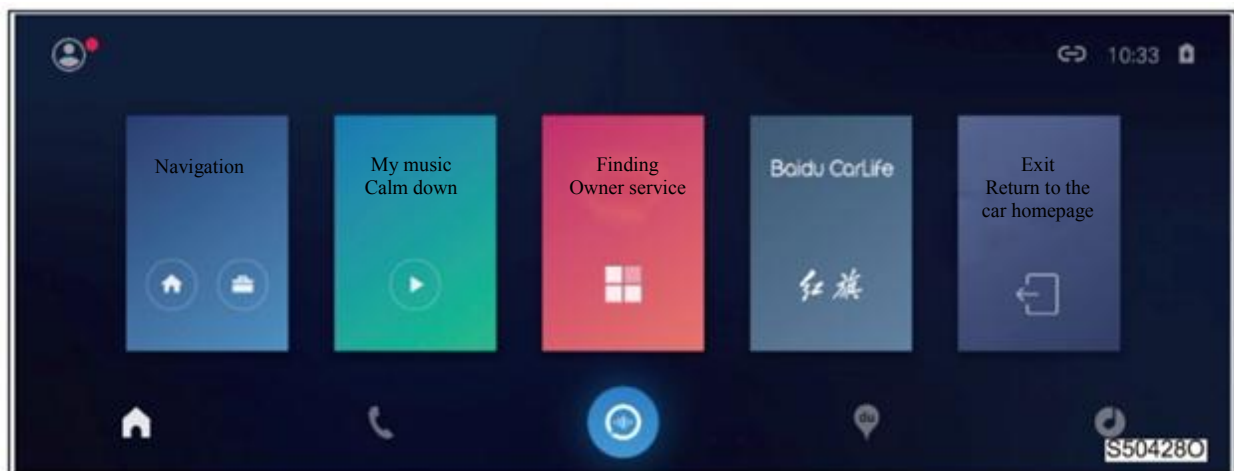
The system can operate additional extended functions like Baidu CarLife, road rescue, information consultation and Hong qi micro-application, etc.



The method of entering the Hong Qi smart link interface is to press the screen button "Hong Qi smart link".

#### Baidu CarLife

Baidu's CarLife function connects the mobile phone with the sound system, extending the functions inside the mobile phone to the use of the vehicle audio system, allowing users to enjoy convenient and efficient customized services inside the vehicle.



When connecting to Baidu CarLife, you must connect your phone to car USB1. After starting Baidu CarLife successfully, the display screen will display the interface of mobile phone in real time for touching and dragging, etc. These operations are consistent with the operations on the mobile phone.

### Roadside Assistance

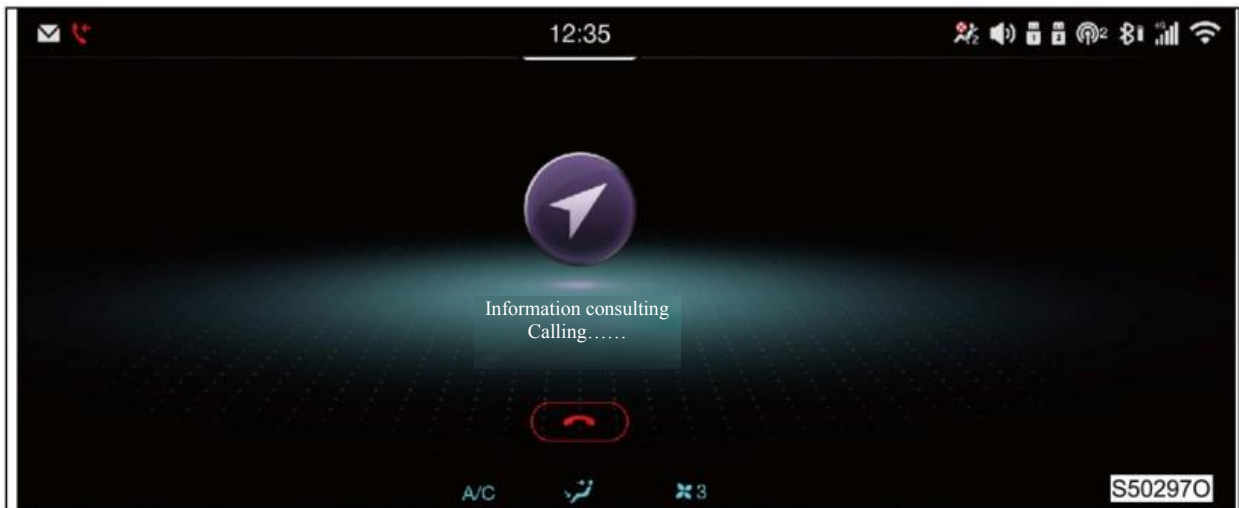
When the vehicle is in trouble and needs emergency rescue, the user can contact the rescue service through road rescue (B-Call).



When the background receives the user's rescue request, the rescue service will be properly arranged to solve the troubles for user.

### Information consulting

When the vehicle is driven in a strange road, the navigation service can be accessed with I Call.

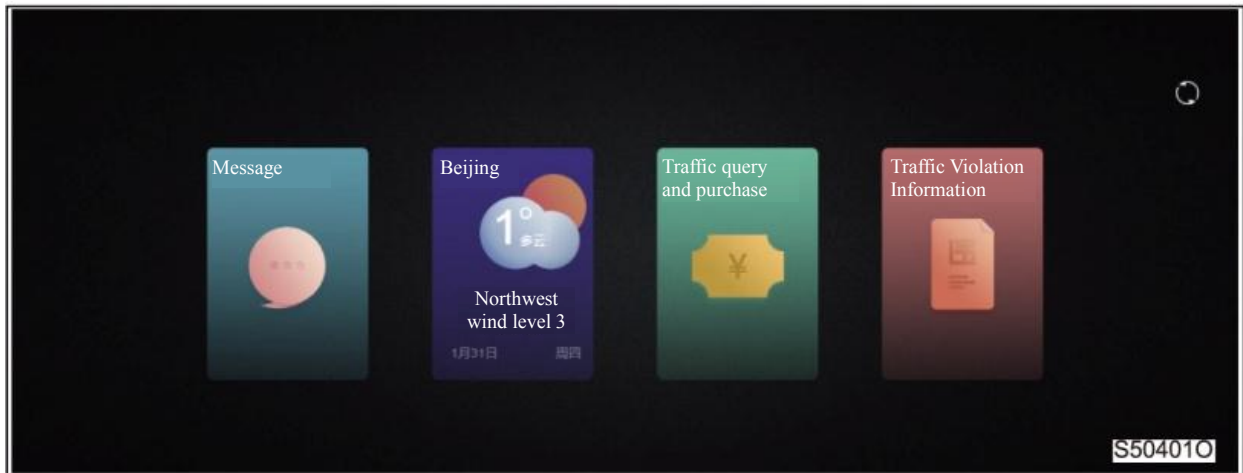


When the background receives the user's navigation request, it will help the user to perform the destination query and navigation.



### Hong qi micro application

Users can inquire about information, weather, violation, etc. through the Hong Qi applications, and can inquire about traffic and purchase.



Select the content on the screen to enter the corresponding interface, operate and use as per the system prompts.

### QQ music/Himalaya

QQ Music/Himalaya can provide users with comfortable and convenient personalized services to improve driving pleasure.

#### ■ QQ music



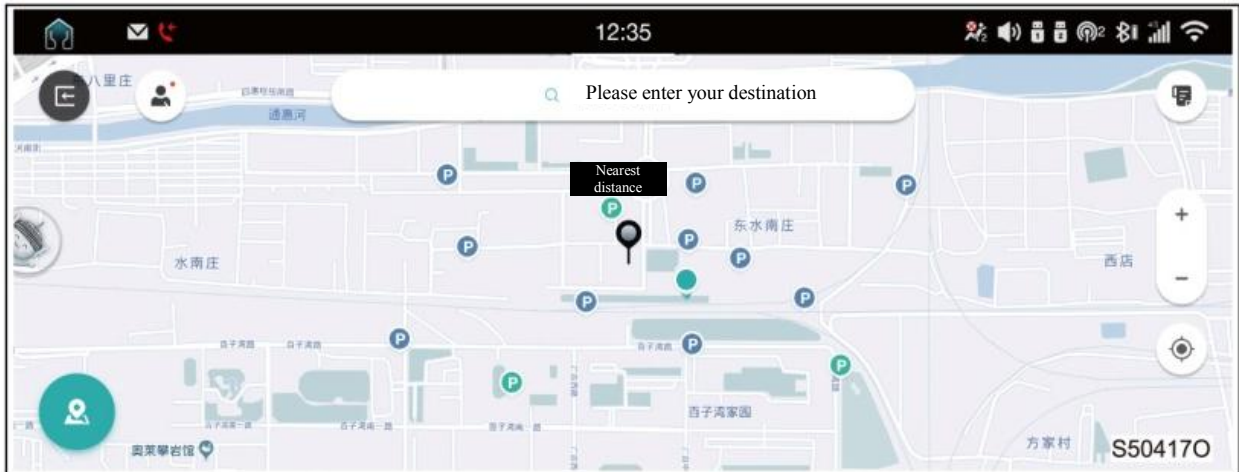
#### ■ Himalaya



Select the content on the screen to enter the corresponding interface, operate and use as per the system prompts.

### Stop quick payment

Users can pay for parking quickly by stopping the quick payment.



Select the content on the screen to enter the corresponding interface, operate and use as per the system prompts.

### Smart home

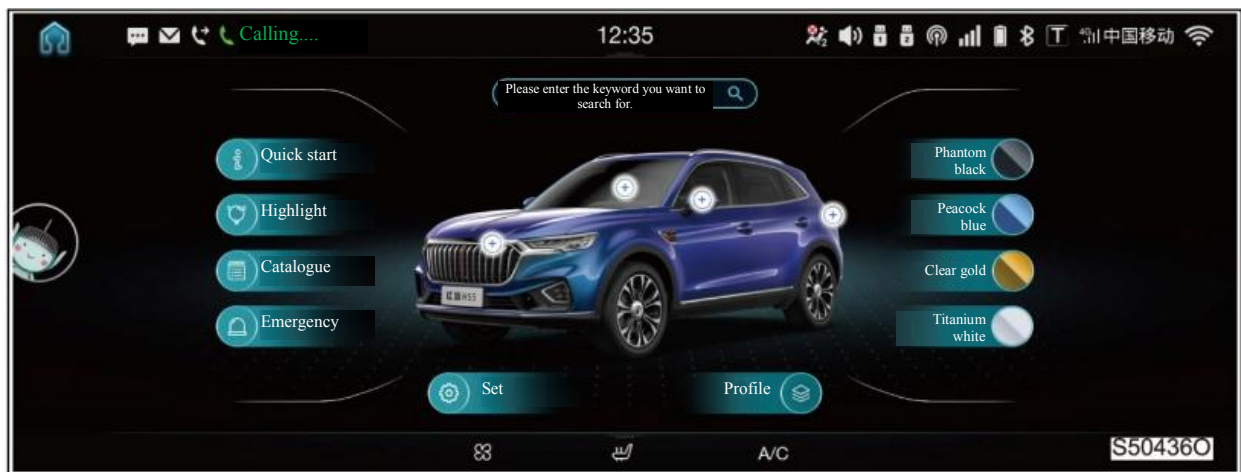
Users can experience one - stop and convenient landing experience of smart home through smart home.



Select the content on the screen to enter the corresponding interface, operate and use as per the system prompts.

## Electronic manual

Electronic manual



Select the content on the screen to enter the corresponding interface, operate and use as per the system prompts.

### ■ CarLife phone requirements

Please visit <http://carlife.baidu.com> for specific supported mobile phone models and system versions.

Prompts: CarLife's compatibility with Apple phones depends on the version released by Apple's official software.

### ■ in progress of using CarLife

If CarLife on the mobile phone is switched to the background during use, the car terminal won't display the real-time interface of mobile phone, but CarLife button will be displayed. After touching it, CarLife on the mobile phone will be switched to the foreground, and CarLife will continue to work normally.

### ■ CarLife version

Due to the continuous updating of CarLife version, the actual operation interface may be different from the schematic. Please refer to the latest version.

### ■ Before connecting the phone

Any phone with Android operating system needs to enable USB debugging functions and MTP mode in advance. If not turned on, the phone won't be recognized.

### ■ Connection stability

The connection stability is related to the quality of mobile phone data cable. If there is a connection problem, please re-plug or replace it with a data cable with better quality.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Reduce the possibility of traffic accidents

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switch on the steering wheel to prevent accidents.

### ■ During driving

- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For safety, do not use this function to distract attention and hinder safe driving. Ignoring the road and traffic conditions will lead to accidents.
- If the foreign matter or water falls into this system and result in abnormal situation, immediately stop using and contact the authorized dealer of FAW HONGQI. If it continues to be used, it may lead to failure.
- Do not use it when the screen is not displayed or no sound is produced.
- When wiping the multimedia display screen, please put the engine switch in IG-OFF mode, and use soft flat cloth. Rough rags, chemical rags or organic reagents (alcohol, benzene, disinfectant, etc.) may damage or deteriorate the panel. Do not use them.
- During driving, set the volume low to the level that the outside condition can be heard. If not, it may result in an accident.
- **Network connection quality**

The quality of network connection will vary due to the continuous change of antenna position, the difference of signal strength and the influence of nearby objects (such as trains and transmitting stations). It is difficult to maintain perfect reception quality.

 **Caution**

- **The speech recognition results are for reference only.**
- **Please use standard and clear Putonghua and avoid using it in noisy environment to avoid incorrect results.**
- **Try to avoid using voice recognition when driving. If using voice recognition, please try to avoid looking at the screen to avoid danger.**

■ **Prevent damage to USB devices and their terminals**

- Do not leave USB devices in the car. The temperature inside the car may rise and cause damage to USB devices.
- When an USB device is connected, do not press or apply unnecessary pressure.
- Do not insert any foreign matter to the port.

■ **Use limit**

When using CarLife, some functions need to be given corresponding limits, and ensure that third-party tools do not prohibit the network limits of CarLife, otherwise the system may not work properly.

■ **Compatibility**

Some mobile phones have their own compatibility problems and may not be able to use all the functions of CarLife normally.

■ **Ensure that the system can recognize the mobile phone normally**

It is recommended to use USB cable with good quality because poor-quality USB cable could not be identified by the system.

■ **When Failure Arises**

If the problem cannot be solved, please contact an authorized Hong Qi dealer of China FAW.

**6-1. Using the A/C System**

Fully automatic air conditioning system.....270

• Using the automatic A/C system .....272

• Manual adjustment setting.....273

• Other functions.....276

• Adjust the air outlet direction and open and close the air vents.....278

Windshield heating.....280

**6-2. Using the Interior Lamps**

List of interior lights.....281

• Front row of interior lights.....282

• Front reading light .....282

• Rear reading light .....283

• Vanity mirror lighting .....283

**6-3. Using the Storage Units**

Storage device list .....284

• Glove box .....285

• Front central storage box .....286

• Left lower guard plate sundries box.....286

• Cup holder .....287

• Bottle rack and sundry bucket.....288

• Document pocket.....288

• Glasses box.....289

Trunk device .....290

• Cargo hook .....290

• Luggage net.....290

**6-4. Other Interior Equipment**

On-board wireless charging\* .....291

Sun visor .....292

Paper holder .....293

Vanity mirror .....294

Cigarette lighter.....295

Power socket .....296

Seat temperature control\* .....298

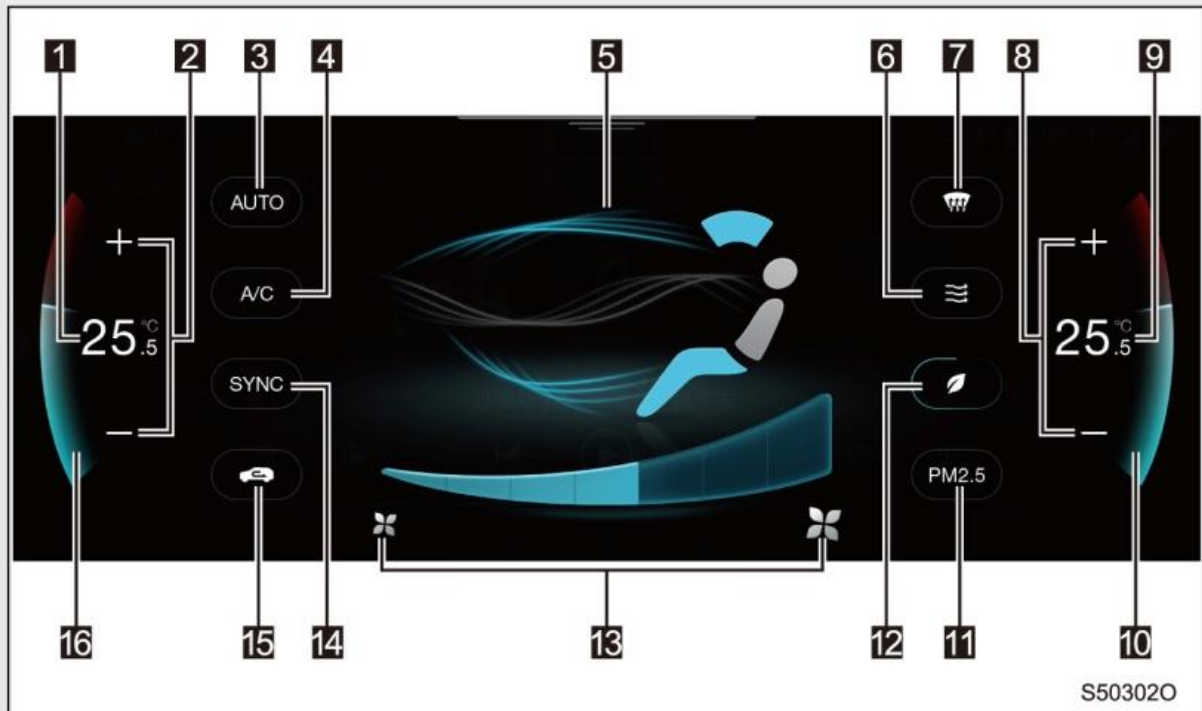
Rear center armrest.....300

Roof grab handle .....301

Coat hook .....302

This vehicle is equipped with the dual-zone A/C system, which can set the interior temperature according to passengers in the vehicle by combining with the current interior temperature, environment temperature, sunlight intensity, vehicle speed, water temperature and other environmental parameters; it can provide a driving and riding environment for passengers by automatically regulating the air outlet temperature, A/C air volume, air outlet mode and air inlet mode.

► Air conditioning operation interface of sound system



**2** Driver side temperature display

**3** AUTO button

**5** Air outlet mode button

**7** Front windshield defroster/defogger button

**9** Front passenger side temperature display

**11** PM2.5 button

**13** Air volume setting button

**15** Internal/external circulation button

**2** Driver side temperature setting button

**4** A/C button

**6** Natural ventilation button

**8** Front passenger side temperature setting button

**10** Front passenger side temperature setting bar

**12** Ion purification button

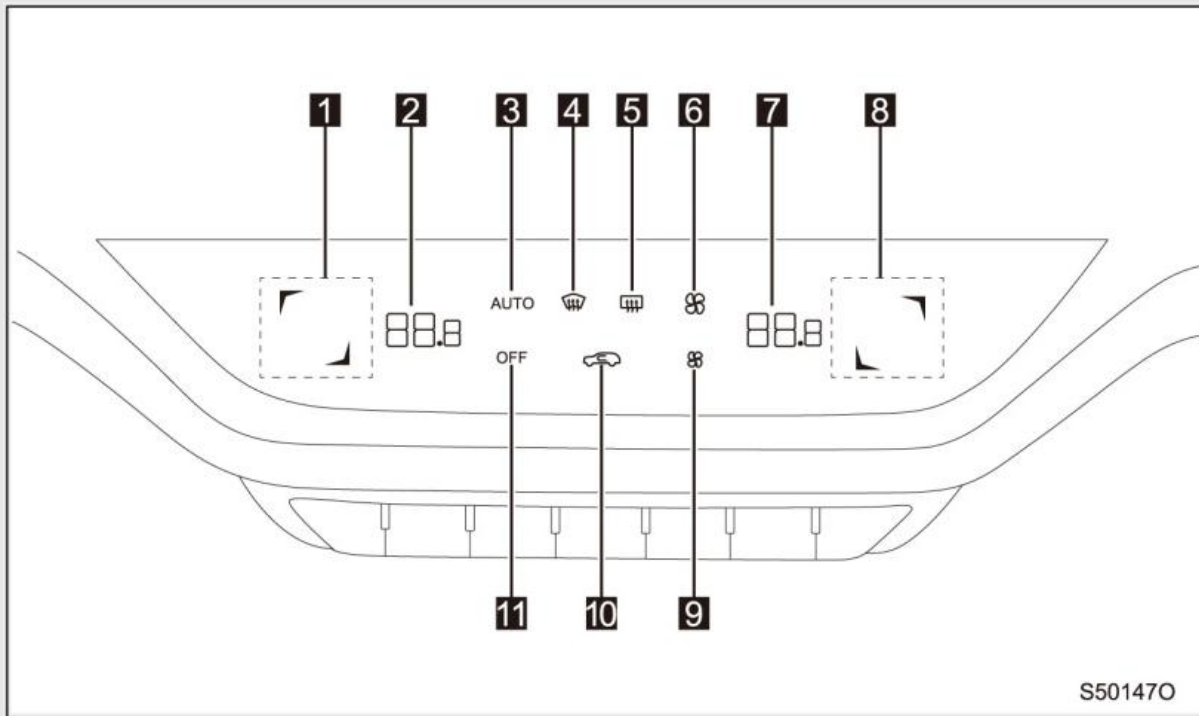
**14** Synchronizing key

**16** Driver side temperature setting bar

Touch A/C information bar at the bottom of multimedia display or swipe up to enter A/C interface. Swipe down on A/C interface to exit A/C interface. (When the functions of panoramic image\*, auto parking\*, reversing camera\* work, you can't enter A/C operating interface).



## ► Air conditioning operation interface of central control panel



**1** Driver side temperature setting button

**3** AUTO button

**5** Windshield heating button

**7** Front passenger side temperature display

**9** Air volume decrease button

**11** OFF button

**2** Driver side temperature display

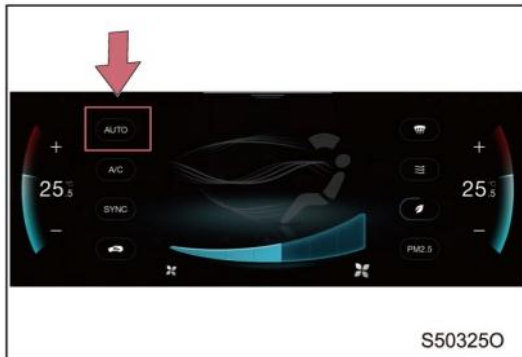
**4** Front windshield defroster/defogger button

**6** Air volume increase button

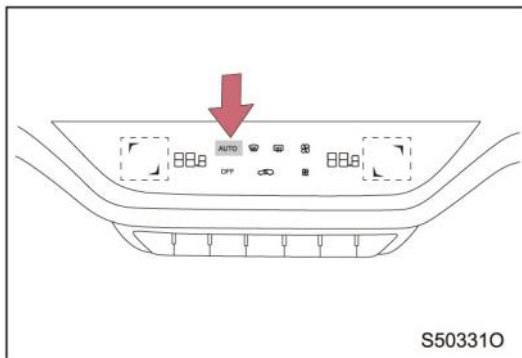
**8** Front passenger side temperature setting key

**10** Internal/external circulation button

### Using the automatic A/C system



Method 1: Touch the [AUTO] button on the multimedia display screen, and the indicator turns on to enter the automatic air conditioning mode.



Method 1: Touch the [AUTO] button on the multimedia display screen, and the indicator turns on to enter the automatic air conditioning mode.

In automatic A/C mode, you can set the temperature by touching the temperature setting button according to your personal needs, and the temperature display will display the set temperature at the same time.

#### ■ [AUTO] button indicator

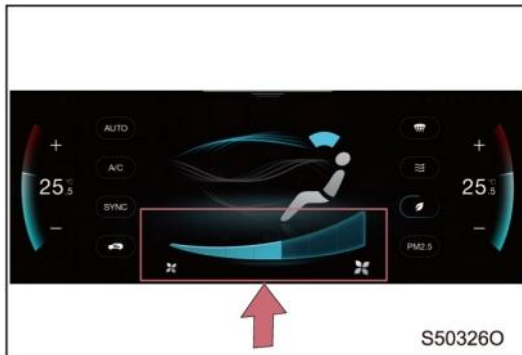
- If the air volume setting or the air outlet mode is operated, the [AUTO] button indicator goes out.

#### ■ Using the automatic mode



- Air volume is automatically adjusted according to temperature setting and environmental conditions. As a result, the following may occur:
  - In summer, when selecting the low temperature setting, the system will automatically switch to internal circulation mode.
  - After the button pressed, the blower may stay in low-gear operating status and stop for a while. The normal blowing will not be executed until warm or cool air is ready to flow.

## Manual regulation

### ■ Regulation of air volume



Method 1:- After touching [AUTO] button on the multimedia display, its operating indicator lights up and the automatic A/C mode is activated.

Method 2: Touch the air volume setting button on the central control panel  /  to adjust the air volume among levels 1 - 7.

### ■ Temperature regulation



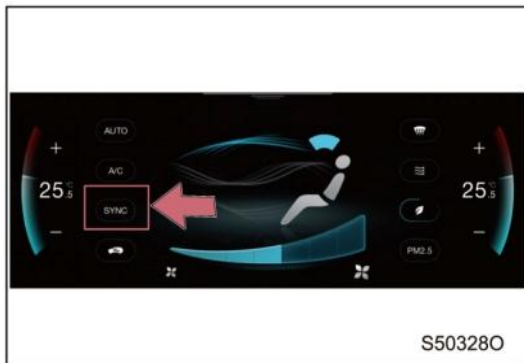
Method 1: Touch the \_ (lower temperature) or+(raise temperature) on the temperature setting button to set the temperature, or slide the temperature setting bar to set the temperature.

Method 2: Touch the temperature setting button on the central control panel to set the temperature.

Driver side and front passenger side temperatures can be adjusted independently.

If the [A/C] button indicator does not lamp up or the [A/C] button indicator is on but the A/C compressor is not running, the system will blow atmospheric temperature air or heated air to the interior.

■ Switching of single/dual-zone control modes



Touch the [SYNC] key, and the indicator light will turn on. Enter the single temperature zone control mode, and the front passenger side will synchronize to the temperature set by the driver side.

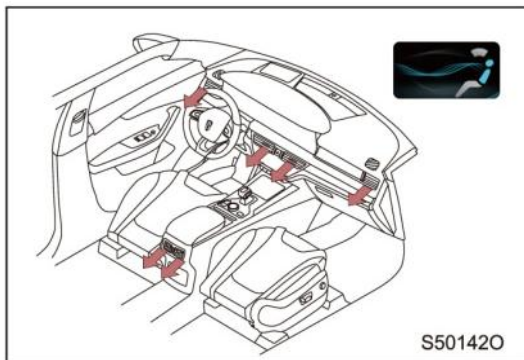
By tapping the [SYNC] button again, the indicator goes out, it goes to the dual-zone control mode, and you can independently set the temperatures at the driver's side and the front passenger side.

In the single-zone control mode, separately set the temperature at the front passenger side, it goes to the dual-zone control mode.

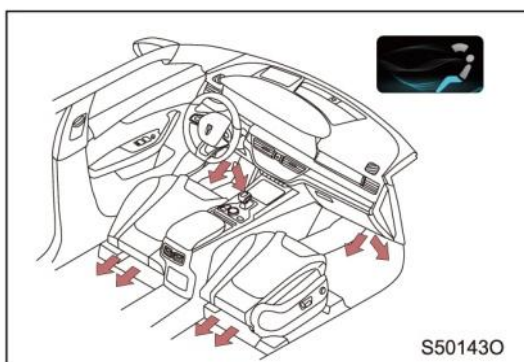
■ Switching the air outlet mode

By tapping the air outlet mode setting button on the operating interface, different modes of air outlet can be shifted.

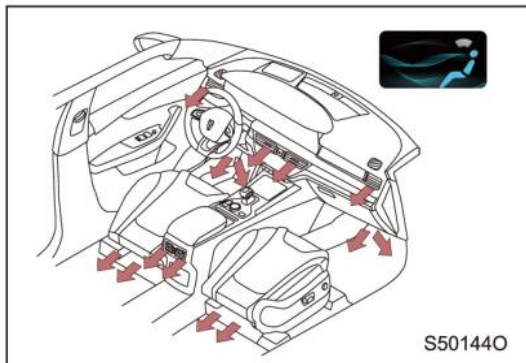
Currently, there is a mode (such as blow-to-face mode). When another wind direction is selected, if the newly selected wind direction and the existing wind direction can be combined into one mode (such as blow-to-face + blow-to-foot), the combined mode (such as blow-to-face + blow-to-foot) is executed; if the newly selected wind direction and the existing wind direction cannot be combined into one mode (such as blow-to-face + blow-to-window), the newly selected wind direction mode (such as blow-to-window) is executed.



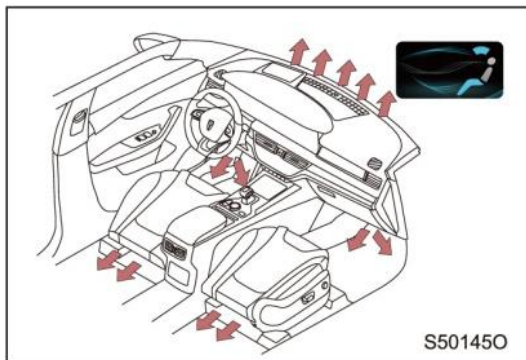
Air is blown to the face.



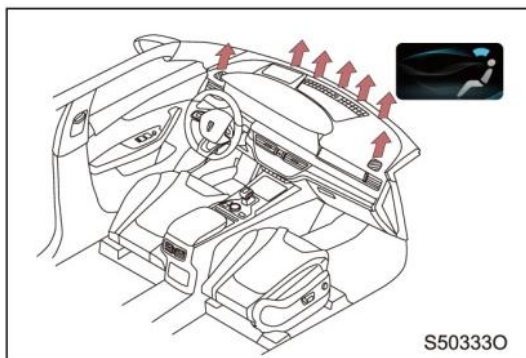
Air is blown to the feet.



The airflow is blowing toward the face and feet.



The airflow is blowing toward the feet and the windshield.



Air is blown to the front windshield.

Automatically start the front windshield defrost/defog mode.

#### ■ A/C switch

When the engine is running, by tapping [A/C] button, the button is on, and the A/C refrigeration starts.

Touch the [A/C] button again, the indicator on the button turns off, and the air conditioner is turned off.

#### ■ Internal/external circulation mode switching

Press the internal/external circulation button to enter the internal circulation mode with the active indicator ON; press it again to enter the external circulation mode with the active indicator OFF.

When it shifts to the automatic A/C mode, the A/C system will automatically switch the internal/external circulation mode.

**⚠ CAUTIONS**

■ **Do not use the internal circulation mode in cold or rainy weather**

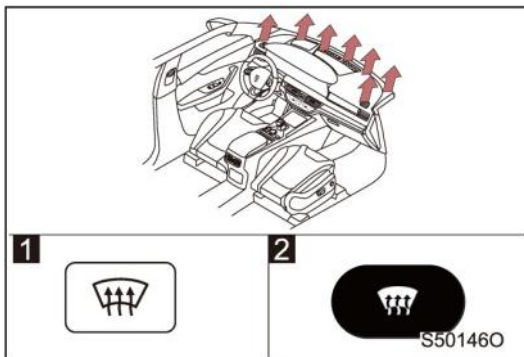
Using the internal circulation mode in cold or rainy weather will lead to fogging of the car windows, thus blocking your sight and possibly causing serious accidents.


■ **When using the internal circulation mode**


The windows might fog up more easily if internal circulation mode is used for an extended period.

**Other functions**

■ **Front windshield defrosting/defogging**



**1** After touching the button  on the center control panel, the operating indicator lights up, and the forced defrosting/defogging function of windshield is started.

**2** Touch the button  on the multimedia display to activate the forced defrosting/defogging function of windshield.

When the internal circulation mode is used, the forced defrosting/defogging function of the windshield shall be enabled, and the system will switch from the internal circulation mode to the external circulation mode automatically.

Increase of air volume and rise of temperature can defrost/defog the front windshield as soon as possible.

■ **Window fogging up**

- When the interior humidity raises, windows might fog up easily. Turning on the "A/C" switch will dehumidify the air from the air outlet and effectively defog the windshield.
- If the "A/C" switch is turned off, the window may be fogged more easily.
- In rainy days, windows might fog up.
- The windows might fog up if internal circulation mode is used for an extended period.

**⚠ CAUTIONS**

■ **Prevent the windshield from fogging**

- Do not use the front windshield defroster/defogger mode during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The temperature difference between the outside air and the windshield may cause fog on the outside surface of the windshield, thus obstructing your view.
- Do not place anything that may cover the air outlet on the instrument panel. Otherwise, air flow may be blocked, thus preventing defogging of the windshield.

### ADS anti-fog sensor

At the running state of air conditioner, when the windshield has a fogging tendency, A/C system will enter the automatic anti-fogging mode, and the air volume will be appropriately increased and blow towards the windshield; when the tendency is eliminated, A/C system will automatically switch back to the operating state before its anti-fogging control. After entering the automatic anti-fogging mode, you can exit the automatic anti-fogging mode by operating AUTO button or air outlet mode adjusting button. If the fogging tendency of windshield can't be eliminated after a period of time, the system will restart the mode.

Tips:

After entering the automatic defogging mode, A/C system will have a large air volume; in the event of heavy rain, rainstorm or other bad weather, in order to achieve rapid defogging effect, it's recommended to start the forced defrosting/defogging function of windshield.

### Natural ventilation function

Touch the natural ventilation button on the multimedia display to enter the natural ventilation mode, and its intake mode is switched to external circulation. At this time, the compressor stops working to save the energy.

### Ion purification



After touching the ion-purifying button on A/C operating interface of multimedia display, the button lights up, the ion purification function is turned on, the touch is turned on again, the button is turned off, and the ion purification function stops.

The system has two purification modes, namely the sterilization operating mode and negative ion operating mode. The car switches automatically between these two modes during the operation of system. When the blower fails to work, the air purifier can't work even if the air purifying function is activated.

### PM2.5 sensor



After touching [PM2.5] button on the multimedia display, the button lights up, and PM2.5 concentration of air inside the car is detected. When the detection is completed, if the concentration reaches the standard, the system will automatically exit; if not, the system will automatically start filtering and exit after the filtration is completed.

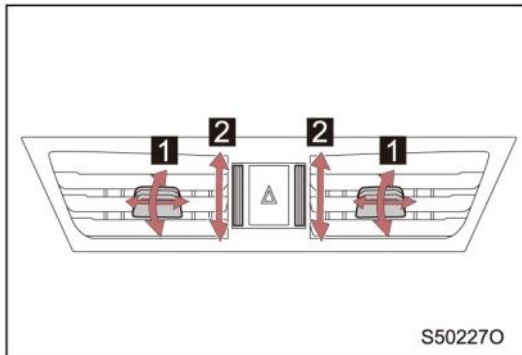
Press and hold the [PM2.5] button to turn on the PM2.5 filtering function. Hold [PM2.5] button to enable forced PM2.5 filtration function.

■ AQS air quality sensor

The system automatically detects the air quality outside the car. When the outside air is polluted, the air conditioning system automatically switches to internal circulation, and prevents polluted air from entering the car to ensure the air quality inside the car.

**Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets**

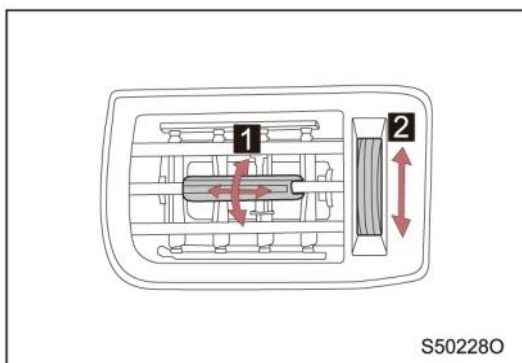
► Front center outlet



**1** The air flow will be guided to the left side or right side, top or bottom.

**2** Turn the knob to open or close the air vent.

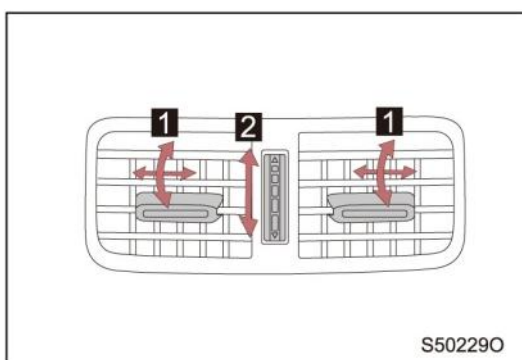
► Front air outlet



**1** The air flow will be guided to the left side or right side, top or bottom.

**2** Turn the knob to open or close the air vent.

► Rear center outlet



**1** The air flow will be guided to the left side or right side, top or bottom.

**2** Turn the knob to open or close the air vent.



---

**■ Remote operation of air conditioning system**

- A/C system can be operated remotely via the mobile APP. (See P.258)
- When the vehicle is started remotely and the remote air conditioner is turned on at the same time, the air conditioner operation panel cannot be operated because the air conditioner is in the remote mode, but the remote air conditioner can be turned off through the OFF button.

**■ Internal/external circulation mode**

- Switch to internal circulation mode when driving on dusty roads (such as tunnels) or roads with heavy traffic. It can effectively prevent outside air into the inside of vehicle. During the refrigeration operation, the internal circulation mode can also effectively reduce the interior temperature.
- The windows might fog up if internal circulation mode is used for an extended period.

**■ Windshield defroster**

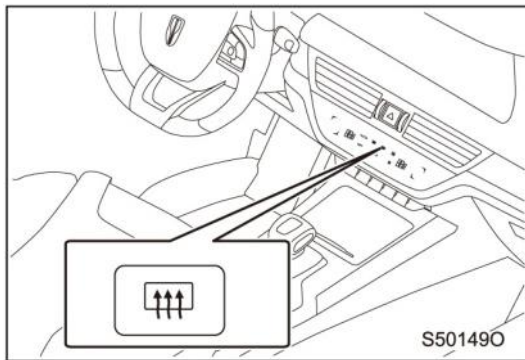
- At the forced defrosting/defogging mode of windshield, its inner loop mode will automatically switch to outer loop mode.
- The air volume may be increased while the defrosting/defogging function is running. It can defrost/defog the windshield as soon as possible to increase the air volume and temperature.

**■ A/C odours**


- During use, various odors inside and outside the vehicle may enter and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may cause odor emission from the vent.

 **Caution****■ Preventing low battery power**

If the air conditioning system is not required when the vehicle is not started, please turn it off.



Touch the key. The indicator turns on to start heating the rear windshield and the front windshield.

By tapping the button  again, the indicator goes out and the system stops to work.

Tip:

The system will automatically shut down after running for about 15min (minutes), and the system indicator turns off.

---

■ **Front windshield heating**

The front windshield only heats the wiper stopping area.

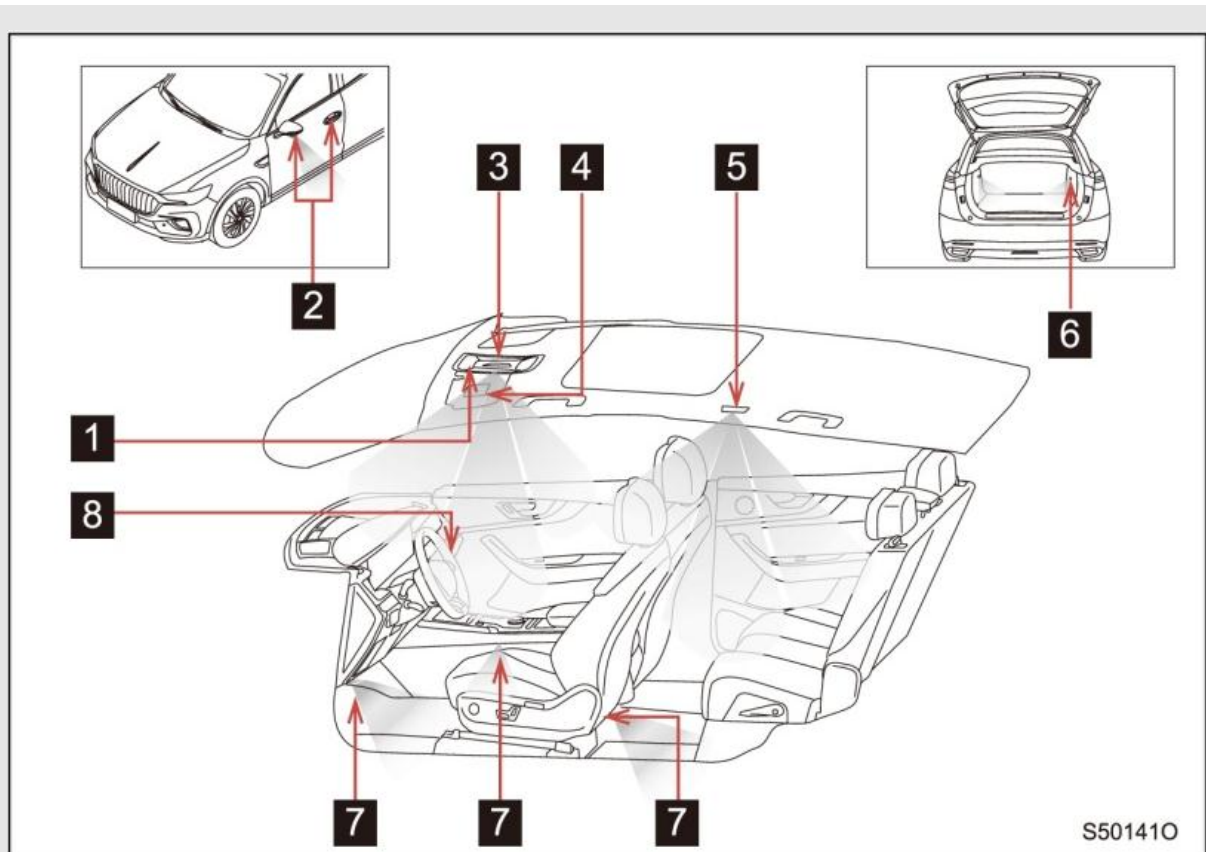
 **CAUTIONS**

■ **When the windshield is heated**

Do not touch the heated area. It may become very hot and cause burns.

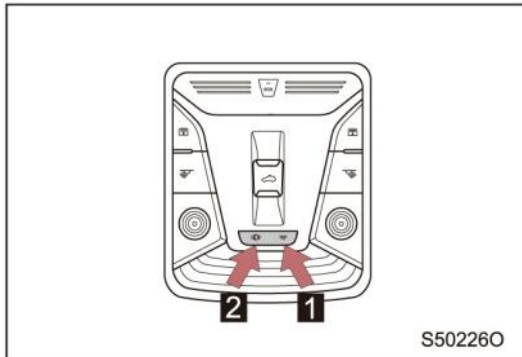
## 6.2. Using the Interior Lamps



### List of interior lamps



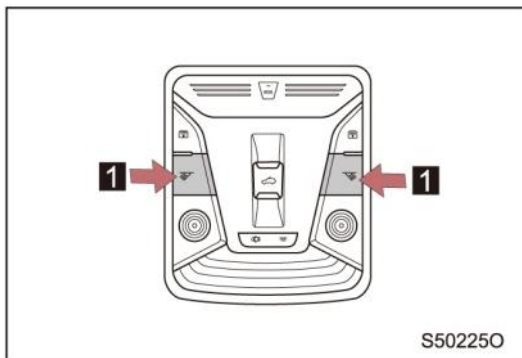
- 1** Front interior lights (see P.282)
- 2** Welcome lamp
- 3** Front reading lights (see P.282)
- 4** Vanity mirror lamp (see P.283)
- 5** Rear reading lights (see P.283)
- 6** Trunk lamp
- 7** Ambient lamp (see P.223)
- 8** Sundries box lamp


### Front row of interior lights



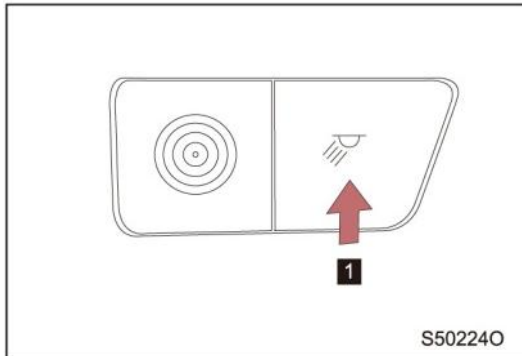
- 1** By pressing the  button, turn on the front room lamp; by pressing it again, turn off the front room lamp.
- 2** By pressing the  button, the indicator is on, and the Door Linkage with the room lamp is turned on; by pressing it again, the Door Linkage with the room lamp is turned off.


### Front read lamp



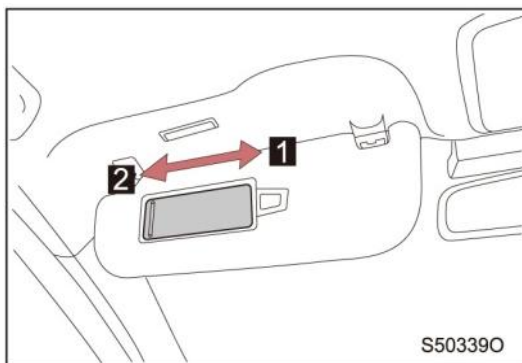
- 1** By pressing the  button, turn on the rear map lamp; by pressing it again, turn off the rear map lamp.

### Rear reading lamp



- 1 By pressing the  button, turn on the rear map lamp; by pressing it again, turn off the rear map lamp.

### Vanity mirror lamp



- 1 By opening the sun visor and sliding open the vanity mirror cover, the vanity mirror lamp is ON.
- 2 By closing the vanity mirror cover, the vanity mirror lamp is OFF.

#### ■ Energy-saving

The front interior light switch is placed at the linkage position of the vehicle door. If the vehicle door is opened, the interior lighting lamp will turn on for a period of time and then turn off. Close the engine switch and each door, and the interior light and atmosphere light will go out for a long time.

#### Caution

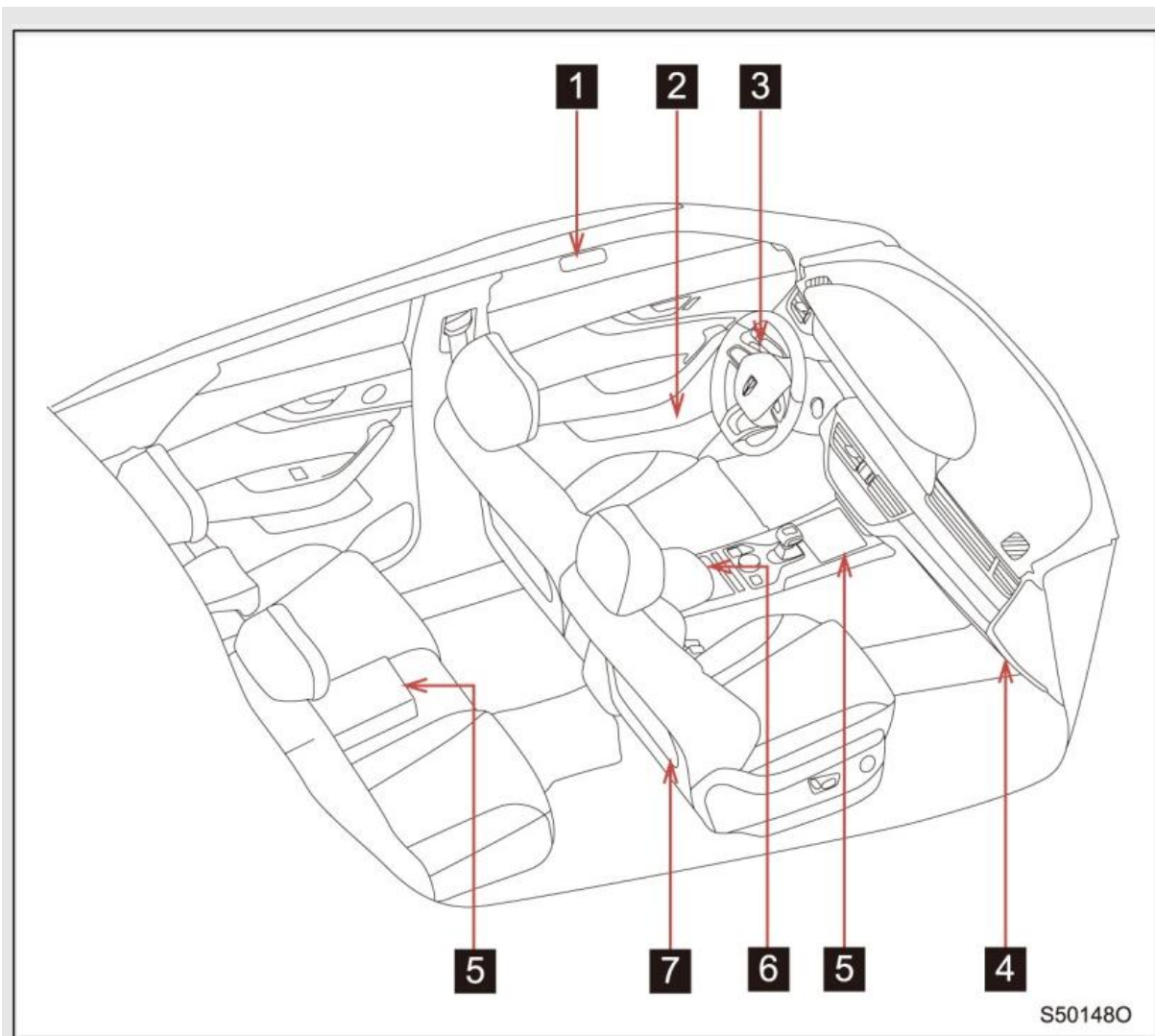
##### ■ Prevent battery discharge

Turn off the interior lights if they are not required.

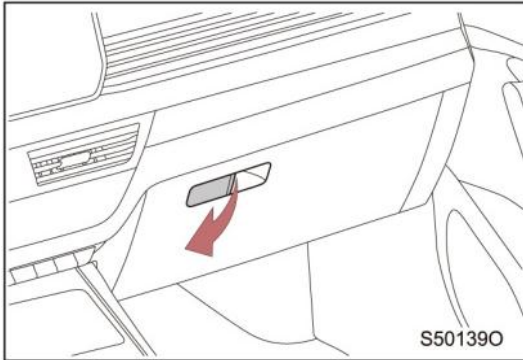
Do not leave the vanity mirror cover or doors open for a long time. Because when it is turned on, the corresponding interior lights will turn on, which may discharge the battery.

### 6.3. Using the Storage Units

#### List of storage units



- 1** Eyeglasses box (see P.289)
- 2** Bottle rack and sundry bucket (see P.288)
- 3** Left lower guard plate sundries box (see P.286)
- 4** Glove box (see P.285)
- 5** Cup holders (Front/Rear) (see P.295)
- 6** Front central storage box (see P.286)
- 7** File pocket (see P.288)

**Glove box**

By pulling the handle, open the glove box.

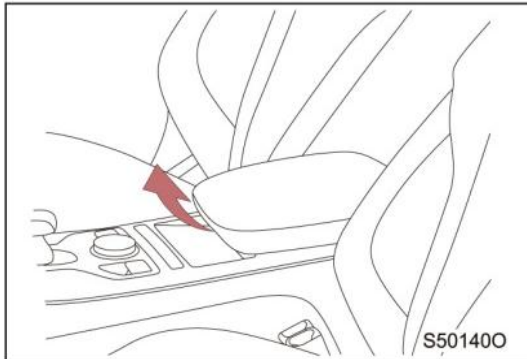
When closing the glove box cover, it means securely locked when it “clicks”.

**⚠ CAUTIONS****■ Warning during driving**

Keep the glove box closed.

Otherwise, personnel may be injured in case of accident or emergency braking.

### Front central storage box



Lift the storage box cover to open the storage box.

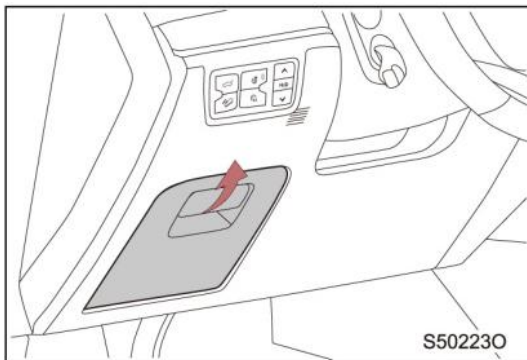
### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Warning during driving

Keep the storage compartment closed.

Otherwise, personnel may be injured in case of accident or emergency braking.

### Left lower panel glove box



By pulling the handle, open the glove box.

When you close the sundries box lid, a "click" sound indicates a secure lock.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Warning during driving

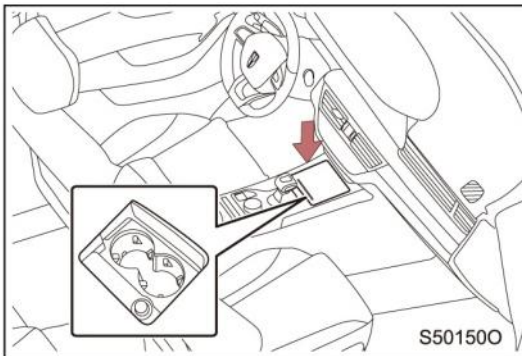
Keep the storage compartment closed.

Otherwise, personnel may be injured in case of accident or emergency braking.



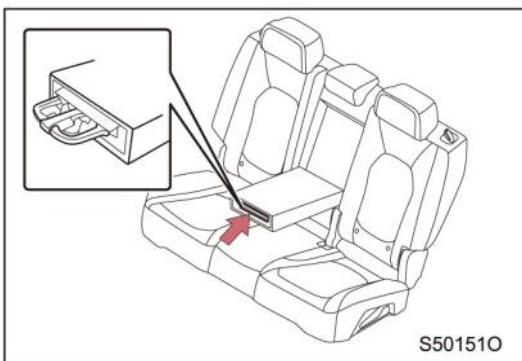
## Cup Holder

### ► Front



Press the cup holder cover downward, and the cup holder cover will open automatically.

### ► Rear



Put down the rear center armrest, take down and release the cup holder cover, and the rear cup holder will pop out automatically.

Put them back when not in use.

### ■ When using cup holders to hold cups

- Please close the cup lid.
- Some cups might not be held there because of their size or shape.

### ⚠ CAUTIONS

#### ■ Items not suitable for placing in cup holder

Do not place anything except cups or aluminum cans in the cup holder. Otherwise, in case of accident or emergency braking, such items may be thrown out of the cup holder, resulting in injury to personnel. Tighten the lid on containers with hot liquid inside to prevent burns.

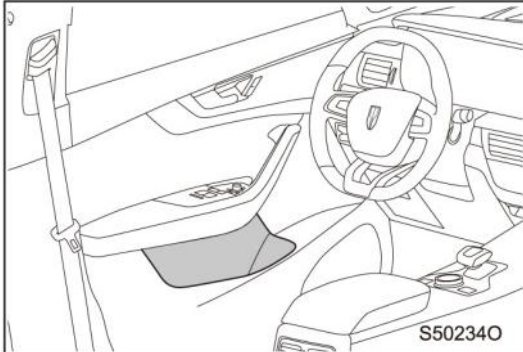
#### ■ When the vehicle is running, do not use the cup holder to place cups containing hot liquid, etc.

It is dangerous to use the cup holder for cup containing hot liquid when the vehicle is running. If the liquid in the cup spills, scalding may result.

#### ■ When not in use

Keep the cup holder closed. Otherwise, personnel may be injured in case of accident or emergency braking.

### Bottleholder and side pocket

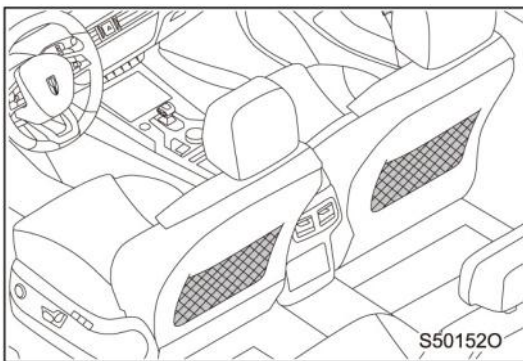


Bottleholders and side pockets are located on doors, and used to place bottles, duster cloth or sundries.

When placing bottles, tighten their lids.

Some bottles might not be held there because of their size or shape.

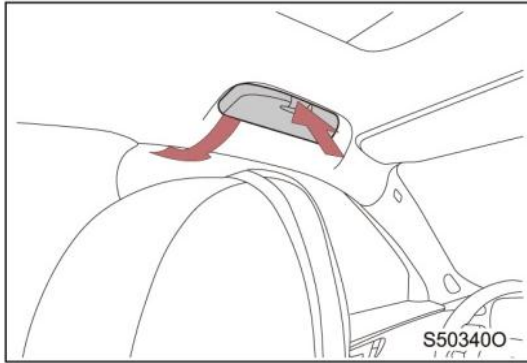
### File pocket



File pockets are located at the lower end of the backs of the driver seat and front passenger seat.

Used to store newspapers, magazines, etc.

### Eyeglasses box



Pull down the lower case lid edge, the eyeglasses box will open downward.

It is used to temporarily store small items such as sunglasses.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Items that should not be stored in the glasses box

Do not leave the glasses or lamper on it for long.

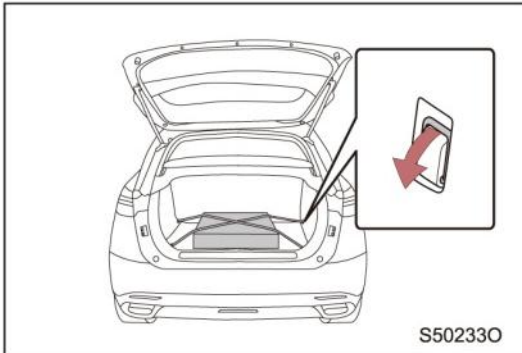
If the interior becomes hot, the lamper may explode and glasses may be distorted due to the heat.

#### ■ Warning during driving

Keep the eyeglasses box closed when driving.

The items stored in it may be thrown out of the holder in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injuries.

### Trunk hook



Lift the hook for immediate use.

The cargo hook is used to secure loose items.

### CAUTIONS

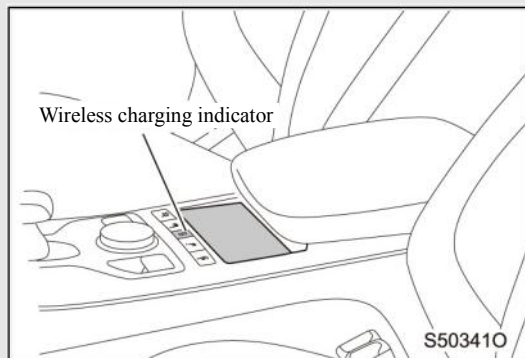
- Always return the goods to the stowed position when not in use.

### Trunk string bag



Luggage net pockets are located on both sides of the luggage compartment.

The front of the central console box is equipped with a wireless charging system.



Phones that support Qi standard wireless charging can be placed directly in the wireless charging area for charging.

Phones that do not support Qi standard wireless charging need to be charged with a receiver.

#### ■ Operating conditions for car wireless charging system

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

#### ■ Charging status indicator

- When the mobile phone is charged, the wireless charging indicator (green) will be turned on.
- When the mobile phone is away from the charging area and the wireless charging indicator will be turned off.
- If the charging system is faulty or its charging is abnormal, the wireless charging indicator (red) will flash.

#### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Before charging, remove all metal objects from the charging pad

During wireless charging of the mobile phone, if metal objects (such as coins, keys, rings or paper clips) are found between the mobile phone and the charging board, please do not remove foreign matters with your hands immediately to avoid scalding your fingers. Please remove the mobile phone first and remove it from the charging board after the box is cooled.

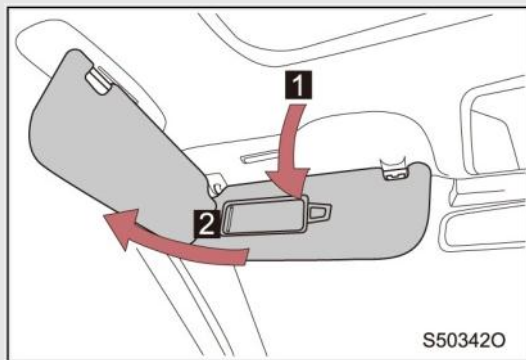
#### Caution

#### ■ Charging

- Remove all items on the wireless charging skid pad. If there are foreign matters, the system may not be able to charge normally.
- The mobile phone should face up and be placed in the middle of the anti-skid mat.
- **Do not place magnetic cards such as high-speed charging cards in the wireless charging area, which may cause demagnetization.**

## 6.4. Other Interior Equipment

### Sun visor



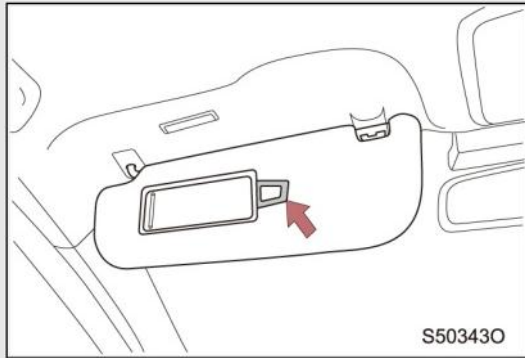
#### **1** Forward position

Flip the sun visor down.

#### **2** Side position

Flip down the sun visor, unhook, and pull to the side.

6.4. Other interior equipment  
File holder



The file holder is located on the visor at the driver's side.

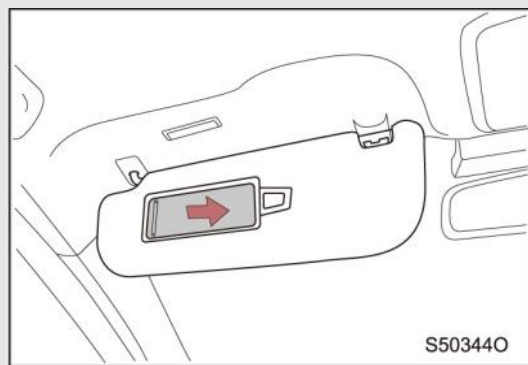
It is used to store receipts, cards and other items.

 **Caution**

■ **Prevent holder damage**

Do not put too many items on the file holder.

6.4. Other Interior Equipment  
Vanity mirror lamp



Flip down, and slide the cover to open the vanity mirror.

 **Caution**

■ **When not in use**

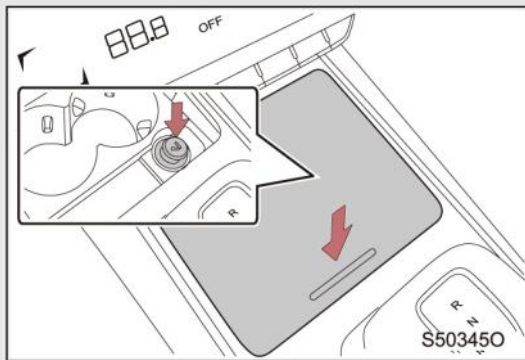
Keep the makeup mirror closed.

■ **Prevent low battery power**

When the vehicle is not started, do not turn on the makeup mirror lamp for a long time.



Cigar lighter



Press down on the front cup holder cover and open it to connect the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter will pop up after it has been properly preheated.

■ **The cigarette lighter can be used when**

The engine switch is placed in "IG-ON" mode.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **Avoid burns or fires**

- Never touch the metal part of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not always connect the cigarette lighter, otherwise it may overheat and cause a fire.
- Never insert any other objects other than the cigarette lighter into this socket.

■ **When not in use**

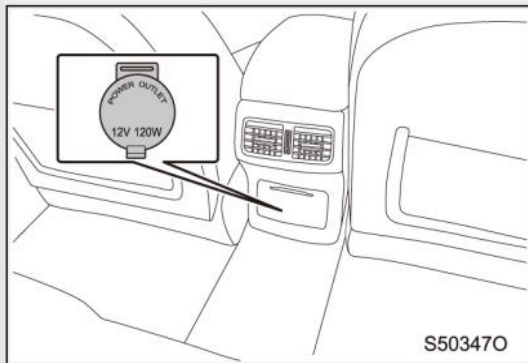
- Keep the front cup holder lid closed.

Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

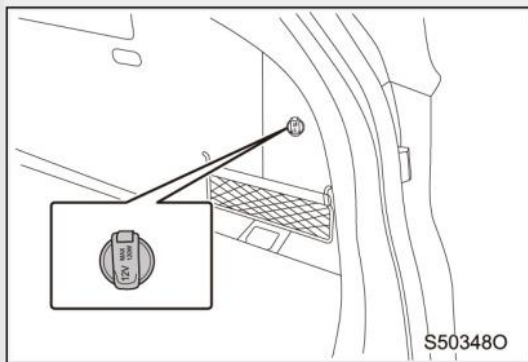
6.4. Other Interior Equipment  
Power Socket

■ **12V power**

The power socket can be used for 12V accessories that run on less than 10A.



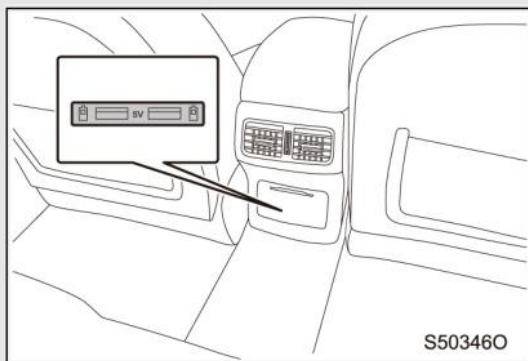
Located at the lower end of the rear central outlet.



Located on the right trim panel of the trunk.

■ **5V USB power**

The power socket can be used for 5V accessories with working current less than 2A.



Located at the lower end of the rear central air vent.

---

**■ The power sockets can be used when**

The engine switch is placed in "IG-ON" mode -

 **Caution****■ Prevent the power socket from being damaged.**

Close the power socket lid when the power socket is not in use.

Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power socket may cause a short circuit.

**■ Prevent fuse from blowing out**

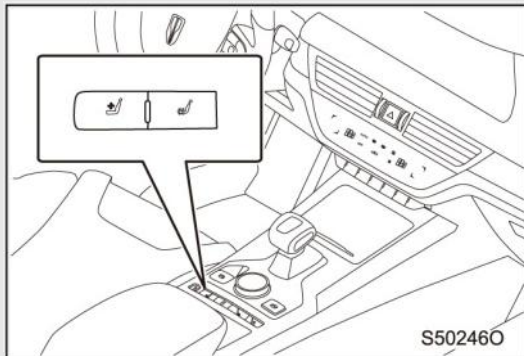
Do not use accessories that exceed the rated voltage/current.

**■ Preventing low battery power**

When the vehicle is not started, please do not use the power socket for a long time if it is not necessary.

The temperature of the seats can be adjusted separately.

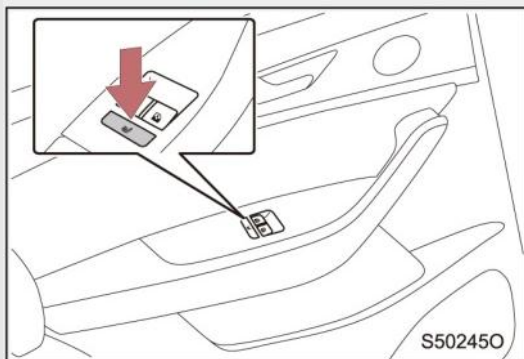
■ Front seat temperature adjusting



Press the seat heating and ventilation button to select the appropriate gear.

Level 1-3 adjustment can be realized.

■ Rear seat temperature adjusting



By pressing the seat heating button, the indicator is on; open the rear seat heating function and press it again to turn off the rear seat heating function.

---

■ Working conditions

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

 **CAUTIONS****■ When using the seat heater, be sure to observe the following.**

- Special attention should be paid to the following persons sitting in a seat with the seat heater operating, to avoid burns:
  - Babies, children, the elderly, patients and people with disabilities
  - People with sensitive skin
  - Very tired people
  - People drowsy due to drinking or taking drugs (sleeping pills, cold medicine, etc.)
- When heating or ventilating the seat, do not cover the seat (blanket, seat cushion) with anything. Otherwise, the seat temperature will rise or fall, resulting in overheating or supercooling.
- If it is not necessary, please do not turn on the seat heating or ventilation function. Otherwise, passengers may feel too cold, overheated or cause local burns.

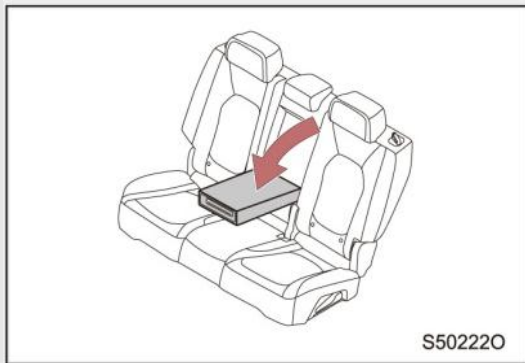
 **Caution****■ Prevent damage to seat heating and ventilation system**

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on seats and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into seats.

**■ When cleaning the seat**

When cleaning the seat, do not use benzene, gasoline and other organic substances. It is easy to damage the heater and seat covering.

6.4. Other Interior Equipment  
Rear central armrest



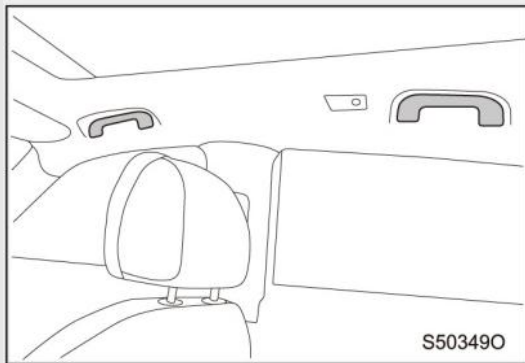
Pull down the armrest to use.

 **Caution**

■ **Prevent handrail damage**

Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

Roof grab handle



The roof handles are located on the front passenger side and both sides of passengers.

When sitting on the seat, the body can be supported by the roof handles installed on the roof lining.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **Roof handle**

When getting on/off the vehicle or getting out of seats, do not use roof grab handles.

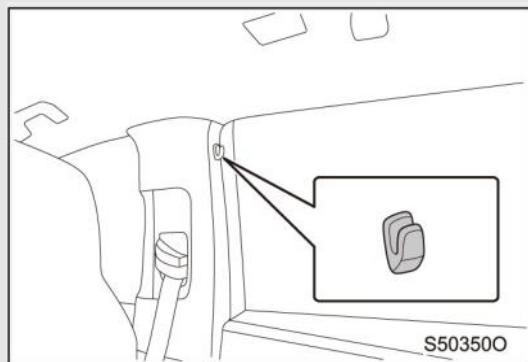
 **Caution**

■ **Prevent damage to roof handle**

Do not hang any heavy objects or apply heavy loads on the roof handles to prevent damage to the roof handle.

## 6.4. Other Interior Equipment

### Coat Hook



Hang clothes on coat hooks.

#### CAUTIONS

##### ■ Items not suitable for hanging on coat hooks

Do not place hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the coat hook. If curtain airbags are deployed, these objects may be ejected and cause serious injury or death.



7-1. Maintenance and Servicing

Cleaning and protecting vehicle exterior trim 304

Cleaning and protecting vehicle interior trim.306

7-2. Maintenance

Maintenance instructions.....308

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

Precautions for do-it-yourself maintenance ....310

Hood.....312

Engine compartment.....313

Tire.....326

Tire pressure .....329

Wheel.....331

Air conditioning filter.....332

Replace key battery .....334

Check and replace fuse .....336

**Observing the following operations helps to protect the vehicle exterior trim and keep it in the best condition:**

- Flush the body, wheel cap and bottom of the vehicle with large amount of water from top to bottom to remove dirt and dust.
- Scrub the body with sponge or soft cloth (such as suede cloth).
- For traces that are difficult to remove, wash them with car washing agent and rinse them thoroughly with water.
- Wipe the water off completely.
- When the waterproof coating is aged, the vehicle should be waxed.

Do not wax the body until the vehicle surface has no water drops and is cooled down.

---

■ Automatic car washing

- Fold the exterior rearview mirror before washing the car. Start flushing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure that the exterior mirrors are unfolded before driving. Brushes used for automatic washing may scratch the surface of the vehicle and damage the paint.

■ High pressure car wash

- Do not let the nozzle used for washing be too close to the window.
- Before washing the vehicle, check and confirm that the fuel filler flap of the vehicle has been properly closed.

■ Aluminum wheel

- After adhering dirt, it should be removed immediately with neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or detergents containing abrasives. Do not use highly corrosive or strong chemical detergents.
- Do not use detergent to clean the wheels when they are very hot (for example, after long distance driving in hot weather).
- After washing the wheel with detergent, rinse it off immediately.

■ Bumpers

Do not use detergents containing abrasives.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **When washing the car**

Do not flush the engine compartment with water. Failure to do so may result in a short circuit of electrical components, which may lead to a fire.

■ **Notes on exhaust pipe**

The exhaust gases can make the exhaust pipes very hot.

When cleaning the vehicle, do not touch the exhaust pipe before it is sufficiently cooled. Otherwise, you may get burned.

 **Caution****■ Prevent aging of body, aging of paint and corrosion of body and components (aluminum wheels, etc.)**

- The vehicle shall be cleaned immediately after the following situations occur:
  - After driving along the seaside.
  - After driving on the saline-alkali roads.
  - If the paint is attached with coal tar or resin
  - If there are dead insects, insect dung or bird dung on the paint surface.
  - After the vehicle is driven in an area polluted by soot, lampblack, mineral dust, iron powder or chemical substances.
  - When the vehicle is heavily dusty or muddy.
  - When liquids such as benzene and petrol splash onto the paint surface.
- If the paint is peeling or scratched, please repair it immediately.
- To prevent corrosion of the wheels, remove dirt and store in low humidity when storing the wheels.

**■ When cleaning flags**

Please wipe the flag on the cabin cover with clean water or neutral cleaning agent. It is forbidden to use alcohol or alcohol-containing liquid, benzene, anisole and other organic solvents for cleaning. Otherwise, cracks will easily occur.

**■ Cleaning of car lights**

- Care should be taken when cleaning. Do not use organic detergents or hard brushes for cleaning, otherwise the surface of lamps may be damaged.
- Please do not wax the surface of the lights, which may damage the lampshade.

**Observing the following operations helps to protect the vehicle interior trim and keep it in the best condition:**

■ Protecting vehicle interiors

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt and dust. Wet the cloth with warm water and wipe off the dirty.

■ Clean leather parts

- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt and dust.
- Wet the soft cloth with diluted detergent and wipe off the residual dirt and dust.

Please use a neutral detergent solution for wool with a diluted concentration of about 5 %.

- Wring the moist cloth dry and wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- Wipe off the residual moisture on the surface with a dry soft cloth, and then dry the leather in a cool and ventilated place.

■ Clean artificial leather parts

- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove floating dust.
- Apply neutral soap to artificial leather.
- Allow soap to soak for a few minutes, then wipe off dirt and soap with a clean wet cloth.

■ Clean wooden parts

- When there is dust accumulation on the surface of wood veneer, it can be cleaned and wiped gently with cotton cloth.
- When the surface of the wood finished is stained with dirt, it can be wiped lightly with cotton cloth dipped with a little neutral soap solution.

---

■ **Maintenance of leather part**

It is recommended that you clean the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the interior.

■ **Maintenance of wooden parts**

It is recommended that you carry out maintenance on the surface of wood trims at any time according to the surface conditions.

■ **Clean the carpet**

Use a suitable commercially available foam cleaner to clean the carpet. Apply foams onto a sponge or a brush. Scrub in overlapping circles. Do not add water. Keep the carpet as dry as possible to get the best results.

■ **Seat belts**

Dip cloth or sponge in neutral detergents and lukewarm water for cleaning. And regularly check whether the safety belts are excessively worn, worn or scratched.

 **CAUTIONS**
**■ Prevent water from entering the car**

- Do not spill liquid into the car, otherwise it may lead to failure of electrical components or fire.
- Do not allow air bag components or wires inside the vehicle to get wet.

Electrical failure may result in accidental deployment or malfunction of the airbag, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.

**■ Clean the interiors (especially the instrument panel)**

Do not use polishing wax or polishing detergent. The instrument panel may be reflected onto the windshield, obstructing the driver's vision and causing accidents, which result in serious injuries or even death.

 **Caution**
**■ Detergent**

- Do not use the following types of cleaning agents, as this may cause the interior of the vehicle to fade or cause markings or damage to the paint surface:

Organic solutions containing such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, coloring agents and bleaching agents.

- Do not use polishing wax or polishing detergent. Otherwise, the paint surface of the instrument panel or other parts in the vehicle may be damaged.

**■ Prevent the leather surface from damage**

To prevent leather surface damage and ageing, please observe the following precautions:

- Remove the dirt on the leather surface in time.
- Vehicles should not be directly exposed to the sun for a long time. Please park it in a shady and cool place, especially in summer.
- Do not place polyethylene, plastic products or wax items on leather trim parts, as these items may stick to the leather surface when the temperature inside the car increases greatly.
- If excessive moisture remains on the seat surface, the leather will harden and shrink.

**■ Floor water prevention**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

If the electrical components under the vehicle floor come into contact with water, the electrical system may be damaged and the vehicle body may rust.

**■ Cleaning of inner side of rear windshield**

- Do not use glass cleaners to clean the rear windshield, otherwise the heating wires of the defroster of the rear windshield may be damaged. Wet the cloth with warm water and wipe gently in the direction parallel to the heating wire.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heating wire.

**In order to ensure the safety and economy of driving, daily maintenance and periodic maintenance are very important. FAW recommends that you take the following maintenance measures:**

■ **Regular maintenance**

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the maintenance schedule.

The maintenance interval can be determined according to the mileage or time given in the schedule, whichever comes first.

For maintenance items that have exceeded the last interval, it is also recommended that you carry out maintenance at the same interval.

- Where can I go for maintenance?

It is most ideal to go to an FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer for maintenance.

The authorized Hong Qi dealer of FAW China has the advanced maintenance tools, equipment and pure accessories required to provide maintenance and service to your vehicle, and all after - sales service personnel have received professional management and technical training to ensure the fast and efficient completion of vehicle maintenance and repair work and ensure that your vehicle always has good technical performance.

FAW authorized Hongqi Dealers have invested a large amount of money in special tools and maintenance equipments. This helps to provide you with better service.

The China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor sticks to high efficiency, reasonable and excellent service concepts to fully carry out all maintenance items of the car.

Rubber hoses (for cooling and heating systems, brake systems and fuel systems) shall be inspected by professionals in strict accordance with the maintenance schedule.

Rubber hoses may deteriorate over time, causing expansion, wear, or cracking. Therefore, if there are any signs of deterioration or damage of the hoses, please contact an FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer for replacement immediately.

■ **Instructions for self-maintenance**

Can I maintain my vehicle by myself?

If you have rich basic knowledge of vehicle construction, inspection and maintenance and have some basic tools, you can carry out daily inspection and maintenance by yourself. A brief description of how to perform self-maintain is given in this section.

It should be reminded that some maintenance work needs special maintenance equipments and professional skills, so it is best to be done by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced professional technician, we still suggest that you go to an FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer for standard maintenance because they will record the maintenance information of your car and help you apply for warranty service.

### ■ Whether your car needs repair

Watch out for changes in vehicle performance and sounds, as well as other visual warnings that indicate that the vehicle needs maintenance. Here are some important signs:

- The engine is misfiring, unstable or banging.
- The power is obviously reduced.
- The engine rattled.
- There is a liquid leak at the bottom of the vehicle. (dripping water after air conditioning and from drain holes after exhaust pipe cooling are normal phenomena )
- The exhaust sound is abnormal. (this indicates that there may be a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. In this case, windows must be opened and the exhaust system must be checked immediately)
- The tire is flat. When turning, the tire noise is too loud. The tire wear is uneven.
- When driving straight on a flat road, the vehicle drifts to one side.
- Abnormal noise related to suspension components.
- Brake failure; When the brake pedal is depressed, it feels soft. The pedal almost touches the floor. When braking, the vehicle runs sideways.
- The engine coolant temperature continues to be high.

If you find any of the above signs, please contact an FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible because your vehicle may need to be adjusted or repaired.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ If the vehicle is not properly maintained

It may cause serious damage to the vehicle and serious injuries or even death.

#### ■ Precautions for handling batteries

Battery binding posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, which can cause brain damage.

Always wash your hands after operation.

#### ■ Used engine oil

According to research, chemicals contained in old engine oil may cause cancer in laboratory animals. Please avoid repeated contact for a long time. To protect your skin, be sure to wash it thoroughly with soap and water.

**You can perform maintenance by yourself. Please be sure to follow the correct procedures below.**

Item	Components and tools
Battery condition (see P.322)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Warm water</li> <li>• Baking soda</li> <li>• Grease</li> <li>• Conventional wrench (for terminal clamping bolts)</li> </ul>
Engine coolant level (see P.318)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Super Long Life Coolant for vehicle</li> <li>• Funnel (used only for adding coolant)</li> </ul>
Engine oil level (see P.315) Engine oil level (see P.315)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• China FAW Pure Engine Oil or equivalent</li> <li>• Rag or paper towel, funnel (only for adding oil)</li> </ul>
Brake fluid level (see P.320)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FAW genuine brake fluid</li> <li>• Rag or paper towel, funnel (only for adding brake fluid)</li> </ul>
Fuses (see P.336)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuse with the same rated amperage as the original</li> </ul>
Radiators, condensers and intercoolers (see P.319)	—
Tire pressure (see P.329)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tire pressure display</li> <li>• Compressed air source</li> </ul>
Washer fluid (see P.326)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Antifreeze cleaning fluid</li> <li>• bucket</li> </ul>



 **CAUTIONS**

There are a number of mechanical devices in the engine compartment that may suddenly turn, become hot, or start being energized. To avoid serious personal injury, please be aware of the following.

■ **Operation on engine compartment parts**

- When working under the engine compartment cover, be sure to remove all your jewellery (especially ring, bracelet, watch and necklace) and bow tie, scarf and the similar loose clothing before you approach the engine or the electric fan that may operate at any time if the engine has to be run.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. immediately after driving, as it may be hot. The engine oil and other fluids are also hot.
- Always turn off the engine before opening the hood. Apply the electronic parking brake, shift the gear position in the P gear, turn off the engine switch and carry the key with you, and then wait for the engine to cool.
- Keep hands, clothes and tools away from rotating fans and engine drive belts.
- Never leave anything in the engine compartment.

If the inspection or maintenance in the engine compartment finishes, do not leave any tools, cloth, or other items in it. Doing so may cause damage to the engine or catch fire, resulting in accidents.

- Do not smoke and cause sparks, or expose naked flames close the fuel or batteries.
- Care must be taken when handling batteries. The battery contains toxic and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Care must be taken when handling brake fluid, as it may hurt your hands or eyes and damage the paint finish. If you get the brake fluid on your hands or in your eyes, flush your eyes or skin with large quantities of clean water. If you still feel unwell after that, call a physician immediately.

■ **When close to electric fan or radiator grill**

Make sure the engine switch is in OFF position.

When the vehicle starts, if the air conditioner is turned on or the coolant temperature is high, the electrical cooling fan may run automatically

■ **Safety goggles**

Wear goggles to prevent objects or splashing liquid from flying in eyes.

 **Caution**

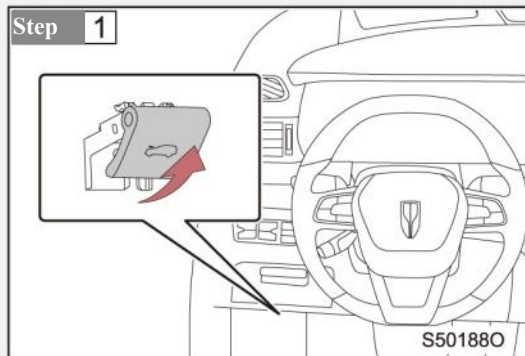
■ **If the air filter has been removed**

If the vehicle is driven after the air filter is removed, the dirt in the air may cause excessive abrasion to the engine. Meanwhile, back fire may also cause the engine compartment to catch fire.

■ **If the brake fluid level is too low or too high**

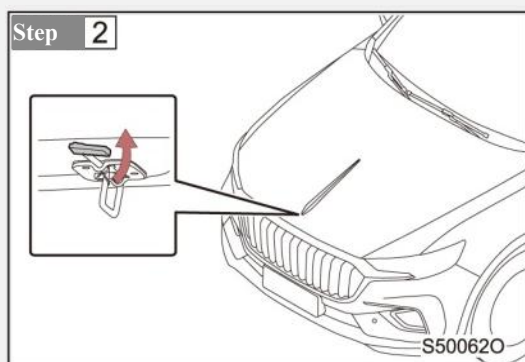
When the brake pads are worn or the fluid level in the brake fluid tank is high, the brake fluid level drops slightly. This is normal. If brake fluid needs to be frequently added to the brake fluid tank, it indicates that there may be a serious problem. Please contact your FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer to have your vehicle checked.

**Unlock inside to open the engine compartment cover.**



Pull opening handle of the engine compartment cover.

The engine compartment cover will bounce slightly upwards.



Dial up the opening handle of the safety hook of the hood and then lift up the hood.

**⚠ CAUTIONS**

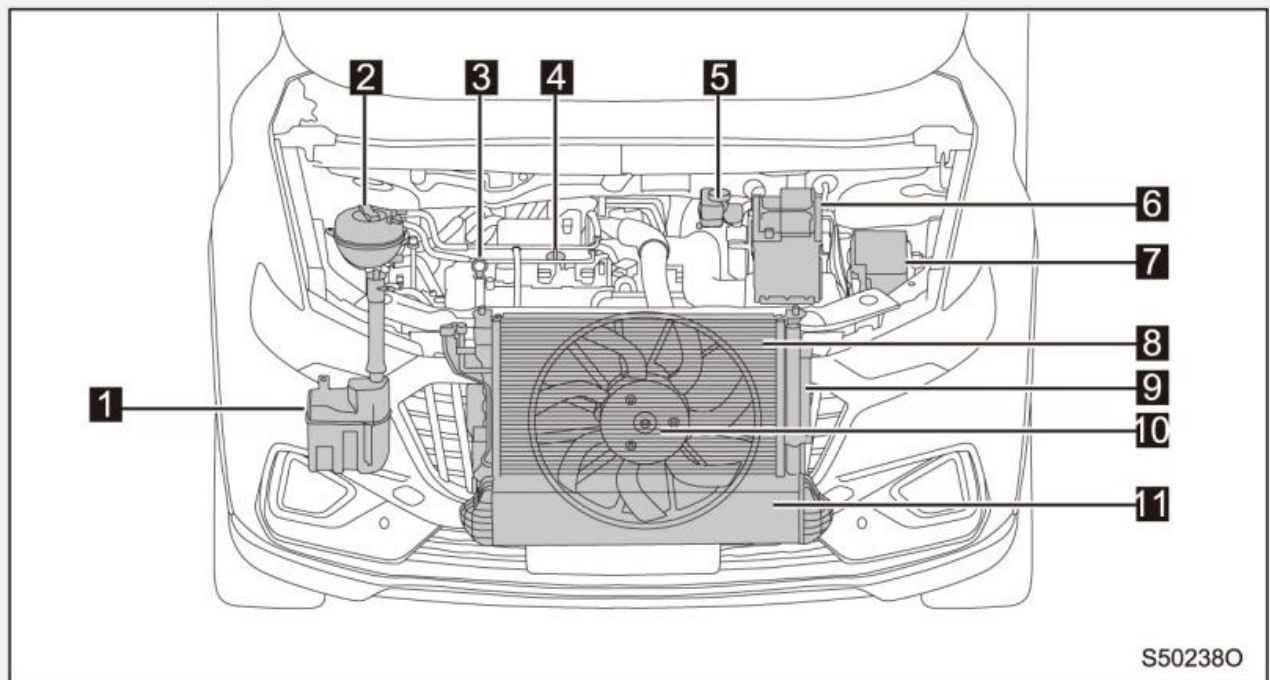
■ **Check before driving**

Check and confirm that the hood is completely closed and locked.

If the hood is not locked properly, it may be accidentally opened while the vehicle is in motion to cause an accident, resulting in serious personal injury.

**⚠ Caution**

- When closing the hood
- Do not apply excessive force. Otherwise the hood may be damaged.
- Make sure that there are no tools and objects, etc. were left in the engine compartment before closing the hood.



S502380

**1** Washer fluid tank (see P.325)

**3** The dipstick (see P.315)

**5** Brake fluid tank (see P.320)

**7** Fuse box (see P.336)

**9** Radiator (see P.319)

**11** Intercooler (see P.319)

**2** Coolant reservoir (see P.318 )

**4** Machine oil filler cap (see P.316)

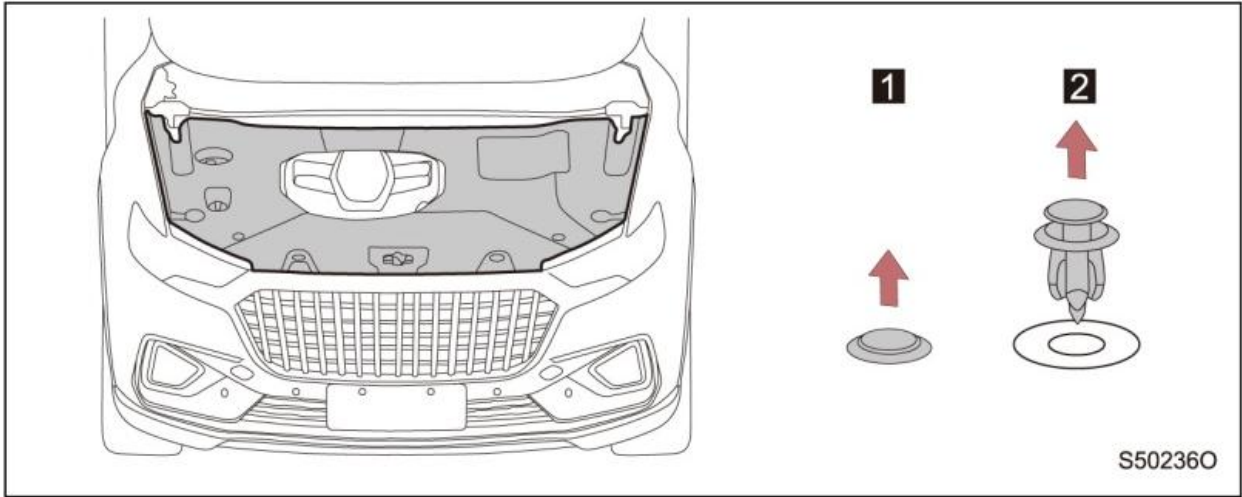
**6** Battery (see P.322)

**8** Condenser (see P.319)

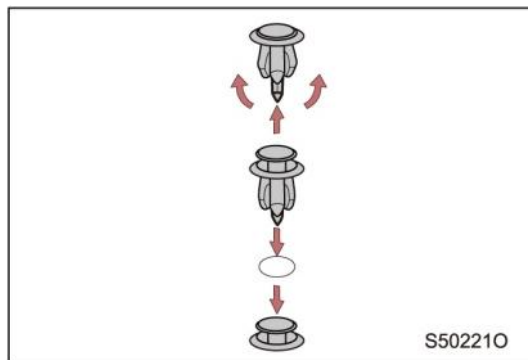
**10** Cooling fan

Engine compartment trim cover

■ Remove the engine compartment trim cover



■ Install the clips

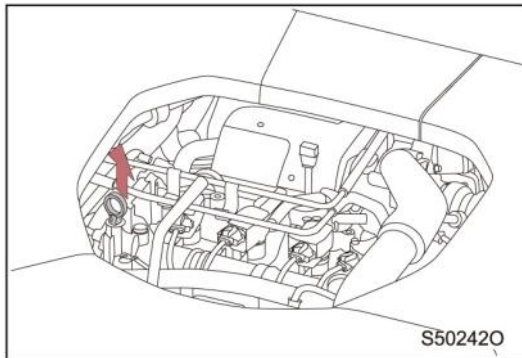


## Engine oil

Check the oil level when the engine reaches operating temperature and the engine switch is turned off.

### ■ Check the oil

**Step 1** Place the vehicle on the level ground. After shutting down the engine, wait 5 minutes or more for the oil to return to the bottom of the engine.

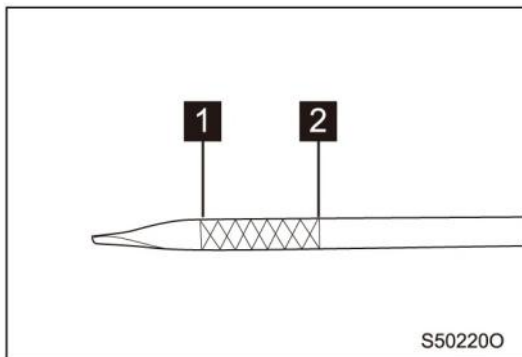


Put a clean rag under the end of the dipstick, then pull out the dipstick.

**Step 3** Clean the oil dipstick.

**Step 4** Fully insert the dipstick.

**Step 5** Put a clean rag under the end of the dipstick, then pull out the dipstick and check the oil level.



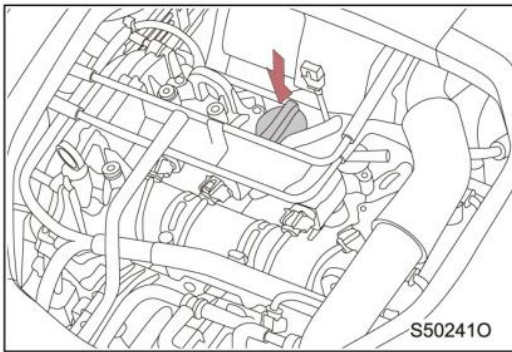
**1** Low

**2** Full fuel level

The oil level must be between the low and full marks. Actions must be taken timely to deal with the excessive or insufficient oil.

**Step 6** Wipe the dipstick with a cloth or paper towel, and then insert it all the way back in its tube.

■ Fill the oil



Add oil of the same rating as the existing oil in the engine if the level is at or below the lower mark.

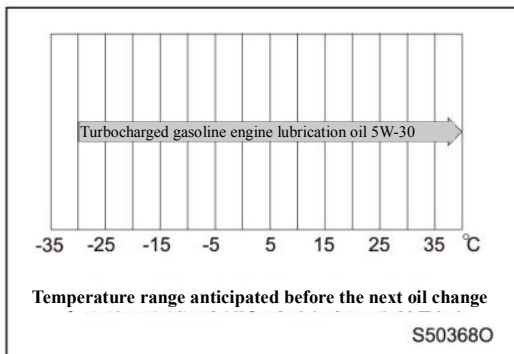
Be sure to determine the oil grade and prepare the required items before adding oil.

**Step 1** Unscrew the oil filler cap counterclockwise and remove it.

**Step 2** Fill the oil slowly and check the oil dipstick.

Install the oil filler cap and turn it clockwise until it is tightened.

■ Recommended oil

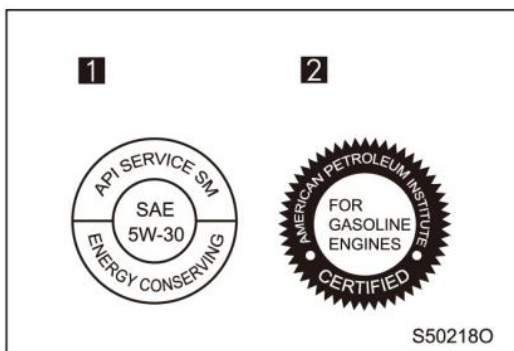


Do not use high-viscosity engine oil at extremely low temperature. Doing so may cause that it is difficult to start the engine. It is recommended to use the recommended engine oil for your vehicle.

For more details, please consult China FAW authorized Hong Qi dealers.

■ How to read the oil container label

Some oil containers are marked with one or two API references. For reference to select the correct oil.



**1** API service label

Top: API (American Petroleum Institute) oil grade mark, such as SM

Middle part: SAE viscosity, such as SAE 5W-30

Lower part: "Energy-Conserving" indicates that the oil has fuel-saving performance.

**2** ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) certification mark

### ■ Oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil is consumed during driving. Engine oil consumption may increase if one of the following conditions occurs. Engine oil may need to be added during oil service intervals.

- When using a new engine, such as purchasing a vehicle directly or after changing the engine
- If inferior oil or improper viscosity oil was used
- When the engine is running at high speed or under heavy load, or when it is frequently accelerated or decelerated
- When the engine is idling for a long time, or when it is frequently passing through a traffic jam



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Notes on disposal of used oil

- The used oil contains potentially dangerous substances which may cause diseases (dermatitis or skin cancer), so avoid contacting the oil for a long time or frequently. If you get the oil on your skin, flush the skin thoroughly with soap and clean water.
- Be sure to dispose of the used oil and filter in a safe and environmentally- compliant manner. Do not dispose of used motor oil and filters in domestic waste and the sewer or on the ground. For information about oil recovery and disposal, please consult the China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor.
- Please do not place the used oil in places where children can reach.



### Caution

#### ■ Prevention of serious engine damage

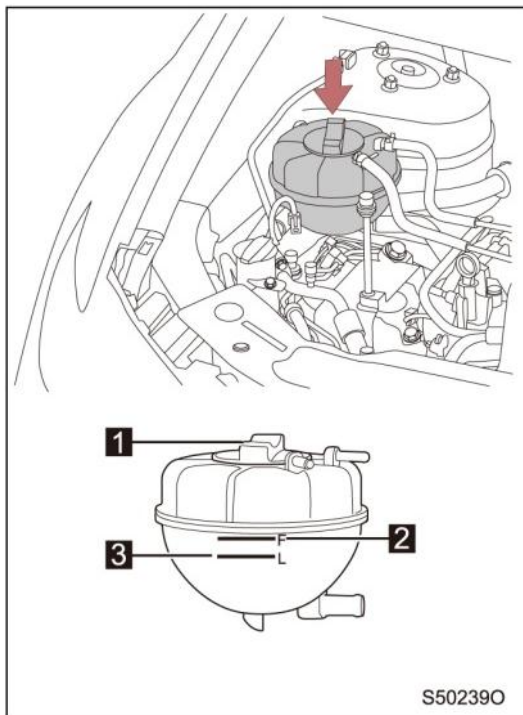
Regularly check the oil level.

#### ■ Precautions for changing the motor oil

- Be careful not to let motor oil spilled on vehicle parts.
- Overfilling should be avoided as it will damage the engine.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick when adding the vehicle with motor oil every time
- Ensure that the filler cap is properly tightened.

### Engine coolant

When the coolant level in the coolant reservoir is between the "F" (High) and L (Low) markings, the level is normal.



**1** Fluid reservoir cover

**2** "F" (Full)

**3** "L" (Low)

If the level is below the "L" mark, add coolant to the normal level.

#### ■ If the coolant level drops soon after refilling

Visual inspection of radiators, liquid storage tank lids, water pipes and etc. is required.

If no leakage is detected, please contact your FAW authorized Hongqi dealer to check the cooling system for leaks.

#### ■ Selection of coolant

Use the Super Long Life Coolant for the whole year

For more details about engine coolant, please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.



 **CAUTIONS**

- When the engine is in hot condition
- When the engine is hot, do not add to it with coolant. The hot engine can be very dangerous. If the engine has ever run, the engine compartment can become extremely hot and seriously scald you.
- Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap and radiator cap.

There may be pressure inside the cooling system. Removing the radiator cap can cause the hot coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you or resulting in other injuries.

 **Caution**

- When adding coolant

The coolant specified by China FAW must be added to ensure normal lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling performance.

Please read the instructions on the coolant label.

- If the coolant splashes accidentally

Be sure to flush the spilled coolant with clean water to prevent damage to the components or the vehicle paint.

### Radiator, condenser and intercooler

Inspect radiators, condensers, and intercoolers, and any foreign objects should be removed.

When the radiator, condenser or intercooler is very dirty or abnormal, please contact China FAW authorized Hong qi dealer to check the vehicle.

 **CAUTIONS**

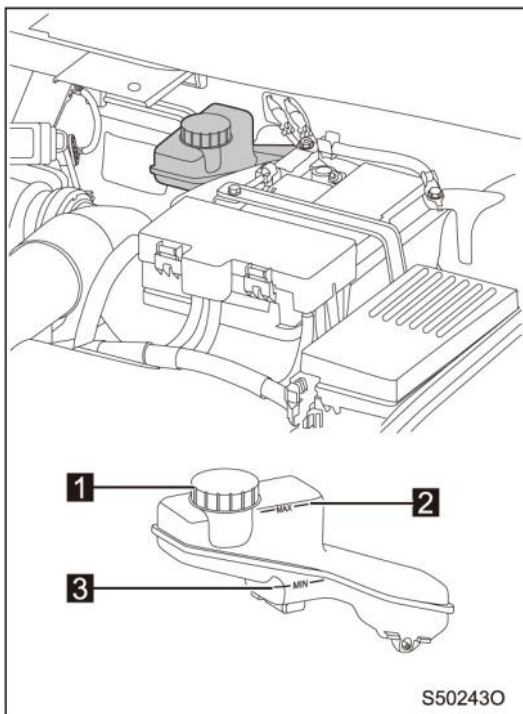
- When the engine is in hot condition

Do not touch the radiator, condenser or intercooler. Doing so may scald you.

### Turbocharged engine

- When the inspecting, removing, and replacing of the turbocharger is required, it must be performed after the engine is stopped and the turbocharger has cooled down.
- Do not drop any oil on the hot surface of the turbocharger, as this may cause a fire.
- Do not cool the turbocharger by pouring water on the hot surface of the turbocharger, as this may cause damage to the turbocharger.
- It is recommended to run at idle for 3 minutes after starting the turbocharged engine to ensure that the turbocharger is well lubricated.

### The brake fluid



**1** Brake fluid lid

**2** “MAX” (maximum)

**3** “MIN” (minimum)

If the level is at or below the “MIN” mark, add the brake fluid to bring it up to the “MAX” mark.

**CAUTIONS****■ Recautions about brake fluid adding**

- It is very dangerous when the brake fluid is spilled. If brake fluid gets into your eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical attention as soon as possible.
- Be careful not to spill brake fluid on your body or electrical components in the engine compartment. Failure to do so could result in personal injury or fire.

**■ Brake fluid level is too low**

- Low brake fluid level is very dangerous. Overflow level indicates the wears of brake lining or leakage of brake system. The brake may fail and cause serious accidents. If the level is too low, check the brake.
- If the liquid level is too low, add brake fluid until the liquid level rises to the "MAX" position. Thoroughly clean the area around the reservoir cap before adding brake fluid.

**Caution**

- Brake fluid can damage the paint surface. If the paint is accidentally splashed on you, wipe it off immediately.
- If a non-designated brake fluid is used, it may damage the brake system. It can also cause the system damages to mix different brake fluids.
- For adding or replacing a new brake fluid, please contact China FAW authorized Redflag dealer.

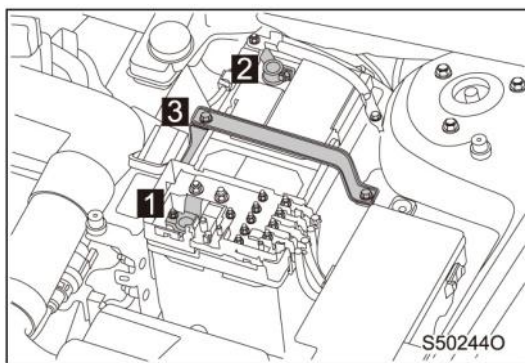
## Battery

### ■ Power Management System

When the battery runs down, some comfort functions may be limited and disabled to ensure vehicle startability. When the battery power is restored to the safe range, the above comfort type functions will be automatically restored to the user's set operating state to function.

### ■ Check the exterior of the battery

Ensure that the battery terminals are not corroded, the connections are not loosened, the external parts are free of cracks, and the fixing clips are not loosened.



- 1** Positive Terminal
- 2** Negative Terminal
- 3** Fixing clamp

### ■ During installation

- When wiring the battery, prevent the terminal cables from being connected reversely, otherwise the electric equipment in the car may be damaged.
- During storage, transportation, and installation of the battery, prevent the positive and negative terminals from contacting. For example, the metal wrench of the wiring can easily touch the positive and negative terminals at the same time. In this case, the battery may be short-circuited and cause direct failure.
- Because the battery has a small exhaust hole, do not lay it sideways or upside down during storage, handling, and installation of the battery to prevent leakage.
- When replacing the battery, replace the battery of the same model as the original one.
- When replacing the battery, if the wiring clip is oxidized or dirty, the oxide layer or dirt must be removed with sandpaper, etc. and then the wiring clip and battery terminal can be wired only after vaseline is applied.
- During installation, connect the positive terminal before connecting the negative terminal, and during disassembly, disconnect the negative terminal before disconnecting the positive terminal, to avoid short circuit danger.

**■ Before charging**

Pay attention to the following matters before charging:

- If the in-vehicle battery is to be charged, be sure to turn off the engine switch and disconnect the grounding wire.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is turned off when connecting/ disconnecting the charger cable to/from the battery.

**■ when using it**

- Prevent the battery exhaust port from being blocked, and pay attention to cleaning the exhaust port.
- The battery needs to be charged in the following situations:
  - The vehicle is used often for a short time and started frequently.
  - The vehicle often travels on traffic congested roads.
  - There are too many electrical consumers for the vehicle.
  - The vehicle travels more at night.
  - The vehicle has not been used for a long time.
  - The lamps stay on after parking.
  - The doors are not closed fully when parking.
- Turn on the air-conditioning, audio, lights and other electrical equipment for a long time in the state of the engine is not started.
- If the vehicle is stored for more than 30 days, in order to maintain the normal state of battery charging , you should:
  - Disconnect the negative grounding wire to prevent discharge of the battery due to additional current leakage.
  - Charge the battery once every 20-45 days.
  - Before the normal use of the vehicle, connect the vehicle to the battery and let it sit for over 4 hours to ensure that the idle start/stop function is used normally.

 **CAUTIONS**
**■ Chemicals in the battery**

The battery has toxic corrosive sulphuric acid and may lead to combustible and explosive hydrogen. To reduce the chance of serious personal injury, observe the following requirements when handling the battery or working near it:

- Do not touch the battery terminals with tools to avoid sparks.
- Do not smoke or open fire near the battery.
- Never let electrolytes get into eyes, skin or clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolytes.
- Wear safety goggles when you work on the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

**■ Safe place for battery charging**

Charge the battery in an open place. Do not charge the battery in a poorly ventilated garage or in an enclosed room.

**■ Emergency measures for handling electrolyte**

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes

Rinse your eyes with water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention immediately. If possible, continue cleaning your eyes with a water-soaked sponge or cloth on the way to a hospital.

- If electrolyte splashes on the skin, wash the area thoroughly. Seek medical attention immediately if burning pain occurs.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothing

It may infiltrate the clothing and stick to the skin. Remove contaminated clothing immediately and take the above measures if necessary.

- If you accidentally swallow the electrolyte

Drink large quantities of water or milk and then take magnesium oxide milk, chopped raw eggs or vegetable oil, and immediately call a physician.

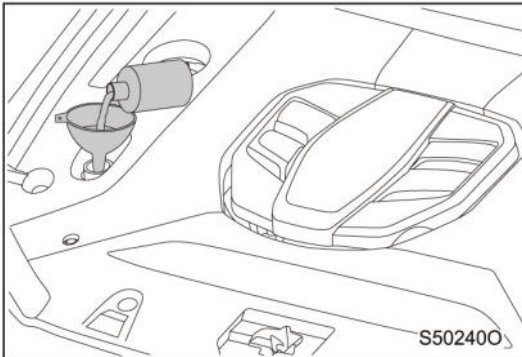
 **Caution**
**■ Precautions when charging the battery**

Do not charge the battery when the engine is running. Always switch off all accessories.

 **CAUTIONS**
**■ Do not disconnect the negative (-) terminal on the body side**

The disconnected negative (-) terminal may contact the positive (+) terminal, causing a short circuit and causing serious injury or death.

## Washer fluid



If any cleaner does not work or a message appears on the multi-function display of the instrument cluster, the cleaning fluid reservoir may be empty. Please add the cleaning solution in time.

 **CAUTIONS**
**■ When adding cleaning solution**

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running. Otherwise, if the washer fluid is splashed on the engine, a fire may be caused by the alcohol in the washer fluid.

 **Caution**
**■ Do not use liquids other than cleaning solution**

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of the washer fluid. Doing so may cause sagging of the painted surface on the vehicle.

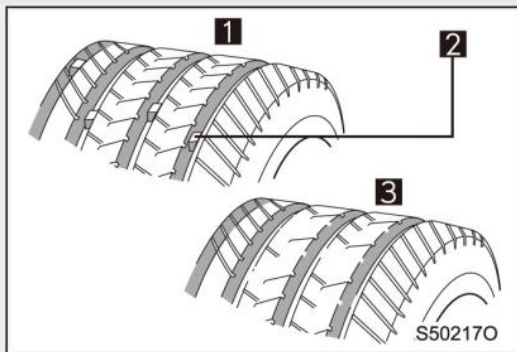
**■ Diluted cleaning solution**

If necessary, dilute the washer fluid with water.

Please refer to the freezing temperature on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

**According to the wear condition of the tire tread change the tire or perform the tire changing position.**

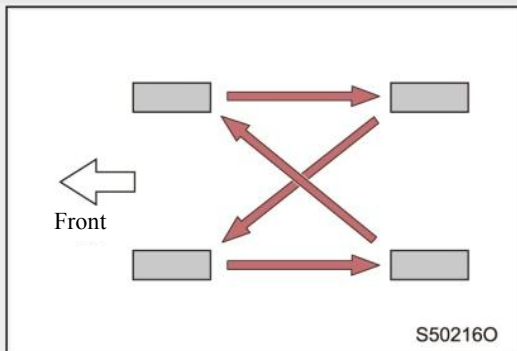
■ Check the tires.



- 1** New tread
- 2** Tread wear indicators
- 3** Worn tread

The replacement is needed when the tire worn to the Wear Mark (the picture is only a schematic).

■ Tire changing position



Tires should be rotated in the order shown in the figure.

In order to make the tire wear evenly and prolong its service life, it is recommended that you change the tire position after every 8,000 ~ 10,000km.

Tips:

1. The spare tire is a non-full-sized spare tire, which cannot be used for tire rotation but temporary use.
2. No spare tires have tire pressure monitoring sensors.
3. If tire rotation finishes, configure the tire pressure monitoring system. Contact your FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if necessary.



---

**■ Protective measures for wheel malfunction**

- When encountering curbs or similar obstacles, the vehicle should drive as slowly as possible parallel to the obstacles.
- Be careful not to let the tires come into contact with grease, oil and fuel.
- Regularly check the damage status of tires (such as cuts, cracks, or bulging damage), and remove debris embedded in the tire pattern.

**■ Tire storage instructions**

- Before disassembling the tire, make a mark on the tire to indicate the rotation direction of the tire. When installing the tire, replace it according to the mark to keep the rotation direction and dynamic balance of the wheel unchanged.
- Removed wheels and tires should be stored in a cool, dry place, preferably in a dark place without sunlight.

**■ Concealed damage**

- Damage to tires and rims is often not easy to find. If abnormal vibration or deviation of the vehicle is detected during driving, it indicates that a certain wheel is faulty. In this case, you should go to China FAW authorized Hong Qi dealer to check the wheel as soon as possible.

**■ When to replace the tire**

Tires should be replaced under any of the following conditions :

- When the tires have cuts, deep cracks or bulging.
- When the tires leak air frequently or when tire damage cannot be repaired.

**■ Tire life**

Avoid using tires with age over 6 years as possible as you can. If necessary, drive prudently at low speed.

**■ Driving on snowy roads**

If the snow tire tread wear depth reaches 4mm or more, the snow tire slip resistance will be significantly reduced.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Precautions for inspecting or replacing tires

To avoid damage to the components of the drive train and affecting the handling performance of the vehicle, which may cause accidents and serious personal injuries, follow the following precautions:

- Do not mix tires with different manufacturers, models, tread patterns or tread wear degrees.
- Do not use tires non recommended by China FAW.
- Never use tires with different radial lines, bias-belts or bias-ply.
- Do not mix tires for summer, all seasons and winter.
- Do not use tires used in other vehicles.



## Caution

### ■ Driving on rugged roads

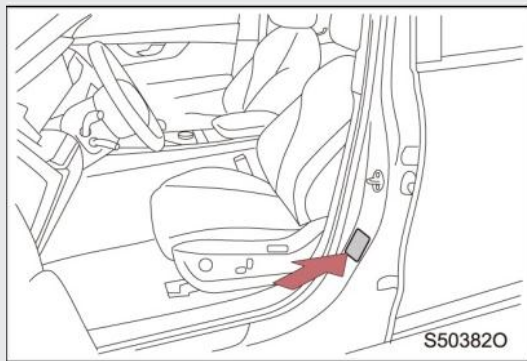
Exercise extreme caution when you need to drive on soft or pitted roads.

Such roads can cause the tires to bulge due to impact, eventually causing damage to the tires.

### ■ If the tire pressure lowers during driving

Do not continue driving any longer. Doing so may cause full damage to the tires and/or wheels.

**Be sure to maintain proper pressure in the tires. Check the tire pressure once per month at least.**



A tire pressure label is attached under the B-pillar lock of driver side.

#### ■ Consequences of incorrect tire pressure

Tire pressure too low:

- Rolling resistance increases. Fuel consumption increases.
- Reduced vehicle handling and stability.
- It may cause damage and high temperature, resulting in a flat tire. When the tire pressure is seriously insufficient, it may cause the tire to detach from the rim, reducing safety.
- Causes uneven wear on both sides of the tire.

Tire pressure too high:

- As a result, vehicle comfort is reduced.
- Cause excessive wear in the middle of the tire.
- Excessive tire pressure can easily cause internal cracks or punctures when the tire is impacted.

#### ■ Tire Pressure Test Guide

Check tire pressure timely even if your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system that can promptly alert you of tire pressure conditions.

Follow the following precautions for checking tire pressure:

- Carry out the check after the tires are cooled down.

If the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours, or has not traveled more than 1.5 km, the inspection can obtain accurate tire pressure readings.

- Make sure to use the tire pressure gauge.

The appearance of the tire may sometimes be misleading. In addition, even if it is slightly underinflated, the tire may reduce running smoothness and handling stability.

- Do not deflate or decompress the tires after driving. Increased tire pressure is normal after driving.
- Do not overload the car.

The occupant and baggage weights should be evenly distributed to balance the vehicle.



### CAUTIONS

■ **Proper inflation is the key to protecting the tires**

Be sure to maintain proper tire pressure. Failure to do so may cause one of the following conditions:

- Excessive wear \* Uneven wear \* Poor handling
- Tire burst due to overheating
- Weak bead sealing
- Deformed wheels or detachment of tires from wheels
- Tires are more likely to be damaged due to poor road conditions

■ **Do not drive the vehicle with improper tire pressure**

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle under incorrect tire pressure. Improper tire pressure may affect handling performance and cause accidents. Check the pressure in the normal tires, but also check the pressure in the spare tire.



### Caution

■ **Precautions for checking and adjusting tire pressure**

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve cap back.

If there is no valve cover, dirt or moisture may enter the valve and cause air leakage. This may cause an accident.

If the valve cap is lost, install a new one as soon as possible.

**If the rim is bent, cracked or severely corroded, it should be replaced.**

**Failure to do so may cause the tire to separate from the rim or cause loss of control of the vehicle.**

■ Choice of wheels

When replacing a wheel, take care to ensure that the replacement wheel has the same load carrying capacity, diameter, rim width and offset distance as the original wheel.

Contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for alternative wheels.

The following wheels are not recommended by China FAW:

● Wheels of different sizes or types.

● Old wheels.

● Be straightened wheels.

■ Precautions for aluminum wheels

● Be sure to use the special wheel nuts and wrench for this aluminum wheel.

● Check and confirm the tightening of the wheel nuts after the wheels changed position, repairing or replacing.

● When using tire chains, take care not to damage the aluminum rims.

● When balancing wheels, use only weights specified by FAW or equivalent products.



## CAUTIONS

■ **When changing wheels**

Make sure the wheels are the correct size for your vehicle. Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle.

■ **When installing wheel nuts**

● Tighten the wheel nuts until the washers come into contact with the wheel rim bolt slightly.

● Please do not apply oil or grease on wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

Oil and grease may make the wheel nuts over-tightened, resulting in damage to the bolts or spoke wheels. In addition, oil or grease may cause the wheel nuts to loosen and cause the wheels to fall off, which can cause accidents and cause serious injury or death. Remove all oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

■ **Prohibit the use of defective wheels**

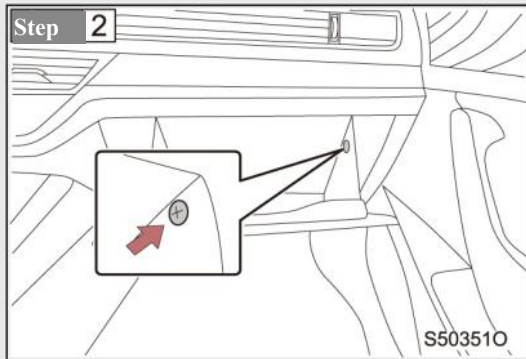
Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

Doing so may cause tire deflation while the vehicle moving, resulting in an accident.

**Air conditioning filters must be replaced regularly to maintain air conditioning performance.**

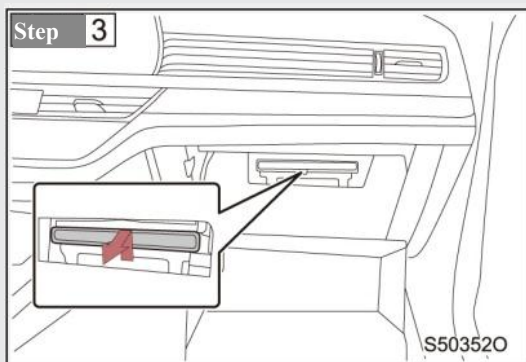
■ Replace the air conditioner filter

**Step 1** Turn the IGNITION switch OFF.

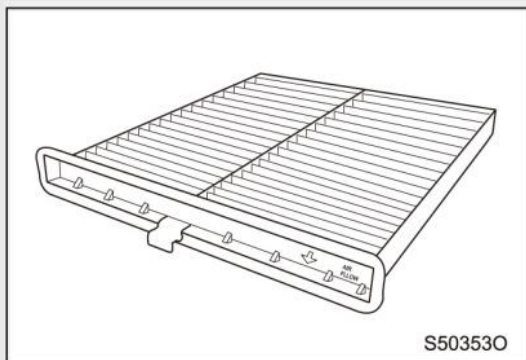


Open the glove box.

Remove the plastic fixing bolts on the left and right sides of the sundries box, disengage the limiter and flip the sundries box downward to the location where filter can be taken out.



Remove the A/C filter and replace it with a new one.



Replace the A/C filter with a new one of the same model.  
The arrow on the filter should point to the vehicle bottom.

---

- Chang interval time of air conditioner filter

If the vehicle is located or often driven in a dusty area or busy traffic area, the filter should be replaced more often.

- If the airflow in the vent is significantly reduced

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter, and replace it if necessary.

- A/C filter

If the filter needs to be cleaned or replaced, please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

 **Caution**

- **When using the A/C system**

Make sure the filter is installed.

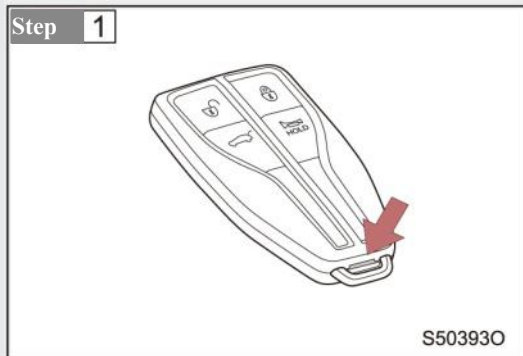
Using an A/C system without filter may cause damage to the system.

- **When removing the filter cover**

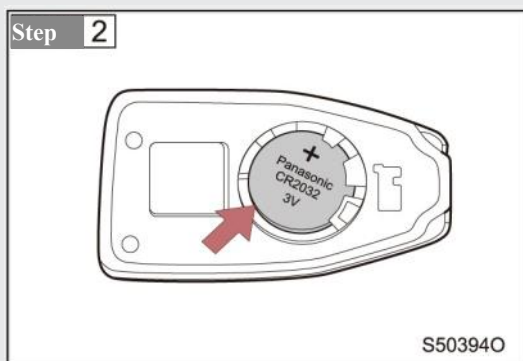
Do not replace the air filter while the blower is running. Doing so may cause personal injury.

If the smart key or card key battery is low, replace it with a new battery.

- The following items are required:
  - Lithium cell
- Replace the smart key battery

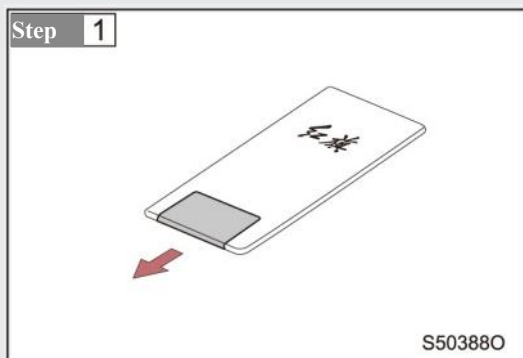


Disengage the key shell.



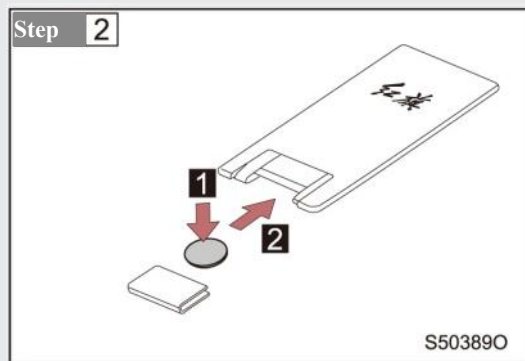
Remove the used battery from key panel. Insert a new cell with its positive pole facing up.

- Replace the card key battery



Pull out the battery compartment with force.





**1** Remove the used cell.

Insert a new cell with its positive pole facing down.

**2** Replace the battery and battery compartment into the smart key.

■ **If the key battery is low, the following conditions will occur**

- Wireless remote control function failure.
- Effective range of action decreases.
- Smart entry is dysfunctional.
- Passive start function fails.

■ **Use lithium battery**

- It is suggested that same or equivalent products recommended by the China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor can be used for replacement.

Battery model for the smart key: CR2032

Battery model for the card key: CR2016

- Old batteries must be disposed of according to local regulations.

**⚠ CAUTIONS**

■ **Replaced batteries and other parts**

away from the children.

These parts are small. However, if it is swallowed by a child inadvertently, it may cause suffocation.

**⚠ Caution**

■ **To ensure that the remote key works properly after replacing the battery**

To avoid accidents, the following precautions shall be observed.

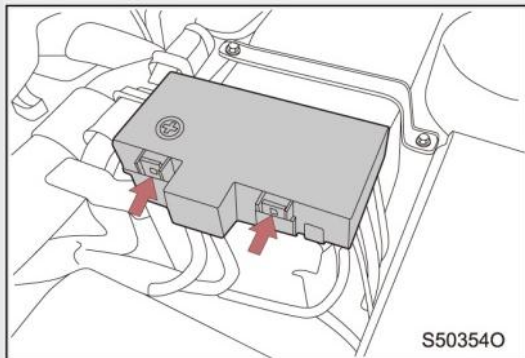
- When operating, both hands shall be dry. Otherwise, the battery may be rust.
- Do not touch or move any other parts inside the remote control key.
- Do not bend the battery terminal.

**If any electrical components are not working, a fuse may have blown. In this case, check it and replace the fuse if necessary.**

**Step 1** Turn the IGNITION switch OFF.

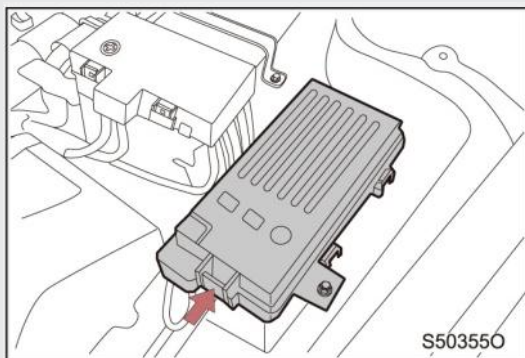
**Step 2** The fuses are located in the following positions. Follow the instructions below to check the fuses.

■ **Engine compartment (type A)**



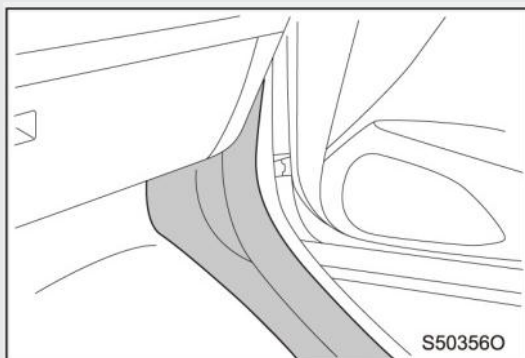
Press the tabs and open the fuse box lid.

■ **Engine compartment (type B)**



Press the tabs and open the fuse box lid.

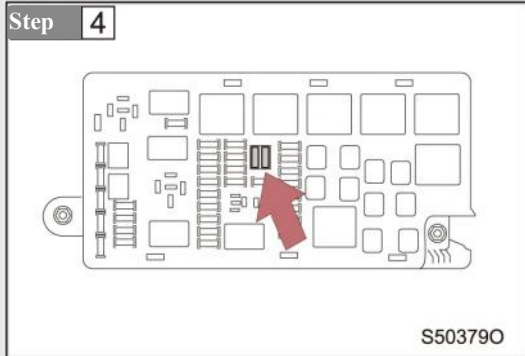
■ **Right front threshold decorative panel**



Remove the front right door sill trim board.

When replacing the fuse here, contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for replacement.

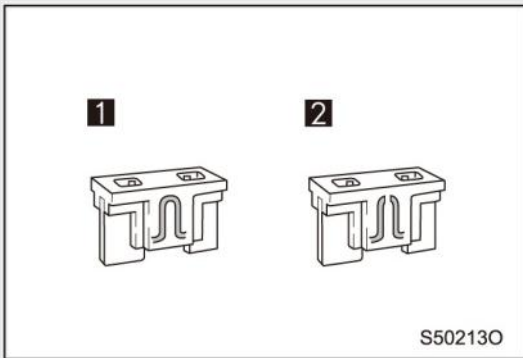
**Step 3** If there is a trouble in the system, contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for specific instructions on which fuses to check.



Remove the fuse with the fuse puller.

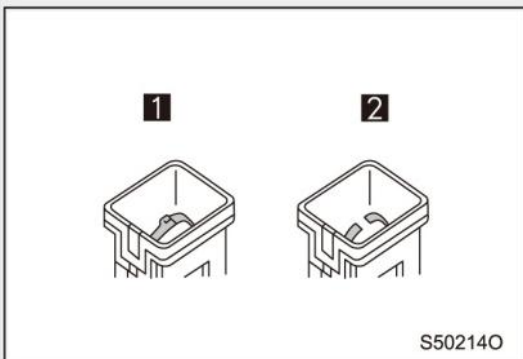
**Step 5** Check whether the fuse is blown or not.

►Type A



- 1** Normal Fuse
- 2** Blown fuse

►Type B



- 1** Normal Fuse
- 2** Blown fuse

Replace the fuse with one of the China-FAW-approved rating amperage.

---

■ **Fuse distribution and rated amperage**

For the fuse distribution and ampere ratings, contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for confirmation.

■ **After replacing the fuse**

- If the electrical function still does not work after replacing the fuse, further inspection may be required. Please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributors.
- If the replacement fuse blows again, please contact China FAW authorized Hong qi dealer to inspect the vehicle.

■ **If the circuit is overloaded**

The fuse will be blown, resulting in damage to the entire harness.



**CAUTIONS**

■ **Prevent system failure and vehicle fire**

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious damage / fire to the vehicle or personal injury.

- Never use fuses higher or lower than the rated amperage.
- Make sure to use the same or equivalent products recommended by the China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor.

Never replace the fuse with a wire, even temporary replacement is not allowed, otherwise it may cause serious damage or even fire.

- Do not modify fuses or fuse boxes.



**Caution**

■ **Before fuse replacement**

Please contact with the China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor to identify the cause of excessive electric load and repair.

**8-1. Important information**

Hazard warning lamps.....340

SOS warning .....341

**8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies**

If the vehicle needs to be towed .....342

If any abnormality is found on the vehicle .....347

If a warning lamp turns on or a warning buzzer sounds .....348

In the case of a flat tire.....354

If the engine cannot be started .....362

If the key is lost .....363

If the key does not work properly .....364

If the battery is low.....366

If the vehicle is overheating .....369

In case of the vehicle stuck.....371

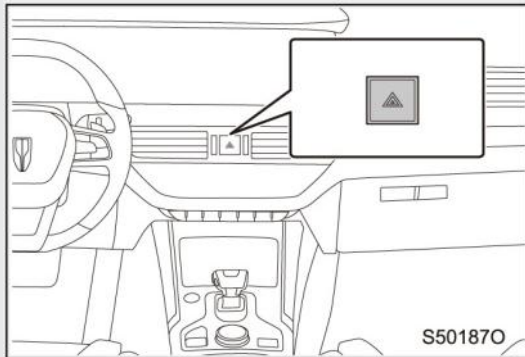
If you drive on water-covered roads .....372

In case of a punctured tire .....373

If an accident occurs.....374

Trunk lid emergency open .....375

**When the vehicle fails, stop by the roadside while using the hazard warning lights; when the vehicle cannot move due to a fault, place a triangle warning sign at the rear of the vehicle while turning on the hazard warning lights. Wear a reflective vest if necessary.**



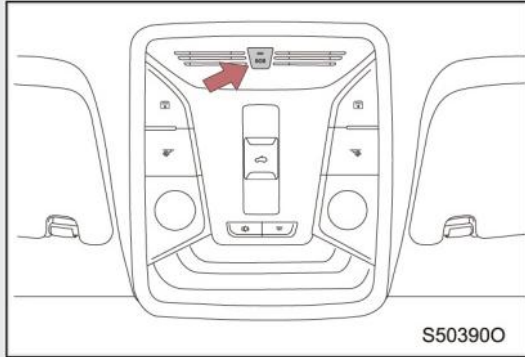
By pressing the emergency flasher switch, all turn signal lamps will flash; by pressing it again, turn the emergency flashers off.

 **Caution**

■ **Preventing low battery power**

When the engine is not running, turn off the hazard warning lights if they are not needed.

If you need help in emergency, press and hold SOS alarm switch for 3 seconds to call for emergency rescue, SOS indicator will change from steady light to flashing, and the background service will arrange a proper rescue service after receiving your call for help.



SOS alarm switch is located at the rear of the front interior light.

 **Caution**

- Use the SOS alarm switch when needed.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies  
If the vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, FAW recommends having your vehicle towed using a flat bed truck by the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer or a commercial towing service.

All traction must use safety chain devices and comply with local laws and regulations

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi dealer before towing.

- The engine is operating but the vehicle will not move.
- The transmission makes an abnormal sound or vibration.

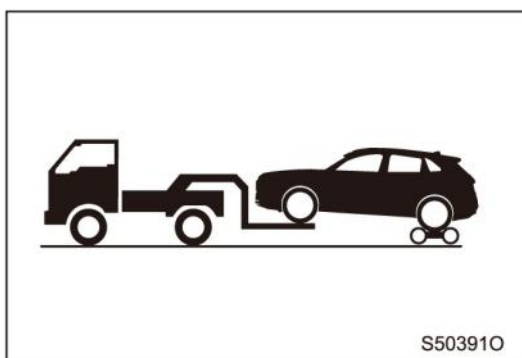
Do not use a sling-type truck for towing



Do not use a sling-type truck for towing to prevent damage to the vehicle body.

Towing with a wheel-lifting truck from the front

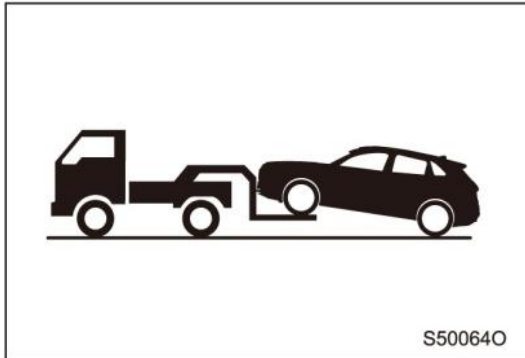
- Four-wheel drive



Place the towing vehicle under the rear wheels.

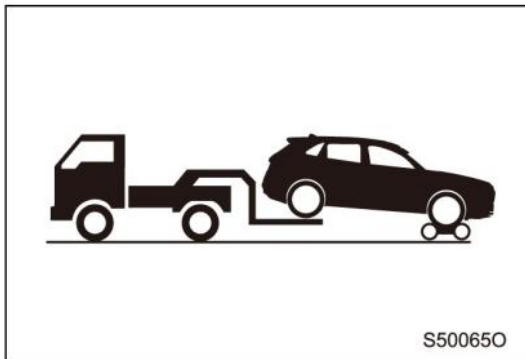


■ Two-wheel drive



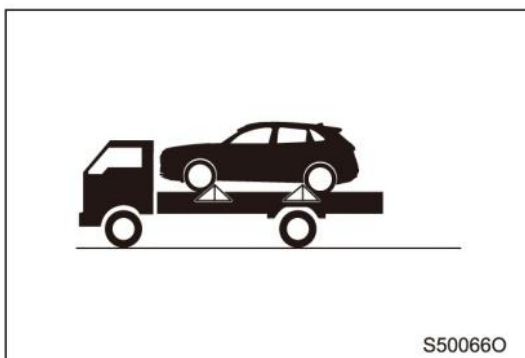
Deactivate the parking brake.

Towing with a wheel-lifting truck from the front



Place the towing table under the front wheel.

Using a flat bed truck



Apply the electronic parking brake, and turn off the engine switch.

Stop blocks should be used under each of the 4 wheels in order to prevent vehicle movement.

As shown in the figure, tie tires on the base plate of the tow truck to secure the vehicle.

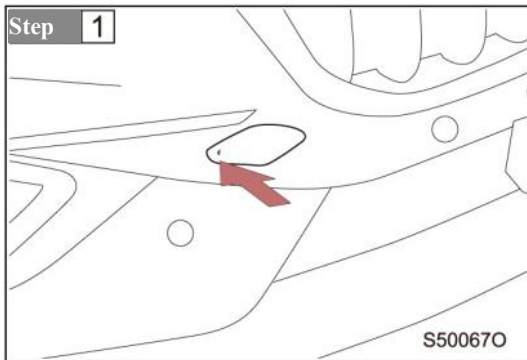
### Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed by fastening a cable or chain to the emergency towing eyelets and shifting the gearbox to N. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

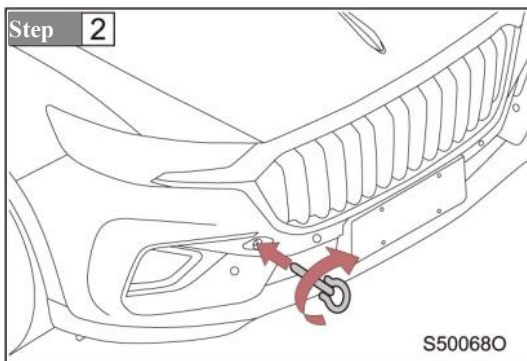
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

### Emergency towing procedures

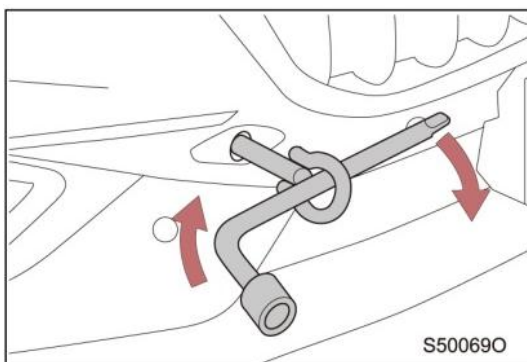
#### ■ Front section



Press the left side of the hole cover of traction ring and release the hole cover of traction ring.



Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a tire wrench.

**Step 4** Firmly secure the towing cable or chain onto the towing eyelet.

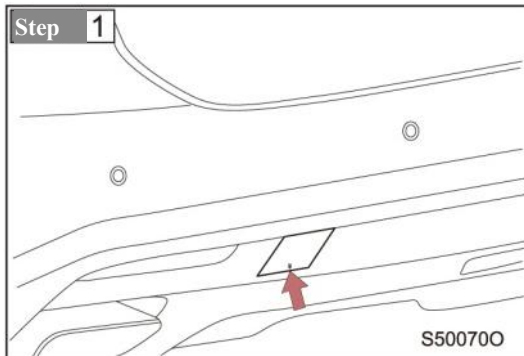
Don't damage the body.

**Step 5** Enter the towed vehicle and start the engine.

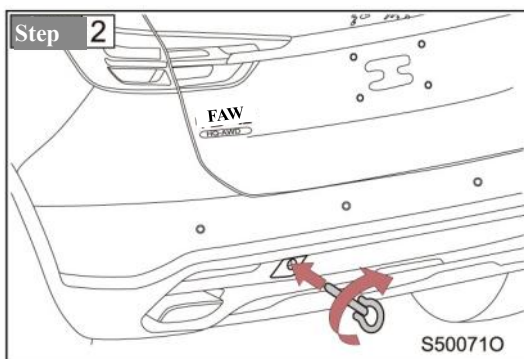
If the engine can not be started, turn the engine switch to "IG- ON" mode.

**Step 6** Release the electronic parking brake and shift the gear into N gear.

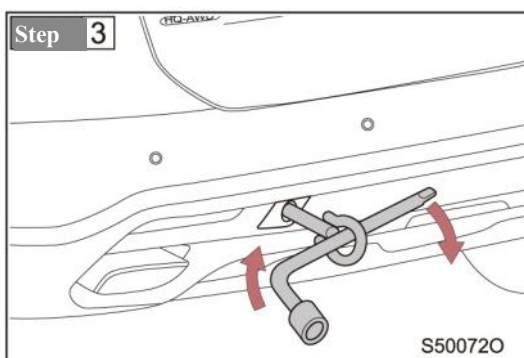
■ Rear section



By pressing the lower end of the towing eyelet lid, release the towing eyelet lid.



Insert the towing ring in the hole and tighten it slightly by hand.



Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a tire wrench.

■ **While towing**

If the engine does not run, it means the brake and the steering wheel's power assistant system are not working, which makes steering and braking even more difficult.

■ **Towing eyelet**

Towing eyelets are stored in the vehicle tool box. (See P.358)



**CAUTIONS**

Please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious personal injuries, even death.

■ **While towing vehicles**

Make sure to transport vehicles when their front wheels or all the four wheels are off the ground.

If towing a vehicle when its front wheels are on the ground, its power train system and related parts might be damaged.

■ **While towing**

- When towing with a rope, avoid any sudden start, or it would generate excessive tensile force to the towing eyelet or rope.

Traction rings or ropes may break. Broken fragments may hit the human body and cause serious injury.

- Do not put the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode. The steering wheel might be locked and thus unavailable for any operation.

■ **Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle**

Make sure the towing eyelets securely installed.

If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing. It may cause an accident as a result.



**Caution**

■ **When towing with a wheel-lifting truck, prevent any damage to the vehicle**

When lifting the vehicle, make sure the landing end of the vehicle has enough ground clearance for towing. Otherwise, during towing, the vehicle might be damaged.

■ **When towing with a sling-type truck, prevent any damage to the vehicle**

Do not use any sling-type truck for towing no matter from the front or rear section of the vehicle.

■ **Prevent damage to the vehicle when using a platform truck trailer**

- Do not drive over the holding blocks, or it would damage the tires.
- Do not tie the vehicle onto parts (e.g. the suspension) other than tires.

**If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor.**

■ Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.

(It is normal for the air conditioner to drip water after use. It is normal to drip water from the drain hole on the exhaust pipe.)

- Flat tires or tires wear unevenly.
- The coolant temperature of the engine is continuously higher than normal.

■ Audible symptoms







- The exhaust sound is abnormal.
- The tire noise is excessively high around turns.
- Abnormal suspension noise.
- Engine related noise.

■ Operational symptoms










- The engine stalls and is unstable or erratically runs.
- Power reduces obviously.
- Serious braking deviation while braking.
- Serious vehicle direction deviation while driving on a flat road.
- The brakes fail, the brake pedal is soft or the pedal almost touches the floor.

Calmly perform the following actions if any warning lamp lamps up or flashes. If the warning lamp lamps up or flashes and goes out subsequently, it does not necessarily mean a system fault. However, if this continues to occur, please contact China FAW authorized Hongqi dealer to inspect the vehicle.










List of warning lamps



Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<p><b>IHC system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates a failure in IHC system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Low fuel level warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates that there is too little remaining fuel.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Refuel the vehicle.</b></p>
	<p><b>Engine control system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If this warning light is still lighting after the engine started, it means that there is a fault in the engine control system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Engine exhaust gas monitoring system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If this warning light is still lighting after the engine started, it means that there is a fault in the exhaust gas monitoring system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Battery charging fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If this warning light is still lighting after the engine started, it means that there is a fault in the charging system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Abnormal engine oil pressure warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates that the motor oil pressure is too low.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>


Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<p><b>Airbag system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a malfunction in the airbag system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Seat belt reminder lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The driver or passenger seat belt is not fastened.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Fasten the driver and passenger seat belts.</b></p>
	<p><b>Transmission system/electronic shifting system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a malfunction in the transmission system / electronic shifting system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Engine immobilizer system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates that the engine anti-theft system is malfunctioning.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Ignition switch fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• engine (ignition) switch is malfunctioning</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Key battery low warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates that the key is low on power.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Replace the key battery.</b></p>
	<p><b>Electronic wiper system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The electronic wiper system is defective.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Bulb fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicate that vehicle exterior lighting is failure.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Check the bulbs and wiring harness connectors of external lamps for faults, or contact China FAW authorized Hongqi dealer immediately.</b></p>
	<p><b>Cleaning fluid level low warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicate that the cleaning fluid level is too low.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Add the washer fluid or contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer immediately.</b></p>

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<p><b>Coolant high temperature warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Too high temperature of coolant</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Brake system failure warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates that the brake system is faulty.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.</b></p>
	<p><b>Brake lining excessive wear warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates that the brake pads are worn excessively.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Contact China FAW authorized Hongqi dealer immediately to check and replace the brake pads.</b></p>
	<p><b>EPS system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EPS system fault warning lamp</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Please drive the vehicle with caution and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>EPS system serious fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EPS system fault warning lamp</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>ABS system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in ABS system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>AUTO HOLD system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in AUTO HOLD system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Shock absorber system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a problem with the shock absorber system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Constant speed cruise system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates that the cruise control system is faulty.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>



Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<p><b>HBB system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in HBB system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Electronic steering column system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates that the electronic steering column adjustment system is faulty.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>EPB system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in EPB system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Abnormal tire pressure/system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a fault in the TPMS system or abnormal tire pressure.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>FCW system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in FCW system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>AEB system fault alarm light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in AEB system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>LDW/LKA system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in LDW/LKA system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>BSD system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in BSD system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>HDC system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in HDC system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<p><b>Passive start system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates that there is a malfunction in the smart start system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>IFC system camera fault warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates a failure in IHC system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>TSR system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates that the TSR system is faulty.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Automatic driving light / automatic wiper function fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates that there is a problem with the automatic driving light / automatic wiper system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Adaptive cruise control (ACC) fault warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates a failure in ACC system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Seat memory fault alarm light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates a malfunction in the seat memory function.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Four-wheel system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates that the four-wheel drive system is faulty.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Idle start-stop system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates that the idling start-stop system is faulty.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Driving mode selection system fault warning lamp</b></p> <p>Indicates a failure in the driving mode selection.</p> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>SACC system steering assistance fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Indicates a failure in SACC system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<b>Headlight height automatic adjustment system fault warning indicator</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Indicates that the headlamp beam height automatic adjustment system is faulty.</li></ul> → <b>Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</b>

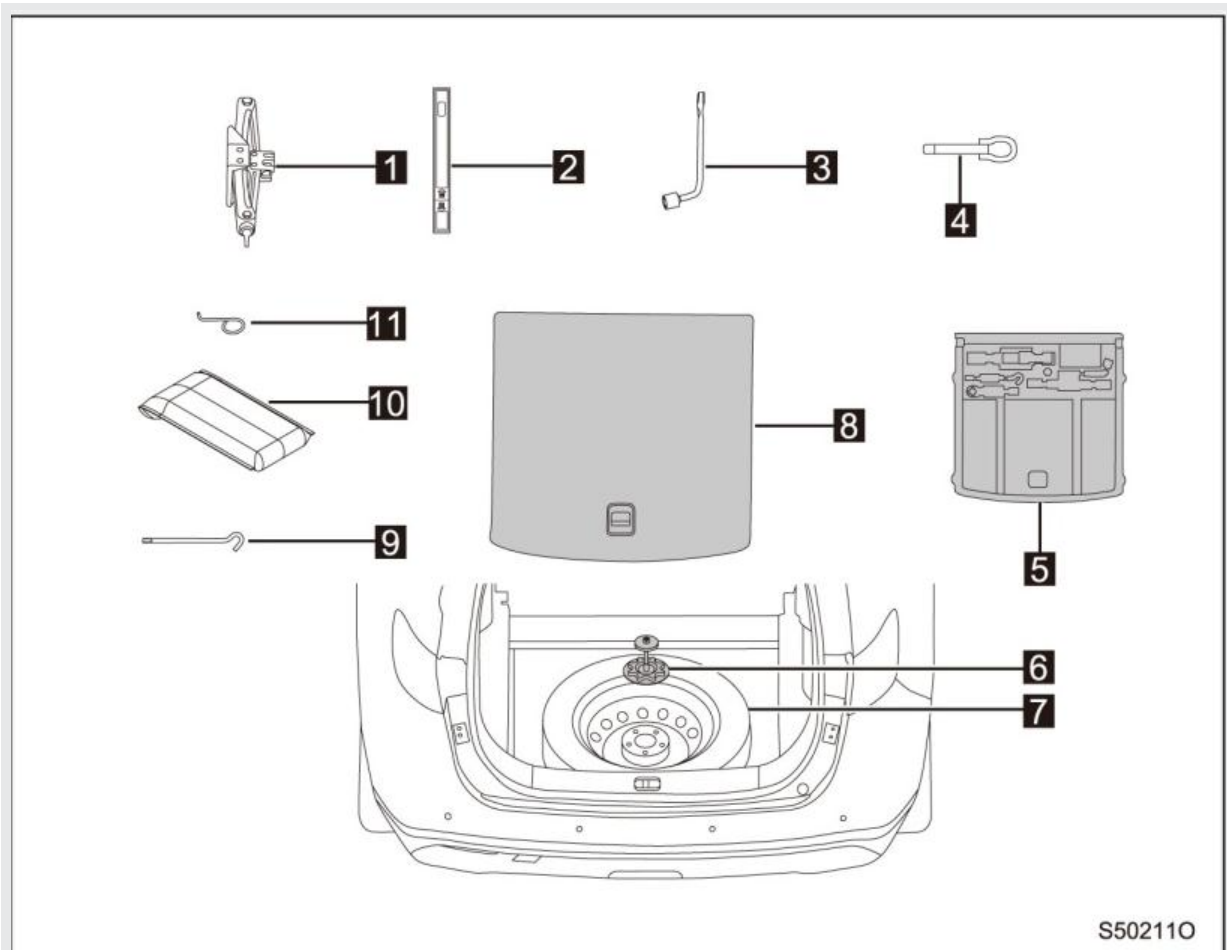
Note: when the oil pressure warning lamp and coolant temperature warning lamp lamps up, the warning buzzer rings.

**Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare.**



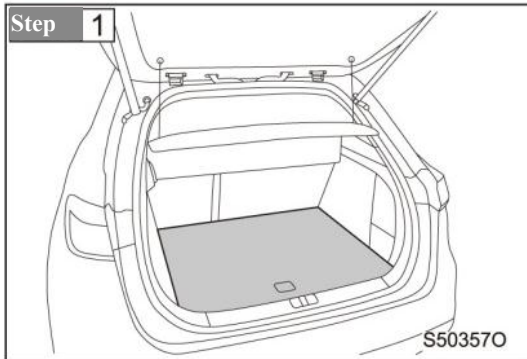
**CAUTIONS**

- **Do not drive a vehicle with a flat tire**
  - Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
  - Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, causing an accident.
- 
- Before raising the vehicle
    - Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
    - Apply the electronic parking brake
    - Shift the gear position to P gear
    - Shut down the engine.
    - Turn the warning lamp on, and place the warning triangle.

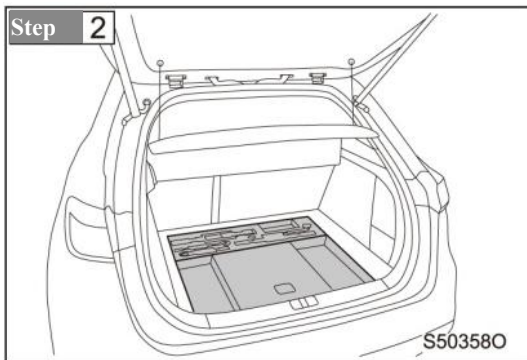


- 1** Jack
- 2** Warning triangle
- 3** Tire wrench
- 4** Towing eyelet
- 5** Vehicle tool box
- 6** Spare tire fasteners
- 7** Spare tire
- 8** Trunk carpet
- 9** Jack handle
- 10** Reflective vest assembly
- 11** Dismantling tool for wheel decoration cover\*

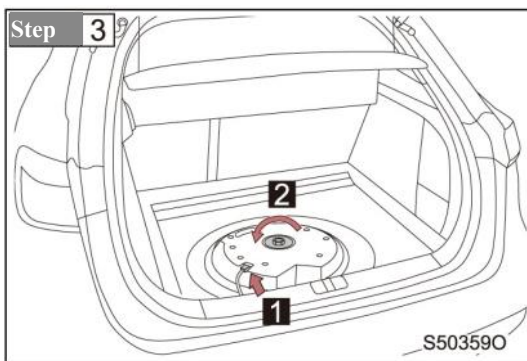
Take out the spare tire



Take out the carpet floor.

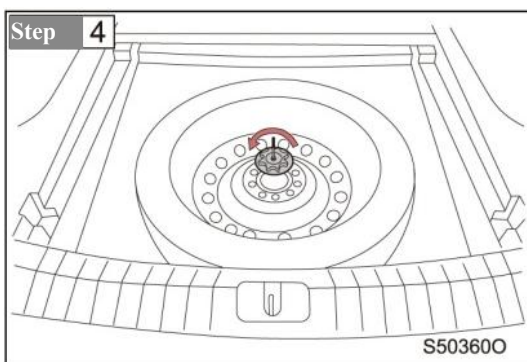


Take out the vehicle tool box.



**1** Disconnect the speaker connector.

**2** Use a tire wrench to loosen and remove the fixture, and take out the speaker.



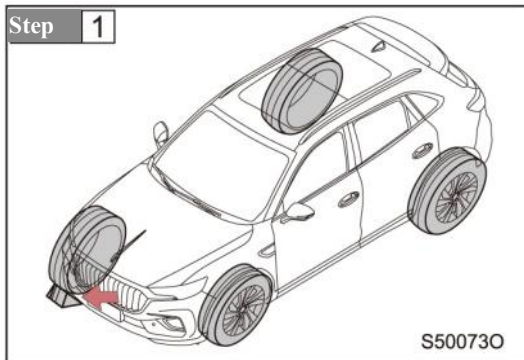
Unscrew and remove the spare tire fasteners to take out the spare tire.

**⚠ CAUTIONS**

- When accessing the spare tire

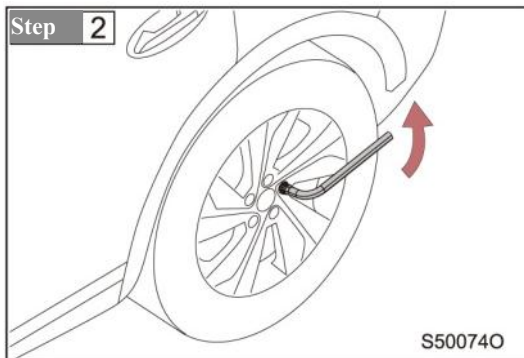
Be careful, and do not let your finger or other body part between the spare tire of the vehicle body.

**Flat tire replacement**



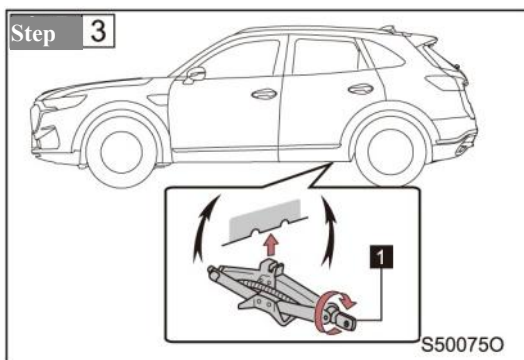
Use holding blocks to wedge the tire.

Wheel with air leakage		Tire Block Position
Front wheel	Left	Rear of rear-right tire
	Right	Rear of rear-left tire
Rear wheel	Left	Rear of rear-right tire
	Right	Rear of rear-left tire



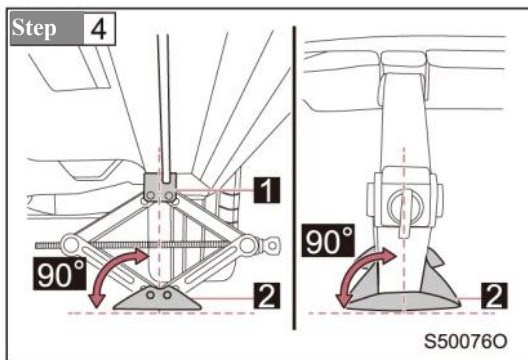
Use a tire wrench to loosen the wheel nut slightly (one turn).

For some models, the wheel bolts must be removed after the wheel trim cover is removed.

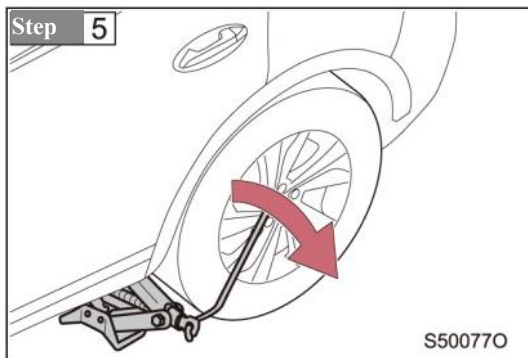


Turn the tire jack portion “1” with your hands until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

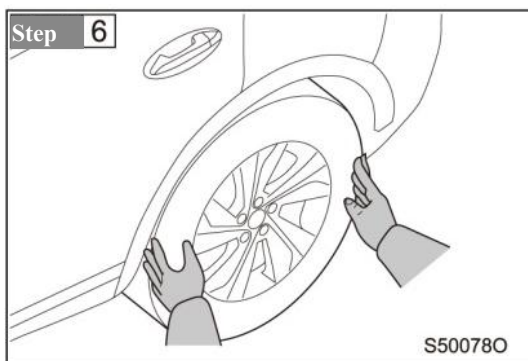
The jack point marks are under the sill panel. Please support the vehicle according to the jack point positions.



Calibrate the jack positions to make its notch “1” cover the jack point and the base plate “2” flatly attached to ground. At this moment, the base plate “2” must be vertically under the jack point.



Insert the jack handle into the hole of the jack. Rotate the jack handle to raise the vehicle to keep the wheels slightly off the ground.



Remove all the wheel nuts and the wheel.

When resting the wheel on the ground, place the wheel with the wheel spoke facing upward to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



**CAUTIONS****■ Replace the flat tire**

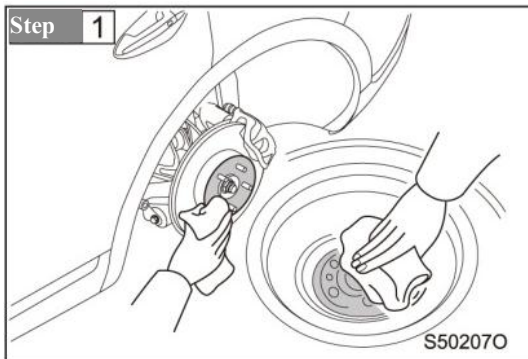
- Do not touch the area around the wheels or the brake immediately after driving.

After driving, the area around the wheels or the brake will be very hot. When changing tires, touching these areas with hands, feet, or other parts of body may cause burns.

- If the following notes are not followed, the wheel nuts might be loose and the wheels may come off, thus severe personal injuries even death might occur.
- After the wheel replacement, tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torques with an torque wrench as soon as possible.
- Do not install severely damaged wheel trim cover as they may come off the wheels while the vehicle is running
- When installing wheels, use only wheel nuts designed for this wheel.
- If bolts or nuts on the wheels have any crack or deformation, have the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer to inspect the vehicle.
- Please correctly and securely tighten the wheel nuts.

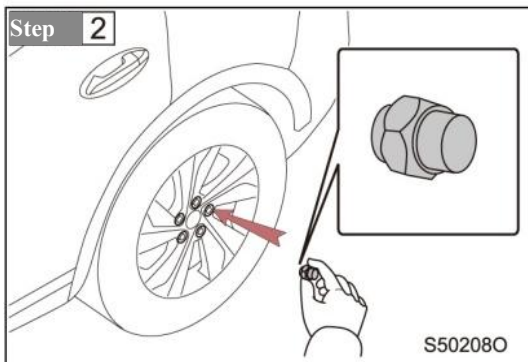
It is dangerous when the wheel nuts are improperly tightened or loose. The wheel might wobble or come off. It might make the vehicle out of control and lead to severe accidents.

Installing the spare tire

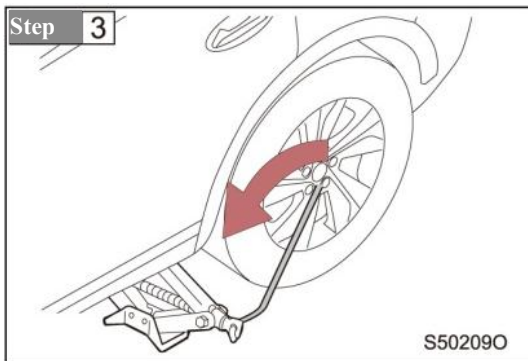


Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

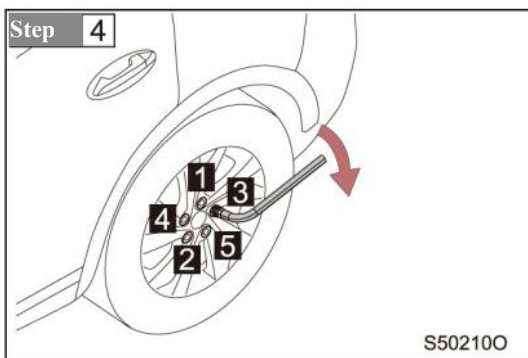
If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.



Install the wheel and tighten each wheel bolt by hand with the same force.



Lower the vehicle.



Firmly tighten each wheel nut in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:

108.7-147N.m

**CAUTIONS****■ After tools and jacks is used**

Before driving, make sure that all tools and jacks are firmly secured in their storage locations to reduce the possibility of personal injury in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

**■ Cleaning before installing wheels**

If there is a foreign object on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nut may become loose while the vehicle is running, which may cause the wheel to leave the vehicle.

**■ Installing the spare tire**

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to standard value in the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- Have FAW authorized Hongqi dealer inspect and replace the wheel if the wheel bolt hole is damaged or cracked.

**Caution****■ Do not drive a vehicle with a flat tire**

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, causing an accident.

**If the engine cannot be started**

**If the engine does not start even after performing the correct starting procedure (see P.121), consider the following reasons.**

■ Even if the starter is running normally, the failure reason that the engine cannot start may be one of the following conditions:

- Insufficient fuel in the fuel tank of the vehicle

Add fuel to the vehicle.

- There may be oil spilling off the engine.

Try to go through the correct engine starting procedure again. (See P.121)

- The key may not be able to work properly.
- The engine anti-theft system is malfunctioning. (See P.51)

■ The starter rotates slowly, the interior lamps and headlamps are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume

One of the followings may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery is low. (See P.366)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

■ The starter is not operating

Electrical failure (e.g. short circuit) may cause engine start failure.

■ The starter does not run. The interior lights and headlights are off or the horns are not sounding. The cause of the failure may be one of the following.

- The battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged.

If the fault cannot be rectified or repaired, please contact China FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

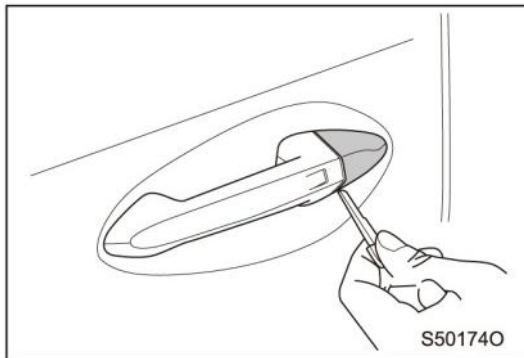
**If the key is lost**

**If key is lost or stolen, please provide China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor with the remaining keys. After rematching the keys, the lost or stolen keys will be invalid. Improper modification or use of unauthorized spare parts may cause system failure.**

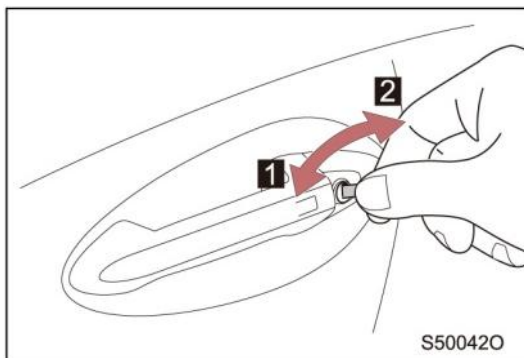
If the key does not work properly

If the communication between the smart key and the vehicle is interrupted (see P.85) or the smart key cannot be used due to insufficient battery power, the smart entry and wireless remote control functions will not be available. At this point, the following steps can be performed to open the door or start the engine.

Lock and unlock the doors.



Open the door keyhole cover using the mechanical key.



Lock and unlock the vehicle using the mechanical key.

**1** Lock door

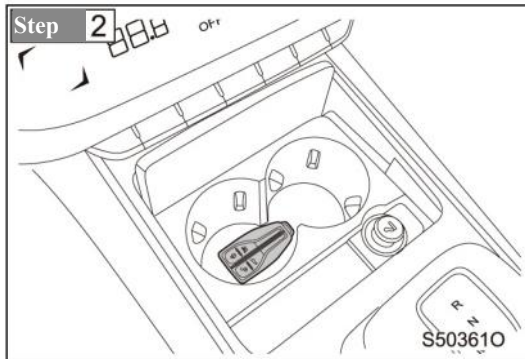
**2** Unlocking door

### Backup starting mode

When the key battery is low, a backup start mode is required.

**Step 1** Shift the gear position to P gear, step the brake pedal down, and then press the engine switch.

At this time, the multi-function display of combination meter prompts that the key can't be recognized.



Open the front cup holder, and put the smart key/card key into the cup holder.

**Step 3** Hold the brake pedal down and press the engine switch to start the engine.

If it still fails to start the engine, please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributor.

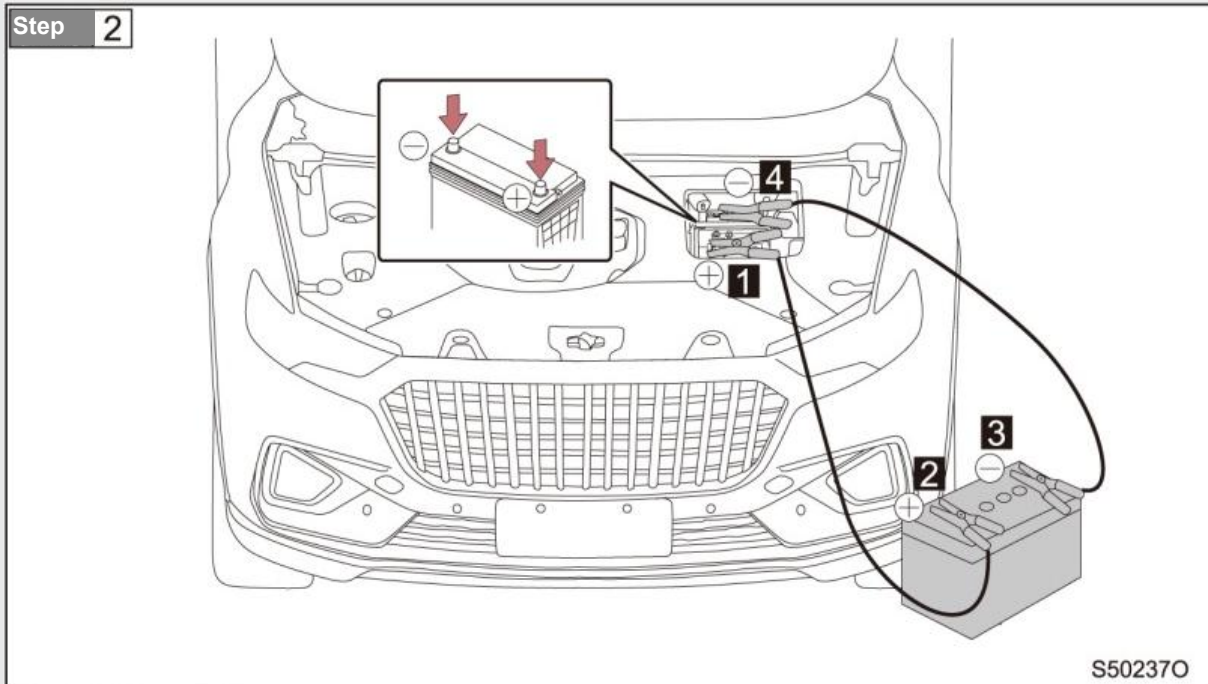
#### ■ Replacing the key battery

Replace the smart key battery if it is weak. (See P.334)

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.  
Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer or a qualified repair shop.

If there is a set of jumper cables (or auxiliary cables) and another vehicle with a 12V battery with you, your engine can be jump started with the following steps.

**Step 1** Remove the battery trim cover and open the positive cap.



Connect the jumper cables

**1** Connect to the positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.

**2** Connect to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

**3** Connect to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

**4** Connect to the negative (-) battery terminal on your vehicle.

**Step 3** Start the engine of another vehicle. Increase the engine speed of the other vehicle slightly and keep it at about 5 minutes to recharge battery of your vehicle.

**Step 4** Keep the engine of another vehicle running and switch the engine switch of your vehicle to "IG-ON" mode to start the engine.

**Step 5** Once the vehicle engine is successfully started, remove the spanning cable in exactly the opposite order as it was connected.

Once the vehicle is started, contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer as soon as possible.



### ■ To prevent battery depletion

- Turn off the headlamps and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off all unnecessary electronics when the vehicle travels at low speeds for a prolonged period of time (such as in traffic jams).

### ■ When you disassemble the battery or the battery runs out

- The engine may not be started.

### ■ Battery charging

- Due to self discharge of the battery and loss effects caused by some electrical appliances, electricity stored in the battery will be consumed gradually. If the vehicle leaves unused for a long time, the battery energy will deplete and the engine may not be started. (The battery is automatically charged when the engine is running)

### ■ When replacing batteries

- Use batteries conforming to the genuine standards.
- Use the batteries having the same battery compartment size with the original one and having the equal or larger capacity.
- If use a battery that is with a different battery box sizes, the battery may not be properly seated.
- If a battery with a small capacity is used, the battery may be exhausted and the engine may not start even if the vehicle is idle for a short period of time.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ When disassembling the battery terminals

- Be sure to remove the negative (−) terminal first. If any metal in the surrounding area is contacted when the positive (+) terminal is removed, a spark may be generated, a fire may be caused, and an electric shock may be caused, which may cause serious injury or even death.

#### ■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.

- Make sure that the jumper cables are connected to the correct terminals and that you cannot accidentally touch terminals other than the correct terminals.
- Do not let the other end of the jumper cable connected to the “+” terminal touch any other parts or metal surfaces (such as a bracket or any non- paint metal) in this area.
- Do not allow the “+” clips and clips of the jumper cable to contact each other
- Do not ignite a fire, smoke or use matches, cigarette lighters near the battery.
- Take care when connecting the negative cable to the vehicle.

Sparks may be generated when connecting the second jumper cable. Sparks can explode the gas near the battery and cause personal injury.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **Battery precautions**

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- Always wear safety goggles when handling the battery and be careful not to allow the battery fluid to come in contact with your skin, clothing or body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- If the battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Keep children away from the battery.
- Keep the jumper cable away from moving parts.

It is dangerous to connect jumper cables to or around moving parts such as cooling fans. When the car starts, the cable may get stuck and cause serious personal injury.

If the battery gets aged, its continued use may cause the foul gas emission of battery, which may harm the occupants' health. Please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer as soon as possible by then.

 **Caution**

■ **When Jumper Cable is Operated**

- When connecting or disconnecting the jumper cable, be careful not to get the cable entangled with the cooling fan or engine belt.
- Only one 12 V auxiliary battery can be used. Otherwise, it may damage 12 V starter, ignition system, and other electrical components.

**If the vehicle is overheating**

**Following situations may indicate an overheating vehicle.**

- Coolant high temperature alarm, or feel engine power drop
- Steam comes out from the engine compartment cover.
- Correction procedures

**Step 1** Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the A/C system.

**Step 2** Check to see if steam is coming out from the engine area.

**If you see steam:**

Shut down the engine. Carefully lift the engine compartment cover after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

**If you do not see steam:**

Leave the engine operating and carefully lift the engine compartment cover.

**Step 3** Check if the cooling fans are operating.

**If the fans are operating:**

Wait until the engine coolant temperature starts to drop (the engine coolant temperature is displayed on the instrument cluster). Then stop the engine.

**If the fans are not operating:**

Stop the engine. Then contact China FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

**Step 4** After the engine has cooled sufficiently, check the engine coolant level, and then check for radiator leaks.

**Step 5** Add engine coolant if necessary. (See P.318)

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer if engine coolant is unavailable in an emergency.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ Precautions during inspection

To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the engine compartment cover of your vehicle, observe the following precautions.

- If steam is seen coming from under the engine compartment cover, do not open the engine compartment cover until the steam has subsided. The engine may be very hot, causing serious injuries such as burns.
- Do not approach fan and belt when the engine is operating.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injuries, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

 **Caution**

■ **When adding engine coolant**

After the engine is fully cooled, slowly add the coolant to it. When the engine is very hot, fast filling coolant may damage the engine.

■ **To prevent damage to the cooling system**

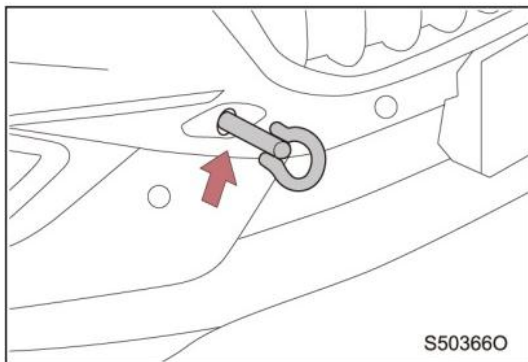
Please observe the following precautions:

- Avoid foreign objects (such as sand or dust) in the coolant.
- Do not use any coolant additive.

**If the wheels spin or the vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, please perform the following procedures.**

- Step 1** Shut down the engine. Apply the electronic parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Step 2** Remove the mud, snow or sandy soil around the trapped tire.
- Step 3** Place wooden blocks, stones or other materials under each tire to increase tire grip.
- Step 4** Restart the engine.
- Step 5** Shift the gearshift to D or R gear position, and carefully depress on the accelerator pedal to drive away from the obstacle.

■ **Emergency towing**



- In emergency, tie the emergency towing cable or chain to a second vehicle to tow this vehicle with a towing eyelet if it is stuck or can not move.
- For details on towing, refer to "If the vehicle needs towing" in this chapter. (See P.342)
- Towing other vehicles with this vehicle is not recommended.

**⚠ CAUTIONS**

■ **Try to get rid of trapping conditions**

If the forward and backward movement method is used to make the car get out of the trap, make sure that the surrounding area is open and smooth, so as to avoid colliding with other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or backward suddenly as it becomes free; please pay extra attention.

■ **When operating the shift lever**

Do not depress the accelerating pedal by mistake during gear shifting. Otherwise, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and cause serious accidents.

**⚠ Caution**

■ **Avoid damage to the transmission and other components**

- Do not operate the engine at high speed to prevent wheel spin.
- If you are still unable to get rid of the trapped condition after trying these methods, you will need a trailer rescue.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies  
If you drive on water-covered roads

**The vehicle accidentally enters the water when driving on the stagnant road. Please contact China FAW authorized Hongqi dealer to check the following items:**

- Inspect the braking efficiency of the brake.
- Check the oil quantity and oil quality of the engine and transmission (when the lubricating oil is cloudy, it means that water is mixed and should be replaced)..
- Lubrication of transmission shaft, bearings, joints, etc.



When driving on waterlogged roads, it is easy to cause the engine to stall due to water ingress and short circuit of electrical components. Do not try to start the engine after the engine has stalled; otherwise it may cause serious engine damage.

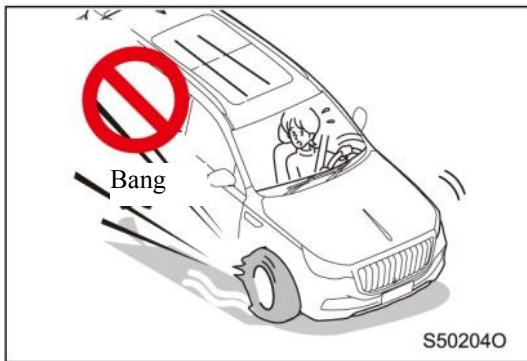
## 8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies In case of a punctured tire

### **When a puncture occurs while driving, please be calm.**

While holding onto the steering wheel tightly, depress on the brake pedal slowly to decelerate the vehicle. Emergency braking or quick turns of the steering wheel may make the vehicle go out of control.

The tire may be punctured or broken in the following situations:

- When the steering wheel vibrates.
- When the vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- When the vehicle dips abnormally.

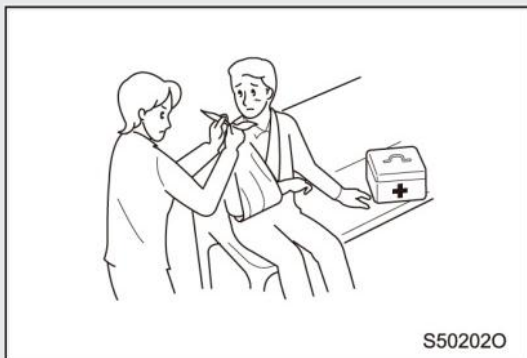
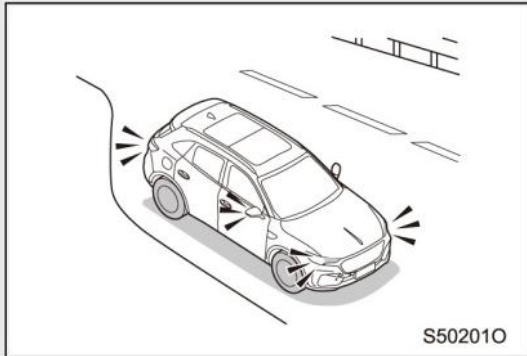


Do not drive with a punctured tire.

Do not continue driving with a punctured tire, otherwise, it might easily cause accidents. In addition, it will cause damage to the tire, rim, suspension and body. At this time, please replace the tire immediately or contact China FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies  
In case of an accident

Stay calm and follow the methods below:



**1** To prevent subsequent accidents.

Move the vehicle to a safe area avoiding affecting the traffic, and turn off the engine.

**2** Adopt emergency treatment measures if someone is injured.

First aid should be administered before emergency response arrives. For head injuries, do not move as much as possible; in consideration of prevention of subsequent accidents, it may be necessary to move the wounded to a safe area before help arrives.

**3** Call the police.

**4** Communicate with the responsible party and request his/her information (ID, insurance card, phone number).

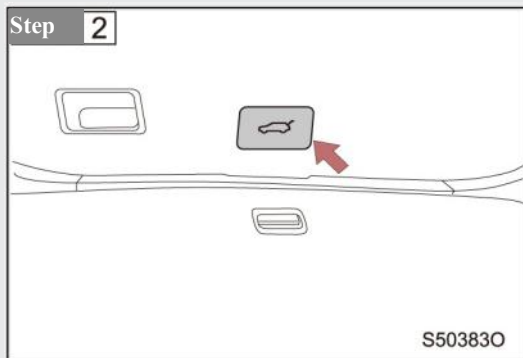
**5** Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer and your insurance company.



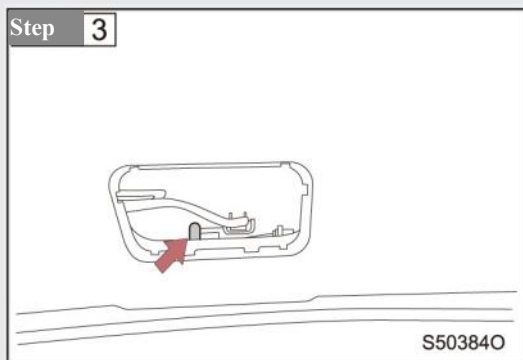
Emergency opening of trunk

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the trunk lid can be opened:

**Step 1** You can access the trunk through the folded rear right backrest.



Open the emergency release cover on the trunk lid.



**Step 3** Push the unlock pin of the trunk lid lock and open the trunk lid.

 **CAUTIONS**

- Be careful when opening or closing the trunk lid by hand in case of injury!
- Do not leave children or people in need of help alone in the car. Children and people in need of help may be trapped in the car and cannot evacuate or rescue themselves.
- Depending on the season, the temperature inside a locked vehicle may be very high or very low, and people in the vehicle are extremely vulnerable to injury, illness or even death. The impact on young children is particularly severe.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid. Make sure no one is between the trunk lid and the door frame.

 **Caution**

■ **Prevent vehicle damage**

When opening or closing the trunk lid in emergency, carefully disassemble the parts to avoid damaging the vehicle.



**9. Specifications**

Maintenance data .....378

Fuel information .....390

### Dimensions

- Model No.: CA6471T, CA6471, CA6472HA6, CA6472HA6T

Overall length	4,760 mm
Overall width	1,907 mm
Overall height	1,700 mm
Front Overhang	967 mm
Rear Overhang	923 mm
Wheel Base	2,870 mm
Wheel Track	1,630 mm
Front	1,630 mm
Rear	1,630 mm
Approach angle (no load)	20°
Departure angle (no load)	28°

### Seating capacity

Seating capacity	5
------------------	---

### Drive mode

- Model No.: CA6471T, CA6472HA6T

Drive mode	Smart all-wheel drive
------------	-----------------------

- Model No.: CA6471, CA6472HA6

Drive mode	Front-wheel drive
------------	-------------------

## Curb weight

- Model No.: CA6471T, CA6472HA6T

Curb weight		1,805kg
Maximum permissible total mass		2,255kg
Full- load axle load	Front	1,148kg
	Rear	1,107kg

- Model No.: CA6471, CA6472HA6

Curb weight		1,755kg
Maximum permissible total mass		2,205kg
Full- load axle load	Front	1,136g
	Rear	1,069kg

## Emission standards

- Model No.: CA6471T, CA6471, CA6472HA6, CA6472HA6T

Emission standards	China VI
--------------------	----------

## Total fuel consumption under specified test conditions

- Model No.: CA6471T, CA6472HA6T

ENGINE MODEL:	CA4GC20TD-32
Comprehensive fuel consumption (L / 100km)	8.4

- Model No.: CA6471, CA6472HA6

ENGINE MODEL	CA4GC20TD-32
Comprehensive fuel consumption (L / 100km)	7.9

**Vehicle Performance**

■ Model No.: CA6471T, CA6472HA6T

Maximum net power/speed	160 kW ( kilowatt )/ (4500-5500) r/min
Rated power/engine speed	165kW ( kilowatt )/ (4500-5500) r/min
Maximum output torque/engine speed	340 N·m / (1650-4500) r/min
Maximum grade ability	≥40%
Maximum speed	204 km/h

■ Model No.: CA6471, CA6472HA6

Maximum net power/speed	160 kW ( kilowatt )/ (4500-5500) r/min
Rated power/engine speed	165kW ( kilowatt )/ (4500-5500) r/min
Maximum output torque/engine speed	340 N·m / (1650-4500) r/min
Maximum grade ability	≥30%
Maximum speed	210km/h

**Front wheels alignment (no-load)**

Front-wheel camber angle	-4'±30'
Master pin caster angle	6°44'±30'
Kingpin inclination angle	13°59',±45'
Front wheel toe-in	β=5'±5' 2β=10'±10'
Maximum steering angle (inner wheel/outer wheel)	41°25'/33°13'
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	463.5mm

**Rear wheel alignment (no load)**

Rear-wheel camber angle	-49'±45'
Rear wheel	$\beta = 16':\pm 5'$ $2\beta = 32':\pm 10'$
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	468mm

**Suspension**

- Model No.: CA6471T, CA6472HA6T

Front suspension	Type		McPherson independent suspension
	Spring type		Helical spring
	Shock absorber type		Double cylinder hydraulic inflatable damper / continuous damping damper
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Hollow stabilizer bar
Diameter		Φ29.2mm	
Rear suspension	Type		Multi-link independent suspension with a transverse stabilizer bar
	Spring type		Helical spring
	Shock absorber type		Double-cylinder hydraulic inflatable shock absorber / continuous damper.
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Filled stabilizer bar
Diameter		Φ21.6mm	

■ Model No.: CA6471, CA6472HA6

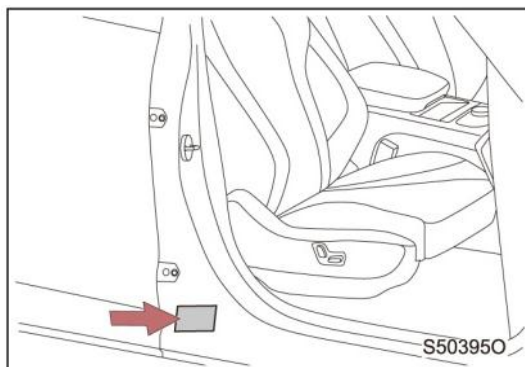
Front suspension	Type		McPherson independent suspension
	Spring type		Helical spring
	Shock absorber type		Binocular hydraulic gas filled shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Hollow stabilizer bar
		Diameter	Φ29.2mm
Rear suspension	Type		Multi-link independent suspension with a transverse stabilizer bar
	Spring type		Helical spring
	Shock absorber type		Binocular hydraulic gas filled shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Filled stabilizer bar
		Diameter	Φ21.6mm

New vehicle running-in technical conditions

The running-in mileage of the new car is 1500km. When driving within 1000km, the engine speed cannot be higher than 3/4 of the rated speeding. During 1000 ~ 1500km, the engine speed can be increased to the rated speed according to the road conditions.

Vehicle Identification

■ Manufacturer's label



As in the figure, the manufacturer's label is located on the right B-pillar.

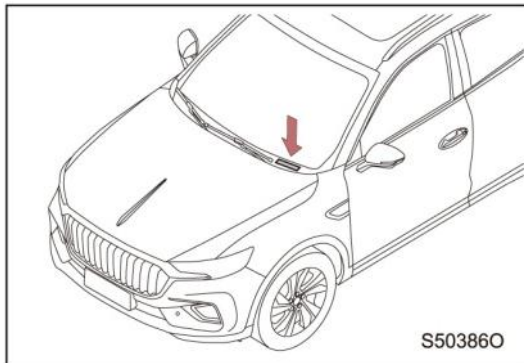
The contents of the manufacturer's nameplate include the following: manufacturing country, manufacturing plant, vehicle identification code, brand, vehicle model, number of passengers, maximum allowable total mass, engine model, maximum net power of the engine, engine displacement and production date.



### ■ Vehicle identification number

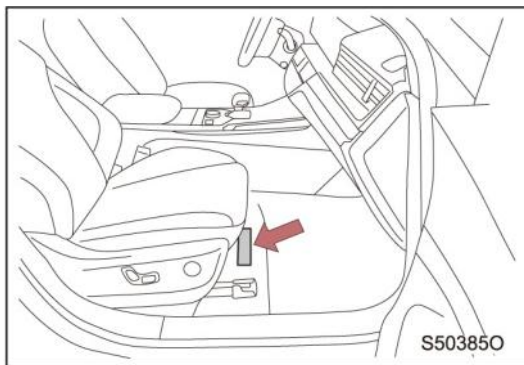
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is a unique code to identify a motor vehicle. This is the main identification code of a vehicle, which is used for vehicle registration.

#### ► Dashboard upper left



The sticker is affixed under the front window glass on the upper left of the dashboard.

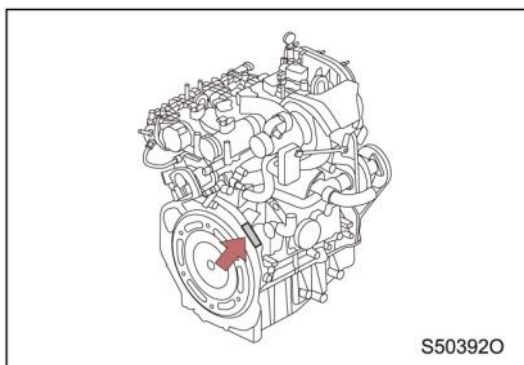
#### ► The bottom of the front passenger seat



Embossed under the front passenger seat.

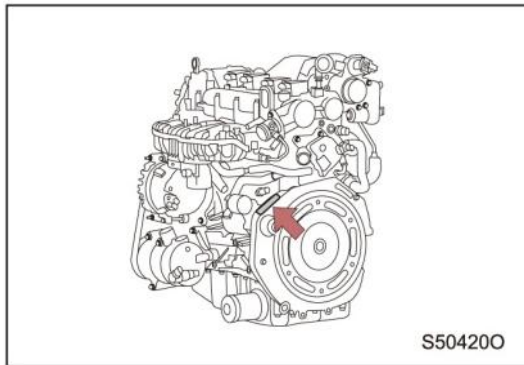
### ■ Engine model and leave-factory number

#### ► Type 1



As shown in the figure, the engine number is embossed on the engine cylinder block.

► Type 2



As shown in the figure, the engine number is embossed on the engine cylinder block.

**Engine**

<b>Model</b>	CA4GC20TD-32
<b>Type</b>	Inline four-cylinder, four-stroke, water-cooled, double overhead camshaft, 16 valve, intake and exhaust WT, Gasoline Direct Injection, supercharged gasoline engine
<b>Bore and stroke</b>	82.5x93 mm
<b>Displacement</b>	1.989L

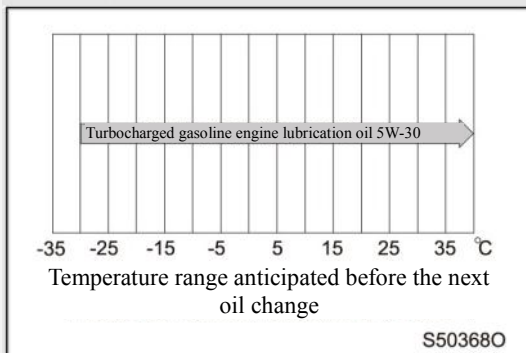
**Fuel**

<b>Fuel type</b>	Gasoline
<b>Octane value</b>	95# or above
<b>Fuel tank capacity (for reference)</b>	64L

**Lubricating system**

■ CA4GC20TD-32 gasoline engine

<b>Oil capacity (drain and refill)</b>	6L
<b>Filling amount after changing oil and oil filter</b>	5.3L
<b>Filling quantity after replacing the oil separately</b>	5L

Oil quality grade	SM
Oil viscosity grade	FAW turbocharged engine oil 5W-30
Select the oil viscosity grade according to the use environment humidity	 <p style="text-align: center;">Temperature range anticipated before the next oil change</p> <p style="text-align: right;">S503680</p>

### Cooling system

- Model No.: CA6471T, CA6471, CA6472HA6, CA6472HA6T

Capacity	7±0.1L
Coolant type	Use long-lasting coolant (G30-91) throughout the year

### Ignition system

- CA4GC20TD-32 gasoline engine

Sparking plug model	3707010-27L
Clearance	0.6-0.7mm

### Electrical system

Battery	12V. 80Ah maintenance free battery
---------	------------------------------------

**Four-wheel drive power take-off**

Capacity	310±30mL
Specification	80W-90

**Rear main retarder**

Main retarder oil capacity	480±30mL
Main retarder oil specification	80W-90

**A/C refrigerant**

A/C refrigerant capacity	550±25 g
A/C refrigerant specification	R134a

**Transmissions**

- Model No.: CA6471T, CA6471, CA6472HA6, CA6472HA6T

Transmission fluid type	6-Gear automated manual transmission
Transmission fluid capacity	6.7L
Transmission fluid type	AW-1

 **Caution**

- Automatic transmission fluid
- Use of automatic transmission oil other than the prescribed will worsen the shifting effect or burn the internal clutch plate of the transmission.
- Change the automatic transmission oil only when necessary.

Brake system
--------------

Free stroke of brake pedal	≤8mm
Travel of brake pedal	120mm
Brake fluid capacity	0.85±0.05L
Brake fluid type (in accordance with GB12981-2012)	DOT4

Reasonable use range of the brake friction pair
---

## ► Front

Pad thickness	Standard thickness	Overall thickness 18.8mm	Thickness of friction material 11.5mm
	Standard thickness	Overall thickness 9.3mm	Thickness of friction material 2mm
Brake disc thickness	Standard thickness	30mm	
	Standard thickness	28mm	

## ► Rear

Pad thickness	Standard thickness	Overall thickness 15.75mm	Thickness of friction material 10mm
	Standard thickness	Overall thickness 7.75mm	Thickness of friction material 2mm
Brake disc thickness	Standard thickness	12mm	
	Minimum Thickness	10mm	

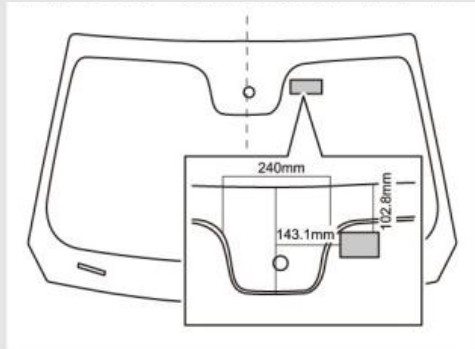
 **Caution**

When the brake pad is worn to the min. thickness, there will be audible alarm reminding you to replace the brake pad as soon as possible.

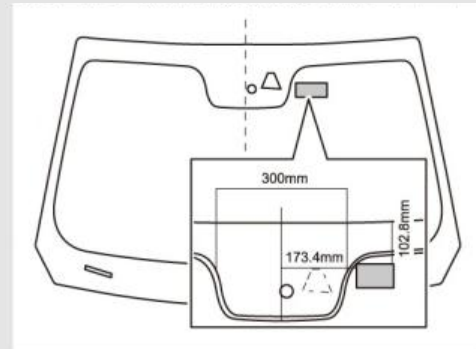
**Microwave window**

Suggested position of microwave window (shown in cab view)

Vehicle without multifunctional camera



Vehicle equipped with multifunctional camera



**Tires and wheels**

Tire specifications	255/45 R20 101 W 235160 R18 103W			
Wheel size	20*8.5J		18*7 J	
Tire pressure kPa (bar)		3 persons	ECO	Full Load
	Front	230 (2.3)	270 (2.7)	260 (2.6)
	Rear	230 (2.3)	270 (2.7)	260 (2.6)
Wheel nut torque	108.7-147N.m			
Wheel dynamic balance requirements	Remaining amount imbalance: ≤ 5g			
Spare tire specifications	T145/ 80 R18			
Spare tire pressure kPa (bar)	420 (4.2)			

**Seat (with a deep cushion)**

Front seat	Position at front & rear (from the guide rail rear end position to the front)	120mm
	Backrest angle	25°
Rear seats	Position at front & rear	Unadjustable
	Backrest angle	25°

The normal service condition of seat backrest: any position within the adjustable range designed for the backrest is the normal service condition.

**Bulb**

	Bulb	W	Lamp source type	Lamp color
Exterior lamping and signal devices	Front position lamp	13.5	LED	White
	Low beam	18	LED	White
	High beam	36	LED	White
	Front turn signal lamp	7.5	LED	Amber
	Front fog lamp	8	LED	White
	Side turn signal lamp	2.4	LED	White
	Rear position lamp	17	LED	Red
	Brake lamp	30	LED	Red
	Rear fog lamp	2.5	LED	Red
	Reversing lamp	12	LED	White
	Turn back signal	16.5	LED	Amber
	High-level brake lamp	4	LED	Red
	Illuminating lamp	1.5	LED	White
Interior lamping system	Vanity lamp	1.2	LED	White
	Room lamp	5	LED	White
	Dome map lamp	2.5	LED	White
	Auxiliary instrument panel ambient lamp	0.3	LED	White/several colors
	Footwell lamp multicolor	0.3	LED	White/several colors
	Glove box lamp	0.3	LED	White
	Ashtray lamp	0.3	LED	White
	Trunk lamp	0.3	LED	White

**You must only use unleaded gasoline in your vehicle.**

**To achieve the best engine performance, you must unleaded gasoline of 95# or above in your vehicle.**

In order to ensure emission control performance and malfunction diagnosability, FAW recommends you use gasoline specified in the local standard of each city.

---

■ **Fuel tank opening specially for motor gasoline**

In order to prevent the wrong fueling, the fuel tank refueling port of this vehicle can only accommodate the dedicated refueling of the vehicle gasoline refueling pump.

■ **If the engine knocks**

- Please contact with China FAW authorized Hongqi distributors.
- Occasionally, a brief and slight knocking sound is heard during acceleration or climbing. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

 **Caution**

■ **Notice on fuel quality**

- Do not use any unsuitable fuel. If you use unsuitable fuel, the engine may be damaged.
- Unsuitable fuel can cause engine or exhaust gas monitoring system failure.
- After adding fuel by mistake, please clean the fuel system thoroughly and check the hijacking machine. Please contact China FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.



Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China.....394

## Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China

Navigation, voice recognition, and related functions that need to be connected to the Internet to use the mobile APP and the car APP are temporarily unavailable in other countries and regions except for China, and mainly include the following contents in this manual:

1. 5-3 Navigation\* and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China
2. 5-11 Voice recognition\* and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China
3. 5-12 Mobile phone APP\* and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China
4. 5-13 HONGQI Smart Connect\* and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China

Other information

List of Abbreviations .....394

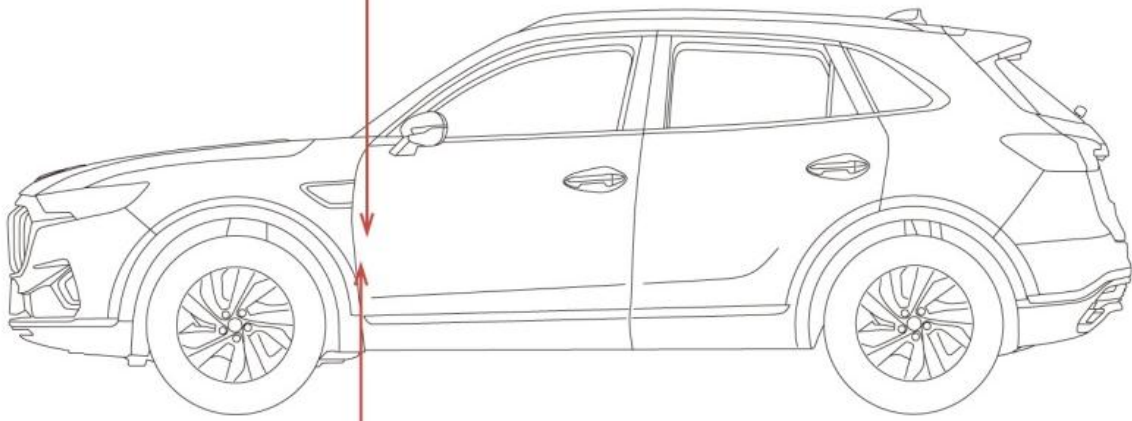
Abbreviations	Meaning
ABP	Automatic Brake Prefill
ABS	Antilock Brake System
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control
ADS	Auto Defrost system
AEB	Autonomous Emergency Braking
APA	Auto Parking Assist
AQS	Air Quality System
BSD	Blind Spot Detection
CDD-S	Controlled Deceleration for ACC-Stop & Go (autonomous cruise control deceleration control (ACC stop-and-go type))
CDP	Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake (Parking brake deceleration)
CO	Carbon Monoxide
DSM	Driver Status Monitoring
EBD	Electronic Brakeforce Distribution
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
EMS	Engine Management System
EPB	Electrical Parking Brake
EPS	Electric Power Steering
ESC	Electronic Stability Control

Abbreviations	Meaning
ESS	Emergency Stop Signal
FCW	Forward Collision Warning
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assistant
HBB	Hydraulic Brake Boost
HDC	Hill Descent Control
HHC	Hill Hold Control
IFC	Intelligent Front Camera
IHC	Intelligent High Beam Control
LDW	Lane Departure Warning
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LKA	Lane Keeping Assist
MIN	Minimize
MAX	Maximum
MOD	Moving Object Detection
MTP	Media Transfer Protocol
OBD	On-Board Diagnostic
POI	Point of Interest
SACC	Super Adaptive Cruise Control
TCS	Traction Control System
TPMS	Tire Pressure Management System

<b>Abbreviations</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition
USB	Universal Serial Bus
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Networks

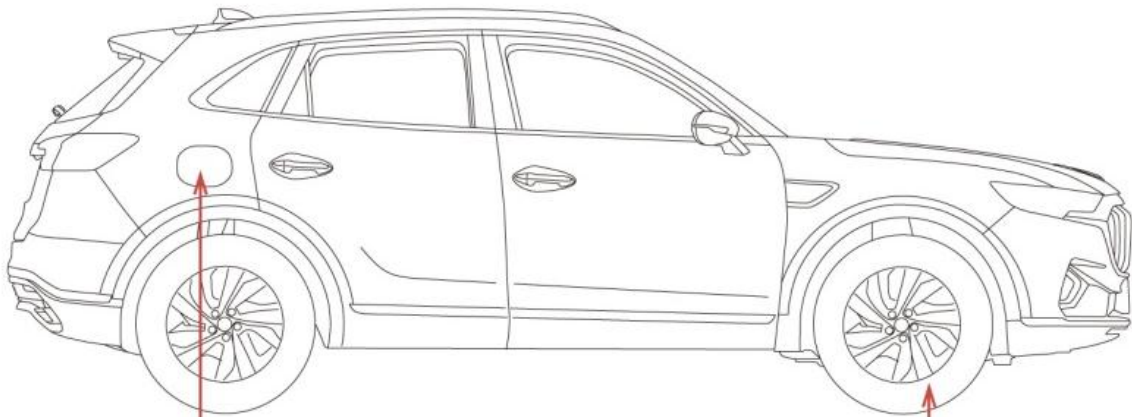
Opening button inside the trunk lid

**P.81**



Release handle of the hood

**P.312**



Fuel filler cap


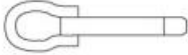
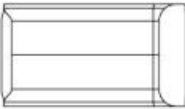




**P.145**

Tire pressure

**P.388**

Fuel tank capacity (for reference)	<b>64L</b>
Fuel type	<b>Unleaded gasoline (see P.384)</b>
Tire pressure	<b>See P.388</b>
Oil capacity	<b>See P.384</b>
Oil grade	<b>See P.385</b>

### On-board tools list

Illustration	Name	Qty.
	<b>Warning triangle</b>	<b>1</b>
	<b>Towing ring</b>	<b>1</b>
	<b>Reflection vest assembly</b>	<b>1</b>
	<b>tire wrench;</b>	<b>1</b>
	<b>Jack crank</b>	<b>1</b>
	<b>Jack</b>	<b>1</b>
	<b>Dismantling tool for wheel decoration cover*</b>	<b>1</b>